

INFORMATION TO USERS

This manuscript has been reproduced from the microfilm master. UMI films the text directly from the original or copy submitted. Thus, some thesis and dissertation copies are in typewriter face, while others may be from any type of computer printer.

The quality of this reproduction is dependent upon the quality of the copy submitted. Broken or indistinct print, colored or poor quality illustrations and photographs, print bleedthrough, substandard margins, and improper alignment can adversely affect reproduction.

In the unlikely event that the author did not send UMI a complete manuscript and there are missing pages, these will be noted. Also, if unauthorized copyright material had to be removed, a note will indicate the deletion.

Oversize materials (e.g., maps, drawings, charts) are reproduced by sectioning the original, beginning at the upper left-hand corner and continuing from left to right in equal sections with small overlaps.

Photographs included in the original manuscript have been reproduced xerographically in this copy. Higher quality 6" x 9" black and white photographic prints are available for any photographs or illustrations appearing in this copy for an additional charge. Contact UMI directly to order.

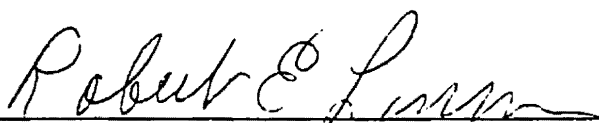
Bell & Howell Information and Learning
300 North Zeeb Road, Ann Arbor, MI 48106-1346 USA
800-521-0600

UMI[®]

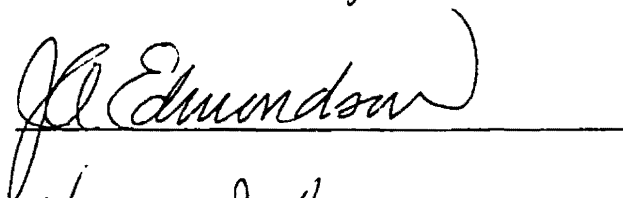
**SENTENCE FINAL PARTICLES
IN BISU NARRATIVE**

The members of the Committee approve the doctoral
dissertation of Kirk Roger Person

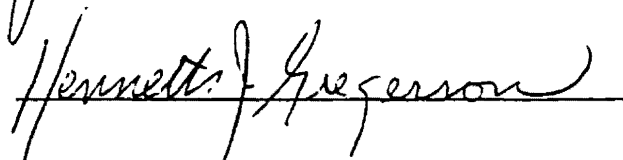
Robert E. Longacre
Supervising Professor



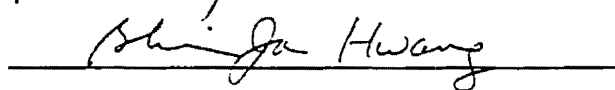
Jerold A. Edmondson



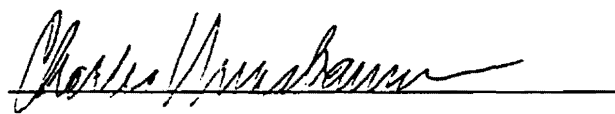
Kenneth Gregerson



Shin Ja Hwang



Charles Nussbaum



Dean of the Graduate School



Copyright © Kirk Roger Person 2000

All Rights Reserved

For Andrew and Emily

**SENTENCE FINAL PARTICLES
IN BISU NARRATIVE**

by

KIRK ROGER PERSON

Presented to the Faculty of the Graduate School of
The University of Texas at Arlington in Partial Fulfillment
of the Requirements
for the Degree of

DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY

THE UNIVERSITY OF TEXAS AT ARLINGTON

December 2000

UMI Number: 9995952

UMI[®]

UMI Microform 9995952

Copyright 2001 by Bell & Howell Information and Learning Company.

All rights reserved. This microform edition is protected against
unauthorized copying under Title 17, United States Code.

Bell & Howell Information and Learning Company
300 North Zeeb Road
P.O. Box 1346
Ann Arbor, MI 48106-1346

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Many individuals have contributed greatly to the completion of this dissertation. I hope that the limitations of space and time will not eclipse the depth of my gratitude to the individuals mentioned here.

To the Bisu of Doi Chomphuu Village, Chiang Rai, Thailand: They welcomed my wife and me into their lives, making our time among them delightful. Individuals who have been of special assistance include Headman Duang Jetsadaakaisri, Mr. Noi Tong Wongluwa, Mrs. Phan Tikham, Mrs. Kham Tikham, Mr. Somchai Kaewkhamnoi, Mrs. Can Wannarot, Mr. Nan Kham Wongluwa, Mr. Thon Taajaan, Mr. Tui Tikham, Mr. Ploy Wongluwa, Mr. Com Kangern, and Mrs. Liew Tikham.

To past members of my dissertation committee: Dr. Susan Herring, the original head of the committee, was instrumental in shaping the direction of this work, as well as keeping me focussed. Her patient evaluation of early drafts was crucial to the development of this dissertation. Dr. John Paolillo widened my understanding of linguistics through his readings course. He also convinced me, however unintentionally, that certain statistical approaches to this data would be frustrating and uninformative.

To present members of the committee: Dr. Robert Longacre has been wonderful in agreeing to take on the leadership of the committee. This has fulfilled a long-held dream: I first became familiar with Dr. Longacre's work in Thailand through a Payap University course taught by Longacre protégé Dr. Fran Woods. I came to UT

Arlington hoping to study under Dr. Longacre, only to find that he had gone to teach at Payap! Inevitably, when I returned to Thailand, he had returned to the United States! Dr. Longacre has been a great encouragement throughout the crucial final months of writing and revising. Likewise, Dr. Jerold A. Edmondson has been a great help through the years; indeed, a conversation with him in 1994 convinced me that UT Arlington was the place I should be. Being known as one of his students has opened many doors for me among the Asian academic community. Dr. Edmondson's research interests in Southeast Asia also insured that I saw him quite often; news of his exciting discoveries whet my appetite for further linguistic inquiry. Similarly, I benefited greatly from Dr. Ken Gregerson's extended residence in Chiang Mai. It is impossible to spend much time around Dr. Gregerson without being amazed at his keen interest in all things related to linguistic; I have benefited from his broad knowledge of the field and his perceptive questions. Dr. Shin-Ja Hwang's discourse class at the Graduate Institute of Applied Linguistics helped bring me "up to date" in the field, while her insight into another Asian language, Korean, has impacted my thinking about Bisu. Though not a linguist, Dr. Charles Nussbaum has learned much about the language and culture of linguists through guiding many of us through the history of western thought. How many philosophers have to patiently endure linguistic graduate students' observations of how Longacre and Lakoff shed light on Plato, Aristotle, and the Universe at large?

To Melissa Braley, the linguistics department administrative assistant: She has been helpful to all the graduate students, making sure that, in the midst of our wanderings into the outer limits of linguistic virtual reality, we remember to turn in all the forms needed to keep enrolled in and, finally, graduate from UT Arlington.

To the faculty, staff and students of Yonok College, Lampang,: They invited me to Thailand for a year, then inspired me to stay for ten! Dr. Nirund Jivasantikarn, President of Yonok College, has been a close friend and advisor throughout my sojourn in Siam.

To the administration of Payap University: President Boonthong Poocharoen has been a strong supporter of the Payap University–SIL International program of cooperation, under whose auspices this research was carried out. Dr. Rattanaporn Sethakul, Graduate School Dean, has provided cultural insight throughout this work, and kindly granted me leave from my Payap responsibilities so that this dissertation could be written. Dr. Sinth Sarobol, Payap Research Institute Director, was a valuable source of information on socio-political issues for rural groups such as the Bisu.

To members of the Foundation for Applied Linguistics, Bangkok: Acharn Wanna Tienmee and Dr. Apiluck Tumtavitikul have provided crucial information and support, while Mr. Makkio Katsura's long-term relationship with the Bisu paved the way for this research.

To the local Thai government officials who have been supportive of our work: Mr. Thanin Suphasaen, Nai Amphoe of Mae Lao; Mr. Boonrawm Nisermrot and Mr. Ongaat Muangosai, Palat Amphoes of Mae Lao; Acharn Chuchay Chaylanka, the principal of Huay San Phlaap Phlaa School; Mr. Duang Sajing, Kamnaan of Tambon Pong Phrae; and Mr. Ngern Siithipeng, Tambong Pong Phrae Community Officer.

To my colleagues in the SIL Mainland Southeast Asia Group: multiple conversations with multiple people over the years have shaped my linguistic intuitions in ways now impossible to trace. I am particularly grateful to past group directors Paulette Hopple, John Miller, and Carolyn Miller, for their inspiration and encouragement, and for current director John Bryant's support of my study leave.

To Roger and Bonnie Person, my parents: I doubt that I would ever have become interested in Southeast Asia without their critical involvement in finding families for thousands of children orphaned by the war in Vietnam. Their efforts to school my adopted brothers in the culture of their birth-country made me wish I was Vietnamese! They constantly supported and encouraged me through my seemingly endless academic pursuits.

To Justice and Mary Ann Anderson, my in-laws: The logistics of completing a doctoral program while raising two small children would have been overwhelming without grandparents who were nearby and happy to help. They repeatedly went above and beyond the call of duty, ready to change diapers or proof read drafts, whatever was needed at the moment.

To Andrew and Emily, my children: They have kept me humble and happy, filling me with excitement for the new arenas of life which they daily discover.

To Suzie, my soulmate: It's not every Texan beauty who is willing to marry a guy whose life ambition is to live in a bamboo hut in the wilds of Northern Thailand! Suzie mixes equally well with Bisu farmers and Thai royalty, Western academics and east Texas ranchers, a reflection of her deep insight into the inner workings of human beings. Without her, I would be lost—in more ways than one. I have benefited from her keen phonetic ear, her analytical mind (her thesis work on Northern Thai discourse particles paved the way for this project), and her understanding heart.

To the Creator of the Universe: I have been blessed with a life of rich experiences beyond anything I could ever have imagined. The Being who breathed this vast and endlessly fascinating cosmos into existence has given me joy in the journey. I could not ask for more.

November 20, 2000

ABSTRACT

SENTENCE FINAL PARTICLES IN BISU NARRATIVE

Publication No. _____

Kirk Roger Person, Ph.D.

The University of Texas at Arlington, 2000

Supervising Professor: Robert E. Longacre

Particles are a vital component of many Asian languages. Nonetheless, they typically receive little treatment in grammatical studies. This may be due in part to the theoretical orientations of generative grammar which, intentionally or accidentally, can tend to skew data collection and analysis toward theory-predicted sentence alignments (Chu 1998, Chan 1999). In addition, the exact meaning and usage of many particles can be anything but obvious. Even educated native speakers often claim that particles are not “true words” and have no “real” meaning.

This dissertation seeks to understand the inner workings of sentence final particles in the Bisu language of Northern Thailand. Thirteen written folktales, six expository texts, and three life histories are examined in an effort to determine the factors influencing particle usage. Variables including place in the discourse, relative transitivity, sentence complexity, occurrence (or non-occurrence) in quotations, and

evidential perspective are addressed in the context of individual particles and their host sentences.

This dissertation draws from the general framework of discourse analysis espoused by Robert E. Longacre (1996). Paul J. Hopper and Sandra A. Thompson's "transitivity hypothesis" (1980) is applied in an effort to quantitatively represent the different types of sentences in which the various particles occur. James A. Matisoff's work on Lahu grammar (1973) is used in conjunction with the author's research and the intuitions of Bisu native speakers in an effort to "triangulate" the semantic connotations of many particles.

The results of this investigation demonstrate the primacy of text type in Bisu particle usage: those particles that see abundant use in the folktales occur rarely in the expository text and the life stories. In addition, the point in the discourse at which a sentence is used influences particle distribution; certain particles are never used in the opening and closing portions of a story, while sentences in pre-peak episodes typically take many more particles than their counterparts in other points in the discourse. These findings highlight the importance of taking discourse features into account when constructing grammars of languages in Asia and elsewhere.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS.....	v
ABSTRACT	ix
LIST OF FIGURES.....	xxi
LIST OF TABLES	xxiii
LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS	xxv
Chapter	
1. INTRODUCTION	1
1.0 Linguistic classification	1
1.0.1 Genetic affiliation	1
1.0.2 Language names	2
1.1 Ethnography	2
1.1.1 Location	2
1.1.2 Historical setting	7
1.1.2.1 The Bisu in China	7
1.1.2.2 The Bisu in Thailand	9
1.1.3 Cultural features	11
1.1.3.1 Dwellings	11
1.1.3.2 Dress	13
1.1.3.3 Occupation	15
1.1.3.4 Religion	16
1.1.3.5 Marriage and family	19

1.2 Sociolinguistic situation	23
1.2.1 Multilingualism	23
1.2.2 Contexts of use	25
1.2.3 Language viability	26
1.3 Motivation and scope of the study	30
1.3.1 Research problem	30
1.3.2 Research question	31
1.3.3 Scope and limitations	31
1.4 Outline of Bisu phonology	32
1.4.1 Syllable structure	32
1.4.2 Initial consonants	32
1.4.3 Consonant clusters	34
1.4.4 Vowels and diphthongs	35
1.4.5 Tone	36
1.4.6 Other phonological processes	37
1.4.6.1 Tone sandhi	37
1.4.6.2 The mysterious floating nasals	37
1.4.6.3 Assimilation of initial /j/	38
1.5 Outline of Bisu syntax	39
1.5.1 Areal features	39
1.5.2 The noun phrase	39
1.5.3 The verb phrase	40
1.5.3.3 Verbal adjectives	41
1.5.3.4 Serial verbs	42
1.5.4 The clause	43

1.5.4.1	Clauses which may involve the accusative-like <i>naa</i> (<i>naa~naʔ</i>)	43
1.5.5	Time and location	45
1.5.6	Zero anaphora	46
1.5.7	Embedded clauses	47
1.5.8	Compound sentences	48
1.5.9	Changes in constituent order (right–dislocation)	50
2.	REVIEW OF RELEVANT INFLUENCES	51
2.0	Introduction	51
2.1	Longacre and the discourse stream	51
2.1.1	Discourse tributaries	53
2.1.1.1	Hwang and “structural importance”	53
2.1.1.2	Burusphat and discourse without tense	55
2.1.1.3	Herring and the quantification of tense and aspect	56
2.1.1.4	McClelland and the correspondence of prosody and discourse features	57
2.2	On the banks of the Yangzhe: particles in Chinese	58
2.2.1	Li and Thompson: auxiliaries markers and “mood words”	58
2.2.2	Marjorie Chan and the sociolinguistic back–door into discourse	60
2.2.3	Chauncy Chu and the “core functions” of particles	60
2.3	Following the Mekhong: particles in Southeast Asia	62

2.3.1 Joseph Cooke and Thai conversational particles	62
2.3.2 James Matisoff and Lahu particles	63
2.3.3 David Solnit and Eastern Kayah Li	65
2.3.4 Inga–Lill Hansson and Akha evidentiality	66
2.4 Overlooking Chompuu Creek: previous work on Bisu	66
2.4.1 Tatsuo Nishida and the first analysis	66
2.4.2 David Bradley and James Matisoff on Bisu historical development	67
2.4.3 Vacharee Nuamkaew on Bisu phonology	67
2.4.4 Patrick Beaudouin on Bisu grammar	68
2.4.5 Xu Shixuan on Bisu in China	69
3. RESEARCH DESIGN AND METHODOLOGY	70
3.0 Introduction	70
3.1 Corpus	70
3.1.1 Written folktales	70
3.1.1.1 Folktale summaries	72
3.1.2 Expository texts	78
3.1.3 Life stories	79
3.2 Coding of folktale sentences	80
3.2.1 Discourse profile analysis	81
3.2.1.1 Orientation	83
3.2.1.2 Inciting moment	84
3.2.1.3 Episode juncture	85
3.2.1.4 Pre–Peak episodes	86

3.2.1.5 Peak	87
3.2.1.6 Peak'	89
3.2.1.7 Post–Peak episodes	90
3.1.2.8 Conclusion	92
3.2.2 Transitivity	93
3.2.2.1 Participants	94
3.2.2.2 Kinesis	96
3.2.2.3 Aspect	96
3.2.2.4 Punctuality	97
3.2.2.5 Volitionality	98
3.2.2.6 Affirmation	98
3.2.2.7 Mode	99
3.2.2.8 Agency	99
3.2.2.9 Affectedness of object	100
3.2.2.10 Individuation of O	101
3.2.3 Sentence complexity	102
3.2.4 Quote/non–quote material	103
3.2.5 Experiencer/non–experiencer	103
3.3 Cloze Exercise	103
4. RESULTS	105
4.0 Introduction	105
4.1 Overview of particle usage	106
4.1.1 Particle frequency	106
4.1.2 Particle distribution	108
4.1.3 Particle cluster ordering	110

4.1.4	Particles in isolation	112
4.1.5	Sentences that do not contain particles	114
4.1.6	Transitivity ranking: a framework for interpretation	116
4.1.7	Multiple clauses and particles: a framework for interpretation	117
4.1.8	Place in the discourse	121
	4.1.8.1 Particles per sentence	122
	4.1.8.2 Transitivity	123
	4.1.8.3 Multiple clauses	124
	4.1.8.4 Quote/non-quote material	126
4.2	The principal particles: <i>tʃ^hii</i> and <i>jèe</i>	126
	4.2.1 <i>tʃ^hii</i> (<i>tʃ^hii</i> ~ <i>tʃ^hi</i> ~ <i>tʃ^hi</i>) completive aspect (overall)	127
	4.2.2 <i>jèe</i> reported event (overall)	135
	4.2.3 <i>tʃ^hii</i> co-occurring with particles excluding <i>jèe</i>	143
	4.2.4 <i>tʃ^hii</i> in isolation	146
	4.2.5 <i>tʃ^hii</i> <i>jèe</i> co-occurrence	149
	4.2.6 <i>jèe</i> in isolation	153
	4.2.7 <i>jèe</i> co-occurring with particles excluding <i>tʃ^hii</i>	156
	4.2.8 The argument from absence: where and why do <i>tʃ^hii</i> or <i>jèe</i> not occur?	160
	4.2.9 Conclusions on <i>tʃ^hii</i> and <i>jèe</i>	162
4.3	<i>lææ</i> , <i>lææ</i> , and <i>læ?</i> : cacophony of homophony	163
	4.3.1 <i>lææ</i> (<i>lææ</i> ~ <i>lææn</i> ~ <i>lææ</i> ~ <i>læ?</i>) downward/southerly motion	164

4.3.2	<i>lææ1</i> (<i>lææ ~ láʔ ~ lææŋ</i>) repeated action	169
4.3.3	<i>lææ2</i> (<i>lææ ~ lææ</i>) emphasis	173
4.4	Other frequently occurring particles	174
4.4.1	<i>ŋææ</i> (<i>ŋææ ~ ŋæʔ</i>) stative	175
4.4.2	<i>paanòɔ</i> (<i>paanɔɔ~páʔnóɔ</i>) enhanced completive	179
4.4.3	<i>naowaa</i> repeated episode marker	182
4.4.4	<i>tʃ^háʔ</i> emphatic completion	186
4.4.5	<i>pìi</i> (<i>pìi ~ piŋ ~ pi ~ piŋ</i>) 'give' causative/purposive/ permissive	187
4.4.6	<i>kaa1</i> (<i>kaa~kaaŋʔ~káʔ~kan</i>) permanent state/ability	190
4.4.7	<i>kaa2</i> (<i>kaa ~ kaaŋ ~ kan ~ káʔ</i>) joint action	193
	4.4.7.1 <i>laŋkaʔ</i> (<i>laŋkaʔ ~ laŋkaa</i>) joint action	195
4.4.8	<i>laa1</i> completion	197
4.4.9	<i>laa2</i> negation	199
4.4.10	<i>laa3</i> ongoing positive process	201
4.4.11	<i>laa4</i> (<i>làa~láʔ~laaŋ~laa~làaŋ</i>) benefactive	203
4.4.12	<i>nææ</i> (<i>nææ ~ nèʔ ~ næʔ</i>) end of quotation marker	205
4.4.13	<i>lùu1</i> (<i>lùu~lùu ~ lùʔ</i>) 'come out' (quotation formula)	207
4.4.14	<i>ʔææ</i> affirmative marker	210
4.4.15	<i>k^haalaj</i> (<i>k^haalaj ~ laj</i>) existential marker	212
4.4.16	<i>jàa1</i> (<i>jàa ~ jàaŋ ~ ja</i>) completive	214

4.5 Less frequent particles	215
4.5.1 <i>jàa2</i> (<i>jaa</i> ~ <i>jàaŋ</i>) negative benefit	215
4.5.2 <i>jaa3</i> result of action	217
4.5.3 <i>já?</i> many	218
4.5.4 <i>paanaa</i> (<i>paanaa</i> ~ <i>paana?</i>) agreement seeker	220
4.5.5 <i>poonoo</i> (<i>poonoo</i> ~ <i>paanoo</i>) agreement seeker	221
4.5.6 <i>paaná?</i> self-oriented agreement	222
4.5.7 <i>paanadèo</i> group agreement seeker	222
4.5.8 <i>nòo</i> negative agreement seeker	223
4.5.9 <i>laalá?</i> agreement	224
4.5.10 <i>kanna</i> preference	224
4.5.11 <i>k^haa</i> implied request	225
4.5.12 <i>pjaadèe</i> (<i>pjaadèe</i> ~ <i>pá?já?dèe</i>) propositive	225
4.5.13 <i>lùu2</i> (<i>lùu~lùu</i>) positive imperative	226
4.5.14 <i>pao</i> mild positive imperative	228
4.5.15 <i>jóo</i> positive command	229
4.5.16 <i>læw</i> positive command	230
4.5.17 <i>lá?</i> imperative	231
4.5.18 <i>læwlææ</i> imperative	231
4.5.19 <i>coo</i> negative command	231
4.5.20 <i>?àahaa</i> negative command strengtheners	232
4.5.21 <i>pèe</i> politeness marker	234
4.5.22 <i>gaal</i> ability	235

4.5.23	<i>gaa2 + siŋ</i> ‘desire’	236
4.5.24	<i>tɔɔ</i> inability	237
4.5.25	<i>wáʔ</i> content question	238
4.5.26	<i>láa</i> interrogative marker	239
4.5.27	<i>máʔ</i> negative emphatic	240
4.5.28	<i>cáa</i> positive emphatic	241
4.5.29	<i>ʔii</i> readily deduceable knowledge	242
4.5.30	<i>ŋáʔl</i> comprehensive extent	243
4.5.31	<i>tʃ^hii2 + tʃ^haʔ~tʃ^hàŋ</i> ‘left in that state’	244
4.5.32	<i>láʔwaa</i> ‘any more’	246
4.5.33	<i>láʔ</i> natural disaster	246
4.5.34	<i>laalææ</i> intensity of hunger	247
4.6	Particle usage across genres	248
4.6.1	Life stories	248
4.6.1.1	Particle frequency	248
4.6.1.2	Particle distribution	249
4.6.1.3	Comparison of frequently used particles	253
4.6.2	Expository texts	258
4.6.2.1	Particle frequency	258
4.6.2.2	Particle distribution	259
4.6.2.3	Comparison of frequently used particles	261
5.	CONCLUSION	262
5.0	Introduction	262

5.1 Factors affecting particle usage	262
5.1.1 Impact of text type and genre	262
5.1.2 Impact of place in the discourse	263
5.1.3 Impact of sentence complexity	263
5.1.4 Impact of the experiencer/ non-experiencer distinction	263
5.1.5 Impact of semantic connotations	264
5.2 Strengths, weaknesses, and limitations of this study	264
5.3 Implications for linguistic theory and practice	265
5.4 Recommendations for further research	266
Appendix	
1. FOLKTALE CORPUS	267
2. PARTICLE PROFILE SUMMARY CHART	318
BIBLIOGRAPHY	320
BIOGRAPHICAL INFORMATION	327

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure	Page
1.1. The position of Bisu in Southern Yiphoish/Loloish	1
1.2. Location of Bisu villages in northern Thailand	4
1.3. Bisu area in Yunnan Province, People’s Republic of China	6
1.4. The <i>Baan Boran Bisu</i> ‘ancient Bisu house’	12
1.5. Contemporary Northern Thai–style Bisu home	12
1.6. Using old mortar and pestle	14
1.7. Fire box and drying rack, <i>Baan Boran Bisu</i>	14
1.8. Preparing for sacrifices at the shrine of <i>aŋcao</i>	17
1.9. Shaman presenting sacrifices to <i>aŋcao</i>	17
1.10. Detail, old Bisu wedding skirt	21
1.11. Doi Pui headman with <i>lingam</i> in groom’s bedroom at outset of marriage ceremony	21
1.12. The linguistic hierarchy in Thailand	23
1.13. Her Royal Highness Crown Princess Maha Chakri Sirindhorn receives the first Bisu books from the author and his wife	29
1.14. Initial consonants	33
1.15. Consonant clusters	34
1.16. Bisu vowels	35
2.1. Continua of relative importance of information represented as a circle graph	55
3.1. Narrative discourse schema	82
4.1. Basic order of particle cluster components in the written folktales	111

4.2. Overview of transitivity scores in the written folktales	117
4.3. Average number of particles per sentence relative to place in the discourse	123
4.4. Transitivity scores relative to point in the discourse	124
4.5. Multiple clauses relative to point in the discourse	125
4.6. Occurrence of quotations relative to point in the discourse	126
4.7. Percent of sentences containing the 10 most frequently used particles in written folktales and life stories	252
4.8. Comparison of frequency of select particles in life histories and written folktales	258

LIST OF TABLES

Table	Page
2.1. Bisu particles	68
3.1. Written folktales studied	71
3.2. Expository texts	79
3.3. Life stories	80
3.4. Categories of transitivity	94
3.5. Components of individuation	101
4.1. Particle frequency in the 13 written folktales	106
4.2. Number of particles contained in particle containing sentences	107
4.3. Particles contained in the thirteen written folktales	109
4.4. Particles which may occur in isolation	113
4.5. Breakdown of multiple clause occurrence and conjunction usage	119
4.6. Particles co-occurring with <i>tʃ^hii</i>	129
4.7. Distribution of <i>tʃ^hii</i> overall	131
4.8. Distribution of <i>tʃ^hii</i> overall relative to total occurrences of <i>tʃ^hii</i>	132
4.9. Conjunctions utilized in <i>tʃ^hii</i> -containing multiclausal sentences	134
4.10. Particles co-occurring with <i>jèe</i>	137
4.11. Distribution of <i>jèe</i> overall	139
4.12. Distribution of <i>jèe</i> overall relative to total occurrences of <i>jèe</i>	139
4.13. Conjunctions utilized in <i>jèe</i> -containing multiclausal sentences	142

4.14. Distribution of non- <i>jèe</i> -containing <i>tʃ^hii</i> -containing clusters	143
4.15. Distribution of non- <i>jèe</i> -containing <i>tʃ^hii</i> -containing clusters relative to <i>tʃ^hii</i> overall	144
4.16. Distribution of <i>tʃ^hii</i> -in-isolation	146
4.17. Distribution of <i>tʃ^hii</i> -in-isolation relative to <i>tʃ^hii</i> overall	147
4.18. Distribution of <i>tʃ^hiijèe</i>	150
4.19. Distribution of <i>tʃ^hiijèe</i> relative to total occurrences of <i>tʃ^hiijèe</i>	150
4.20. Distribution of <i>jèe</i> -in-isolation	153
4.21. Distribution of <i>jèe</i> -in-isolation relative to <i>jèe</i> overall	154
4.22. Distribution of of <i>tʃ^hii</i> -less <i>jèe</i> particle clusters	157
4.23. Distribution of of <i>tʃ^hii</i> -less <i>jèe</i> particle clusters relative to <i>jèe</i> overall	158
4.24. Particles co-occurring with <i>lææ</i>	166
4.25. Distribution of <i>lææ</i>	167
4.26. Distribution of <i>lææ</i> relative to total occurrences	168
4.27. Distribution of <i>lææ</i> l	171
4.28. Distribution of <i>lææ</i> l relative to total occurrences	172
4.29. <i>ŋææ</i> co-occurrences	176
4.30. Distribution of <i>ŋææ</i>	177
4.31. Distribution of <i>ŋææ</i> relative to total occurrences	178
4.32. Number of particles per sentence in life stories	248
4.33. Life story texts particle inventory	250
4.34. Number of particles per sentence in expository texts	259
4.35. Expository texts particle inventory	260

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

1ps	First person singular
2ps	Second person singular
3ps	Third person singular
3pp	Third person plural
ACC	Accusative marker
Asp	Aspirated
Clf	Classifier
expl	Expletive
IMP	Imperative
misc.	Miscellaneous
neg	Negative
npt	Noun particle
pt	Particle
pt-able	Ability indicating particle
pt-aff	Affirmative particle
pt-agreed!	Agreement confirming particle
pt-agreed?	Agreement seeking particle
pt-any	'Any more' particle
pt-ast	Assertative particle
pt-ben	Benefactive particle
pt-comp	Completive aspect particle

pt-comprehen	Comprehensive extent particle
pt-desire	Desiderative particle
pt-ndmot	Downward/southerly motion particle
pt-emph	Emphasis particle
pt-end_qt	End of quotation particle
pt-exis	Existential particle
pt-give	Causative/purposive/permissive ‘give’ particle
pt-hunger	Intensity of hunger particle
pt-imp	Positive imperative particle
pt-imp_req	Implied request particle
pt-invite	Invitation particle
pt-jnt	Joint action particle
pt-left	‘Left in that state’ particle
pt-many	Quantitative particle
pt-natdis	Natural disaster particle
pt-neg	Negation particle
pt-neg_agreed?	Negative agreement-seeking particle
pt-neg_emp	Negative emphasis particle
pt-neg_imp	Negative imperative particle
pt-negben	Negative benefit particle
pt-obv	Readily deduceable knowledge particle
pt-out	‘Come out’ quotation formula particle
pt-pol	Politeness particle
pt-pos	Ongoing positive process particle
pt-prefer	Preference-indicating particle

pt-quest	Question particle
pt-rep	Repeated action particle
pt-rep_ep	Repeated episode particle
pt-report	Reported event particle
pt-result	Result particle
pt-st	Stative particle
pt-st/abl	Permanent state/ability particle
pt-unable	Inability indicating particle
Vd	Voiced
VI	Voiceless

CHAPTER 1

INTRODUCTION

1.0 Linguistic classification

1.0.1 Genetic affiliation

Bisu is a member of the vast Tibeto-Burman family. More specifically, Bisu may be classified as Sino-Tibetan, Tibeto-Burman, Burmese-Yiphoish/Lolo,¹ Yiphoish/ Loloish, Southern Yiphoish/Loloish, Bisoid, as shown in figure 1.1:

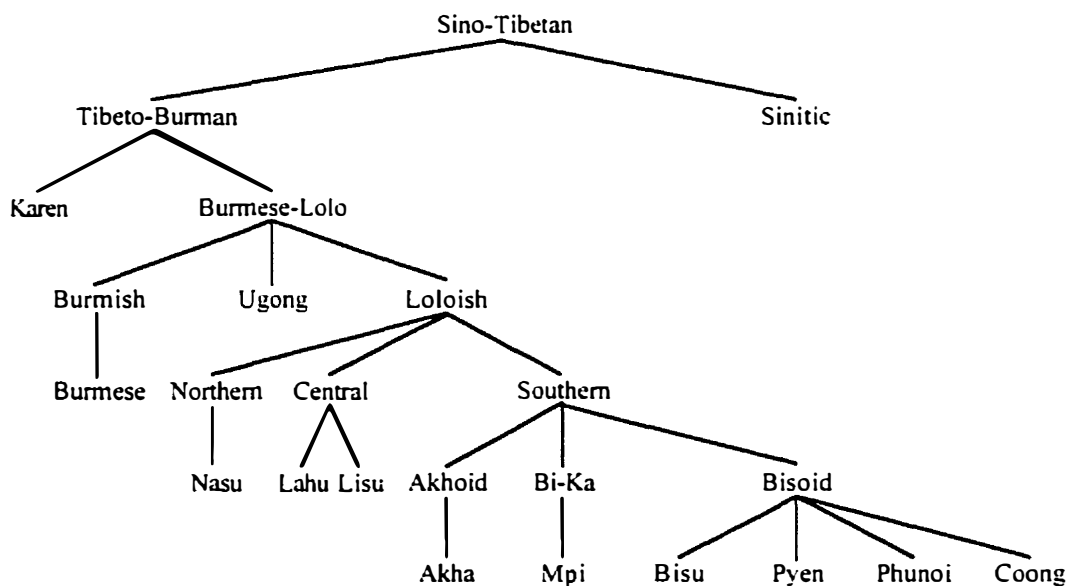


Figure 1.1. The position of Bisu in Southern Yiphoish/Loloish.
(adapted from Bradley 1981: 3 and 1994: 178)

¹ The term “Loloish” has been applied to this branch for many years, but has fallen out of favor recently because the word itself is Chinese in origin and has derogatory connotations. Yiphoish is a more acceptable alternative (Hale 1998).

1.0.2 Language names

“Bisu” is the autonym used by members of the community. The two syllables of the word “Bisu” are derived from two Tibeto–Burman roots, both of which mean ‘people’ (Matisoff 1999). The Bisu themselves are unaware of this derivation.

The Northern Thai call the Bisu “Lawa” or “Lua.” This term is both derogatory and confusing, for there are at least seven ethnic groups “lumped” into this category. These include the true Lawaa (Mon–Khmer, found in Myanmar as well as Chiang Mai and Mae Hong Song Provinces in Thailand), Mal (Mon–Khmer, Nan Province), Khamet (Mon–Khmer, Chiang Rai Province), Palong (Mon–Khmer, Chiang Mai and Chiang Rai Provinces), Nyakur (Mon–Khmer, Korat Province), Ugong (Tibeto–Burman, Kanchanaburi, Suphanburi, and Uthaitхани Provinces) (Nuamkaew 1987: 10). Apparently, “Lawa” and “Lua” have become catch–all categories for smaller ethnic groups that do not wear the distinctive dress of the larger, better known hilltribes such as the Akha, Lahu, Lisu, Karen, Hmong, and Yao.

1.1 Ethnography

1.1.1 Location

The Bisu population in Thailand is concentrated in two villages in Chiang Rai Province: Doi Chomphuu (Amphoe Mae Lao, Tambon Pong Phrae)² and Doi Pui (Amphoe Muang, Tombon Sa–a Dong Chai). The headmen of the respective villages report approximate populations of 200 and 500 persons. A handful of Bisu speakers, middle aged and older, live in Pha Daeng Village (Amphoe Phan, Tambon Doi

² While Doi Chompuu is the current official name of this village, emblazoned upon the village temple and the government sign at the entrance of the village, the local Northern Thai population usually refer to it as Baan Doi or Baan Lua. This has caused minor descriptive differences among linguists, with Nishida using Baan Lua (a designation considered derogatory by the Bisu) (1973: 56), Bradley Huai Chompuu (a name derived from the nearby stream) (1988: 1), and Beaudouin Baan Doi (1991b: 24). Residents refer to their village by any of the aforementioned names, with the exception of Baan Lua.

Ngam, Chiang Rai Province). In the mid 1970s, David Bradley (1988) found several Bisu speakers in Hui Chomphu Taka (Amphoe Mae Sui, Chiang Rai Province), although the language has since ceased to be spoken there. SIL's *Ethnologue* (Grimes 1996) estimates that there are fewer than 1,000 Bisu speakers in Thailand, a figure the Bisu feel to be accurate.

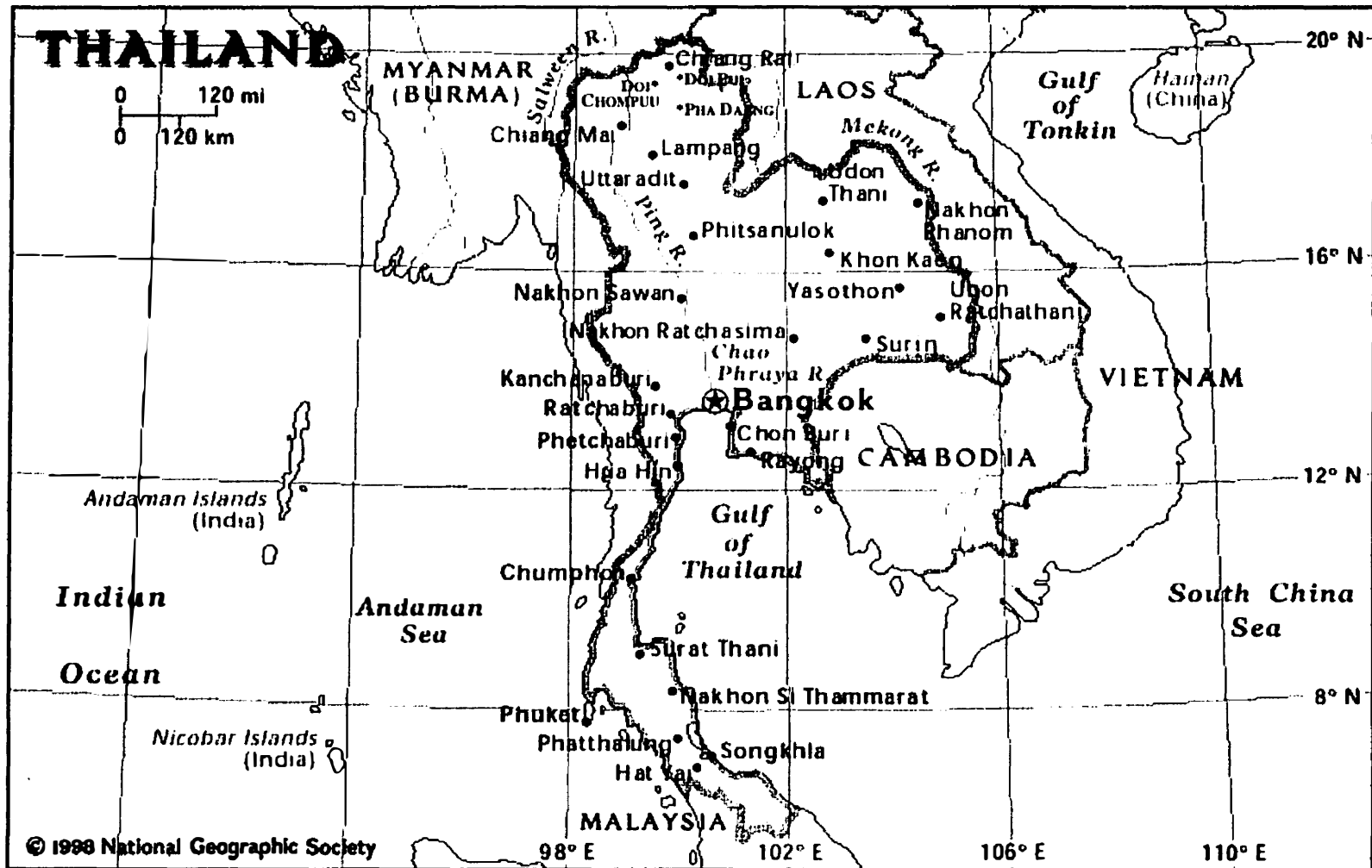


Figure 1.2. Location of Bisu villages in Northern Thailand.

The *Ethnologue* lists an additional 6,000 Bisu in China, where they are called Lao Mien, ‘Old Burmese’ in Yunnanese. From the viewpoint of the Chinese government, these are classified as Lahu because they live in close proximity to the Lahu and have Lahu-like dress (Bradley 1998). It was only in the late 1980s that Fu Maoji’s theory on the existence of Bisu in China was confirmed, resulting in Li Yongsui’s 1991 “Preliminary Investigations of the Bisu Language” (Shixuan forthcoming: 1). The Chinese Bisu are found in southwestern Yunnan Province, near the borders of Myanmar and Laos, in Lancang, Menghai, Ximent, and Menglian counties (Shixuan forthcoming: 1). Bisu speakers in Thailand were able to recognize a number of words recorded by David Bradley among the Chinese Bisu, although tonal and lexical differences, especially where functors are concerned, would probably hamper communication between the groups.

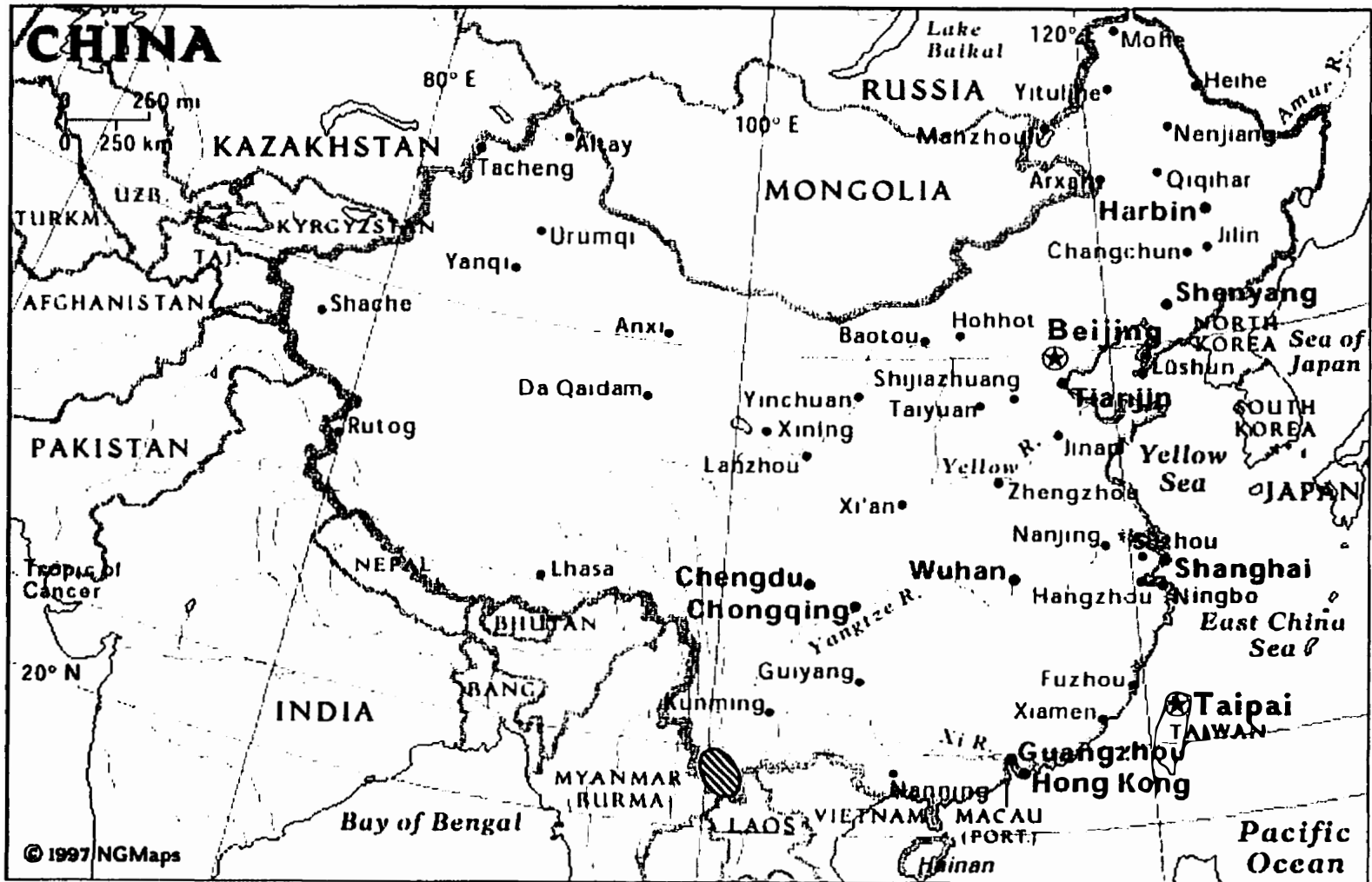


Figure 1.3. Bisu area in Yunnan Province, People's Republic of China.

While the Bisu in Thailand traditionally have had no knowledge of their relatives in China, the village elders tell of a related group in Myanmar. Some fifty years ago, a monk from Burma came into Thailand speaking what the Bisu refer to as “unclear Bisu” and saying he came from the “Pin” tribe. Despite dialect differences, the Thai Bisu were able to communicate with this monk. Not long thereafter, a Pin couple came to the Bisu village to elope; they were of the same clan, and therefore their marriage would have been taboo among the Pin. The young man’s father pursued them, forcing their return. There has been no additional contact between the groups. It is probably that these “Pin” are the “Pyen” or “Pyin” mentioned in Scott and Hardiman’s *Gazetteer of Upper Burma and the Shan States* (1900), a work that includes a list of approximately 250 Pyen words, many of which have close Bisu cognates.

Other related groups include the Phu Noi of Laos and the Coong of Vietnam. After listening to recorded word lists from one of the Phu Noi dialects, the Bisu of Thailand declared that they are “80% the same language.” The immediate reaction to hearing the word lists was one of “We need to rent a taxi and go visit our relatives in Laos!” Recorded Phu Noi folktales, however, proved incomprehensible to the Thai Bisu.

1.1.2 Historical setting

1.1.2.1 The Bisu in China

Xu Shixuan traces the roots of the Bisu in China to the ancient Di and Qiang tribes. While acknowledging that accurate information is necessarily limited by the lack of written records, she connects a first wave of Bisu migration to an unsuccessful local rebellion incited by Lahu leaders Li Wenming and Li Xiaolao:

After the rebellion was crushed in 1801 (6th year of Emperor Jia Qing), the Bisu migrated south taking with them nine horse-loads of cooking pots, cups and iron tripods. Following the Nanku River downstream, they lived for a while at Miema Miemeng (present location unclear), among a group of "big people" with yellow hair, high nose-bridges and long legs. However, the unsuitable climate led them to migrate back, passing through Chongnan Nanshu (which means "pond of hot water," i.e., hot springs) and arriving at Mengjiao Mengdong (present-day Cangyuan in Yunnan Province) to live among the Wa people for another period. Being such a small group, they could not resist harsh treatment and enslavement by *tusi* [hereditary headmen] from the other minority groups, and their headman, Ya Makan, led them in an overnight escape. Although the *tusi* managed to re-capture and enslave those who fled too late, a hundred household did arrive safely at Mug Mengnuo (present-day Muga Xiang in Lancang County), later moving to Dongzhu (in Zhutang Xiang, Lancang County), where they gradually increased to over 300 households (Shixuan forthcoming: 4).

A second rebellion, in the early twentieth century, led to a second wave of Bisu migration:

In 1918 (Year of the Horse) Li Long and Li Hu led the peasants in an armed rebellion in the district of Lancang. With "Kill the Officials; Cancel our Debts" as their slogan, they launched a spirited attack on the *tusi* system. The Bisu also participated in this conflict. The peasant forces routed most of the armed *tusi* soldiers and besieged their district headquarters in Lancang. To protect their common interest, the Lahu *tusi*, Han landlords and local warlords formed an alliance, and, as a united front, finally defeated the peasants. For fear that their villages would be destroyed and their families killed, groups of Bisu decided to flee, moving to areas such as Menglian, Ximeng and Menghai (Shixuan forthcoming: 4-5).

Whether the Bisu entered Thailand as a result of either of these rebellions is difficult to ascertain; the Thai Bisu collective historical consciousness is quite limited. Nonetheless, it is entirely plausible to contend that the forebearers of the Thai Bisu left China under some sort of social distress, following the Mekong River south into Northern Thailand. It is also possible that the Bisu arrived in Thailand involuntarily;

the rulers of the *Lanna* kingdom, centered in Chiang Mai but with tributary city–states across contemporary northern Thailand, routinely enslaved occupants of rival city–states in present–day Yunnan Province (China) and the Shan States (Myanmar) in a series of small–scale wars (Wyatt 1984: 155).

1.1.2.2 The Bisu in Thailand

The Thai Bisu have preserved relatively little of their history. This, claims one elder, is because the lives of their forbearers were so difficult that they were ashamed to pass on their experiences.

What remains of the collective consciousness of the Thai Bisu tells of a time when they cared for large numbers of cattle and water buffalo. Wherever they settled, they soon encountered problems with the Northern Thai, who felt free to steal livestock and cheat the Bisu out of their land. Approximately eighty years ago, the entire group moved to the lower slopes of Doi Chompuu. As this area lacked land suitable for paddy (wet) rice cultivation, the Bisu felt that they would be left alone. Still, a bamboo palisade was erected around the village as protection against human, animal, and spiritual foes. The village became known in Bisu as *k^hḍḥhlḍḥkḍḥ*, a name still used among Bisu today.

Life at *k^hḍḥhlḍḥkḍḥ* was not all that the Bisu had anticipated. Thieves from other ethnic groups still occasionally victimized the village, as did a small contingent of Japanese soldiers during the Second World War. The Bisu planted dry (hill) rice, with little success. This may indicate that that dry rice cultivation was not traditionally practiced by the Bisu, inasmuch as other hilltribe groups in the area subsisted reasonably well on this crop through the 1990s. The Bisu thus spent a great deal of time and energy foraging for food in the nearby forest. They were able to trade some of these forest products with the Northern Thai for rice. Nonetheless,

many were reduced to begging for rice and clothing in Northern Thai villages, a situation that continued into the 1980s.

The population at *k^hḍṅhlṅkṅ* expanded to the point that, sometime in the 1940s, a large group of Bisu left and established the village of Doi Pui, some thirty miles to the northeast. Again, the main criterion for the choice of location was how undesirable the area would appear to the Northern Thai. The Bisu were able to plant some wet (paddy) rice here, although a lack of water limited their harvests. While the Bisu of Doi Chompuu gradually became more accepting of intermarriage with the Northern Thai, the people of Doi Pui came to the conclusion that they were the last outpost of “true Bisu” in the world, preferring to marry within the group and forcing mixed couples to live outside the village proper. This statute was tested as late as 1999, when an HIV positive Southern Thai man married to a Bisu woman attempted, unsuccessfully, to spend his final months in Doi Pui.

During the late 1980s and early 1990s, the overall situation for the Bisu improved somewhat. The Thai government worked to extend more educational opportunities to both villages, and the Bisu were able to take advantage of government clinics in neighboring Northern Thai villages. In addition, the Thai forestry department allowed the Bisu of Doi Chompuu to develop wet (paddy) rice terraces, providing heavy machinery to assist in the process. The Bisu received Thai citizenship cards, a vital prerequisite to meaningful educational and employment opportunities in Thailand. Electricity came to both villages in the 1990s, as well as rudimentary tap water systems drawing from mountainside springs.

With this progress, however, came difficulties. Probably the greatest source of continued frustration for the Bisu are the Northern Thai loan sharks upon whom the Bisu depend for short term capital for fertilizer and seed, as well as long-term capital

for motorcycles, televisions and refrigerators. Interest rates are extremely steep, revenge swift and harsh upon default. Consequently, many Bisu young women have been forced into prostitution, generally being sent to Bangkok under the guise of “working at a restaurant.” The AIDS epidemic of the 1990s has significantly impacted the Bisu, as it has the entire country of Thailand.

1.1.3 Cultural features

1.1.3.1 Dwellings

Traditional Bisu houses were constructed of bamboo and thatch perched on stilts about a meter off the ground. The houses faced east, and were fronted by partially covered porches upon which various agricultural products could be processed and dried. At the foot of the stairway into the house stood a large mortar and pestle used for husking rice.³ Traditional houses contained two doors, front and back, the latter being used only for the removal of corpses. The walls of the house were to slant outwards, a feature that is unique among Thai hilltribes. The house itself contained one large room, divided between food preparation and family sleeping areas. A meter square firebox made of wood and filled with dirt occupied a corner of the house. Drying racks were suspended over the firebox.

Current Bisu houses follow Northern Thai designs. Wood is preferred over bamboo, although a number of bamboo houses remain.

³ Unlike other hilltribe groups in Thailand, who developed less labor-intensive methods of rice husking.

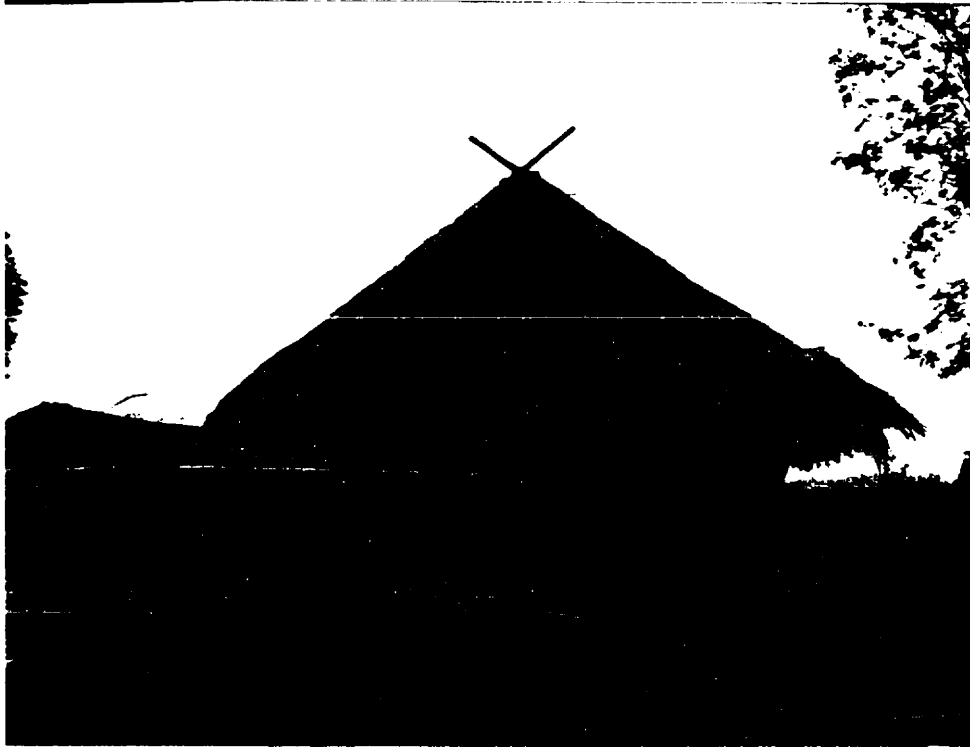


Figure 1.4. The *Baan Boran Bisu* 'ancient Bisu house,' erected in 1999 as a small museum.

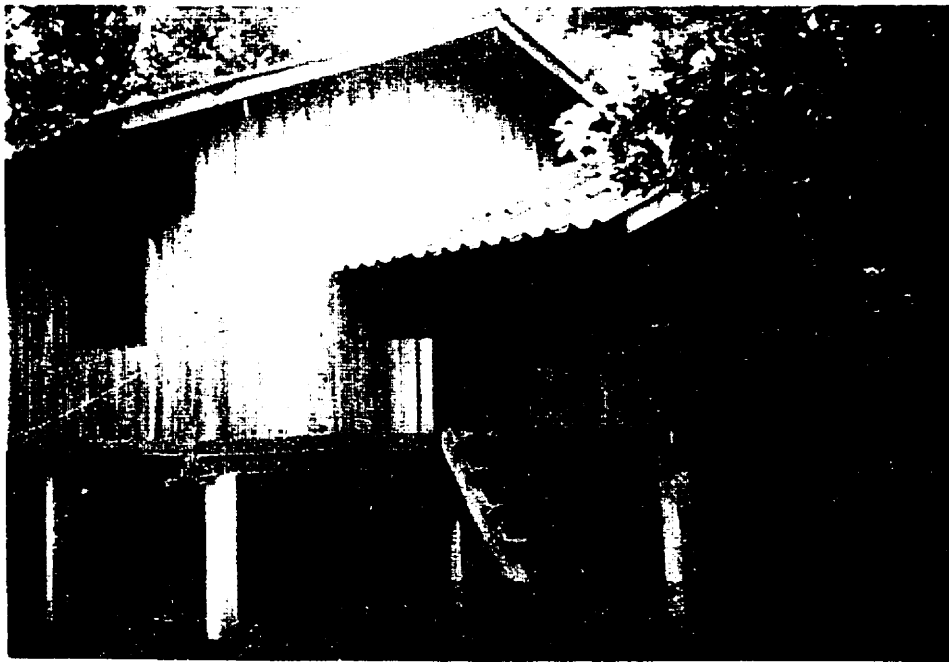


Figure 1.5. Contemporary Northern Thai-style Bisu home.

1.1.3.2 Dress

The Bisu abandoned their traditional dress some fifty years ago. One Bisu elder claims that the elders of his father's generation were very ashamed to be Bisu, and thus tried to appear more "Thai-like." One elderly Bisu woman is still in possession of her mother's wedding clothes. The close-fitting, high-collared, blouse is dark blue (the dye of a local plant), with small rivulets of red thread adorning the edges of the garment, and bears some resemblance to Shan attire. The woven red skirt worn with the shirt is Northern Thai-like in weave. The Bisu abandoned weaving decades ago, and recent government efforts to revive this art have failed.

Contemporary Bisu dress follows rural Northern Thai norms, with men and women often wearing the dark blue *mahom* shirts favored by Thai farmers. Western style clothing is common, although many women wear Northern Thai *phasin* skirts when they are not laboring in the fields. For religious festivals and other special occasions, many Bisu wear the homespun cotton Northern Thai shirts and, for women, more elaborate *phasin* skirts that came into vogue in the mid 1990s as part of a Northern Thai cultural revival (Person and Person 1996).

There is some interest among the Bisu leadership in reviving the traditional clothing, in the hope of receiving more recognition from the Thai government and tourist organizations as a bona-fide hilltribe. In 1998, a Bisu woman in her thirties took the clothing mentioned above to a Northern Thai tailor, to have a contemporary replica made. Although this rendering lacks the detailed strands of color found in the originals, it was unique enough to garner questions from baffled Northern Thai and members of other hilltribes alike at a local cultural festival.



Figure 1.6. Pounding rice with old mortar and pestle.

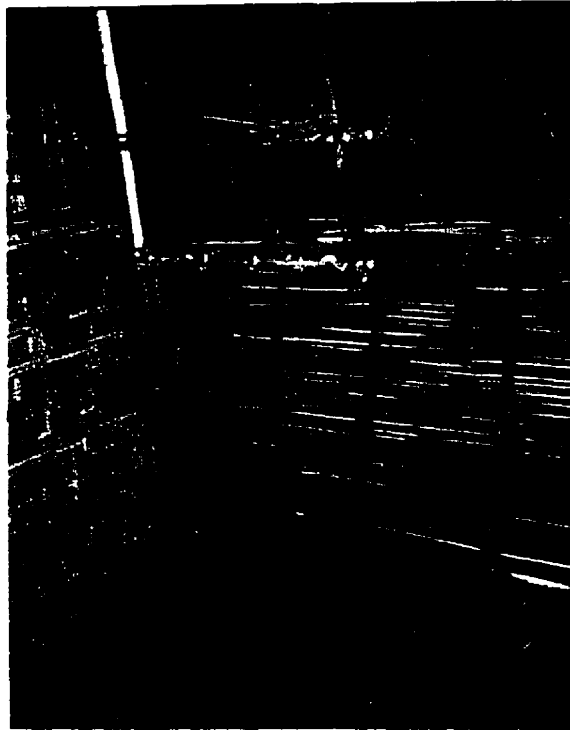


Figure 1.8. Fire box and drying rack, *Baan Boran Bisu*.

1.1.3.3 Occupation

Agriculture remains the primary occupation of contemporary Bisu, with rice, garlic, feed corn, peanuts, and green beans as cash crops. Unlike other hilltribes in the area, the Bisu do not cultivate opium. Chickens and pigs are raised by most Bisu households for consumption, sale, and sacrifices to the spirits (see 1.1.3.4). A number of Bisu raise cows, continuing a long tradition (see 1.1.2.2). Water buffalo, the traditional beast of agricultural burden in northern Thailand, has lost ground to gas-powered plows; the last water buffalo in Doi Chompuu village were sold in April 2000. During various points in the agricultural calendar, men and women alike hire themselves out to Northern Thai farmers as day laborers, usually for 100 baht (U.S. \$2.50) per day.

The forest continues to supply the Bisu with additional food. During the rainy season, the Bisu collect bamboo shoots for their own consumption and for resale in nearby Northern Thai markets. Various other leaves, roots, and wild fruits are likewise collected, along with grass to be woven into roof panels. Various animals are hunted for consumption and sale; a small monitor lizard, for example can sell for as much as 1,000 baht (U.S. \$25), half a month's income. Timber, usually logged illegally at the behest of wealthy Thais, is another source of cash.

Many Bisu young people spend at least several years working outside the village, usually in Bangkok or Chiang Mai. They typically fill less-skilled labor positions in factories. As mentioned earlier, many young women have become involved in the flesh trade.

It is not unusual for Bisu young men to spend several years in the Buddhist monkhood, often to take advantage of opportunities for social and educational advancement.

1.1.3.4 Religion

The Bisu are Buddhist in theory, animist in practice. There is one spirit, the *aŋcao* ‘lord,’ who is considered the main supernatural ruler of the village.⁴ This deity has an assistant named *máa* ‘horse’ who, as the name implies, takes care of the head spirit’s horses.⁵ Two small open-air shelters outside the Southeast corner of the village mark the spot where these spirits receive sacrifices of chickens and whiskey three times per year. For the purposes of this sacrifice, the village is divided into three sections, each third responsible for providing chickens for sacrifice for one of the sacrificial days. The village spirit doctor presides over the ceremony, placing the slaughtered and boiled chickens on the altar and chanting in Northern Thai. He then draws bits of broken rice out of a small cup to discover the spirit’s culinary desires: the number of grains indicates whether the spirit wants more whiskey, salt, broth, and so forth, as well as telling when it is full. All the villagers are forbidden to work the fields on sacrifice days: if they are caught doing so, they are fined 100 baht (a day’s wage). Rather, everyone is to forage for “forest food.”⁶

⁴ The Bisu believe that *aŋcao* is a loan word: in both Northern and Standard Thai *cao* means ‘lord,’ and can refer to supernatural beings or human authority figures.

⁵ This despite the fact that the Bisu have not had any horses—at least in recent memory. *máa* is actually a Chinese word which has been borrowed by numerous languages throughout Southeast Asia.

⁶ There is something of a similarity here to the ancient Hebrew “Feast of Booths,” during which the faithful were to live in small shelters in commemoration of their nomadic past. Similarly, foraging on Bisu sacrifice days recalls the groups not-so-distant history as quasi hunter-gatherers.

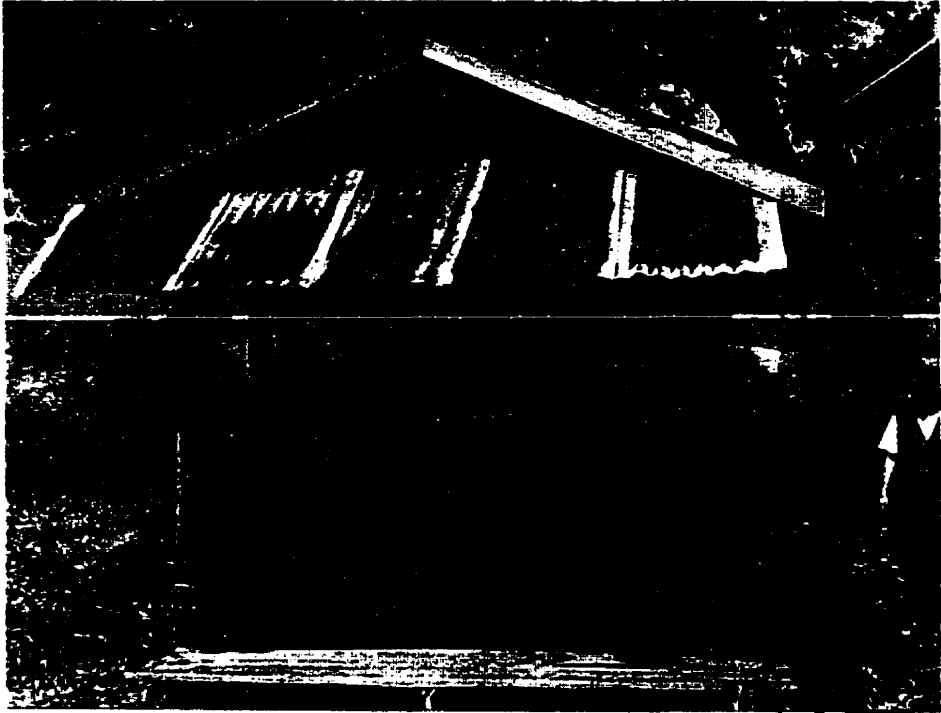


Figure 1.09. Shrine of *aŋcaŋ*.



Figure 1.10. Shaman presenting sacrifices to *aŋcaŋ*, performing rice counting divination.

Additional spirits are thought to abound in the forest, in caves, in fields, and so forth. When offended, these spirits are thought to cause illness and, sometimes, death. The Bisu delineate between illnesses which respond to the modern medicines available at the nearby clinic (their first course of action) and those which do not and are thus attributed to spiritual forces. In the latter case, the sick person or a member of his or her family will consult the meter-long "spirit stick." Direct yes/no questions are addressed to the spirit stick: "Was it a spirit in the forest? Was it a spirit in the field?" To answer in the affirmative, the stick is said to become several inches longer. Next, questions about appropriate sacrifices are asked: "Should I sacrifice one chicken? Two chickens? A pig?" Again, the stick becomes longer when the correct offering is mentioned. The sacrifices will be performed by the sick person or a member of his or her family in the location revealed by the spirit stick.

The Bisu acknowledge that Buddhism is a relative newcomer to their religious world. Indeed, one young Bisu leader intimated that the Bisu built Buddhist temples in their villages in part to gain the respect of the Northern Thai. Most Bisu men have spent time in the Buddhist priesthood, either as adults making merit for their parents or as young boys in need of education. Even in the 1990s it was not uncommon for particularly destitute Bisu families to have their young sons ordained in Northern Thai temples, where they would be fed and educated by Buddhist priests. The handful of literate Bisu males over age thirty were all educated in temples.

Buddhist holidays are celebrated in the Bisu villages with the same ceremonies used by the Northern Thai. Traditional Bisu funeral customs, which involved burial in the forest at the spot where an egg thrown by the spirit doctor landed, have been replaced by Buddhist cremations.

1.1.3.5 Marriage and family

The Bisu are divided into four patrilineal clans: *tsalacəə* ‘tiger,’ *kəŋkukcəə* ‘owl,’ *laŋʃjamcəə* ‘otter,’ and *senkent^haacəə*.⁷ The tiger clan is by far the largest group. Clan identification once played a role in settlement patterns. The two main Bisu villages can be divided into clan areas, although those areas are not formally marked nor do they play any administrative role in current village political life. As most people live in extended family compounds, these divisions go on more as a result of historical ownership/residence than any actively enforced rules. In the past, fields were also divided along clan lines—a phenomenon that ended with the coming of salable land deeds.

In theory, one is always supposed to marry outside one’s clan, regardless of whether the person involved is from ego’s village or another village. This rule can be circumvented, however, by having one of the individuals (usually the woman) spend a night or two in the home of someone from another clan. She is then considered a member of that clan, and the marriage can proceed immediately thereafter. Wives always take the clan identification of their husbands. Non-Bisu spouses, however, are not considered part of any clan, and Bisu women who have married outsiders retain their old clan membership.

In recent times, at least, Bisu young people have been permitted to choose their own spouses. The traditional marriage process as still practiced in the more conservative Doi Pui begins on an auspicious evening at the prospective groom’s house, as the senior member of the groom’s extended family is invited to share a meal and discuss the proposed engagement. After nightfall, the groom’s family lights

⁷ The village elders say that they do not know of any meaning for *senkent^haacəə* beyond its use as a clan name. Some speculate that the clan may have been formed by a particularly wealthy Bisu man in commemoration of his own greatness. This individual is also said to have left a special silver object that is still secretly possessed and zealously guarded by his descendants.

torches (even in this age of battery powered flashlights) and processes to the prospective bride's home. The torches may be extinguished at the door or, if the bride's family is one of the few who still have fireboxes inside their houses, brought into the kitchen area. The elders of the respective families then begin light-hearted negotiations on the details of the arrangement, including bride price, although many of these matters have been determined beforehand. Once an agreement has been reached, the groom is summoned.

Before the marriage ceremony takes place, however, the prospective groom is expected to work for his fiancée's family for 1–3 years without compensation. He is to live in her parents' house, often sleeping on the front porch. Sexual relations are permitted during the engagement period, and it is not uncommon for a couple to have one or more children by the time they are finally wed. At the conclusion of this time, the bride's family still has the right to reject the groom, something that has happened in recent memory. Conversely, the prospective groom has the right to break the engagement, something which likewise has happened in recent memory, when the prospective father-in-law took extreme advantage of the younger man's slave-like status.

Once the couple has successfully completed their engagement period, an auspicious day is chosen for the wedding. Relatives gather at the family homes of bride and groom alike. In the groom's bedroom, a bamboo *linga* is erected. Cotton strings are attached to the *linga*, thence being tied to various points throughout the bedroom and around the house. Friends and family members file into the room to pour a small amount of lustral water into a basin in front of the *linga*. Nearby the *linga* is an antique sword.

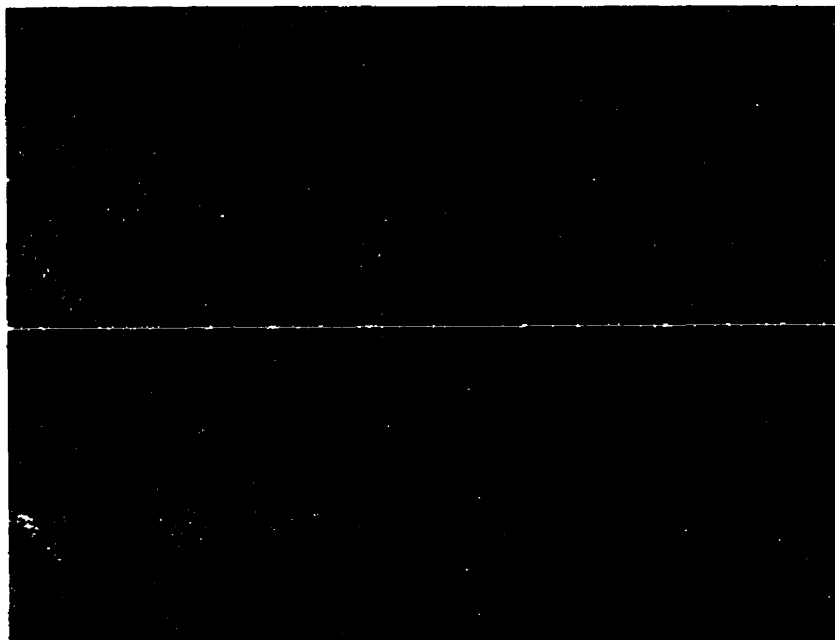


Figure 1.10. Detail, old Bisu wedding skirt.



Figure 1.11. Bisu headman with *linga* in groom's bedroom at outset of wedding.

When the time for the ceremony arrives, the groom and his party process to the bride's house. The procession is led by the village headman, carrying the sword. The groom is then escorted into the bride's bedroom, where her parents and other elderly relatives are waiting. The elders charge the couple to never divorce, and dispense a great deal of marital advice. One of the male elders then takes a lump of sticky rice and rolls it into small balls, claiming that his fingers are very dirty. He then places the rice in the mouths of bride and groom, then compels them to drink water from the same glass. The ceremony concludes with blessings from other elders.

The bride and groom then parade through the village en route to the house of the groom's family, the bride carrying basic household items in a bag hung from her forehead over her back. The newlyweds will usually move into their own house (even if it is only a small bamboo and thatch arrangement) soon after the ceremony; this contrasts with the Northern Thai custom of living with the bride's family for at least a year after the marriage (Suzanne Person 1998: 58).

In the distant past, marriage to non-Bisu individuals was forbidden. During the past thirty years, and especially the past ten years, more and more people have married outside of the tribe. This has been especially true in Pha Daeng Village; as this was always a mixed Northern Thai and Bisu village, a high rate of intermarriage has resulted in the young people speaking only Northern Thai, although some have a passive understanding of simple Bisu. All three villages have seen a number of young people, especially young women, seek employment on the outside, some going as far away as Bangkok. Many marry non-Bisu spouses. Doi Pui, the most aggressively conservative of the three villages, does not allow these mixed families to live within the village borders. This was tested as recently as 1999, when an HIV-positive

Southern Thai man and his Bisu wife were unsuccessful in their bid to spend their final months in Doi Pui.

1.3 Sociolinguistic situation

1.3.1 Multilingualism

In his 1994 study, *Linguistic diversity and national unity: language ecology in Thailand*, William Smalley groups the seventy languages spoken in Thailand into a hierarchy, as shown in figure 1.11:

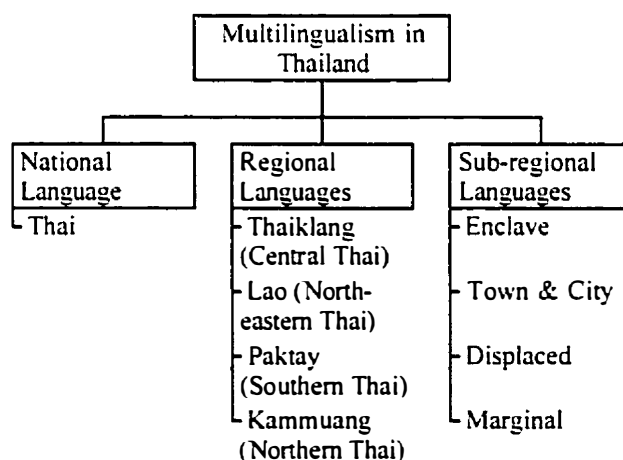


Figure 1.12. The linguistic hierarchy in Thailand.
(adapted from Smalley 1994: 69)

Standard Thai, the national language, occupies the highest level of the hierarchy. This is the language of education, government, and the media, reflecting Central Thai as spoken in Bangkok. It is second in prestige only to English, the global language whose mastery indicates a truly elite position in Thai society. On the next level are the four “regional” languages. Central, Northeastern, Northern, and Southern Thai. These all see vigorous oral use in their respective regions, on the village and

household level, and sometimes in the markets, with a small amount of use in the local media. The regional languages are less prestigious than Standard Thai, despite the fact that many speakers consider their regional tongues superior to the national language in expressing deep thoughts and emotions. The regional languages often serve as the language of wider communication for the sub-regional languages. Enclave languages include most of the northern hill tribes, which represent islands of Mon-Khmer and Tibeto-Burman speakers amidst a Thai sea. Town and city languages include several Chinese dialects and Vietnamese, while displaced languages include Phuan and Song, whose speakers were brought into Thailand during military campaigns. The marginal languages are those whose main population is located outside of Thailand, thus including groups like So and Northern Khmer.

Loan words and grammatical influences necessarily work their way down on the hierarchy. Thus, Standard Thai words are continually making inroads into the regional languages, while the sub-regional languages are impacted by both Standard Thai and their respective regional languages.

While Bisu could be considered a marginal language (since the majority of speakers are in China), Smalley classifies it as an enclave language. This is appropriate, given the fact that the Thai Bisu have no contact with their Chinese cousins who, in turn, live in a vastly different sociolinguistic context. Older Bisu people have a basic grasp of Northern Thai, but often speak with a noticeable accent—for which they were mocked in the “bad old days.” Those in the 25–50 age bracket are bilingual in Northern Thai, fully able to pass themselves off as native speakers. Nonetheless, these individuals often do not have a very firm hold on Standard Thai, often using Northern Thai lexical items and tone patterns when trying to express themselves in Standard Thai. Most Bisu under twenty five have spent at

least six years in the Thai school system (which, in theory, uses only Standard Thai, although in practice teachers often lecture in the regional language) and have been impacted by radio and television. The younger generation is thus able to act with confidence in Standard Thai, Northern Thai, and Bisu.

1.3.2 Contexts of use

Bisu is used in the home, in the village community, and in the fields with other Bisu people. If Northern Thai people are present (such as those who have married Bisu), the group will often switch to Northern Thai. Village meetings in Doi Chompuu village are usually carried out in Northern Thai for the benefit of Northern Thai men married to Bisu women. Nonetheless, meeting participants have been observed to switch to Bisu when problems with Northern Thai people are discussed (land swindles, efforts by a Northern Thai temple to “steal” the village’s sole adult Buddhist monk, etc.). Some Bisu switch to Northern Thai, even in speaking to other Bisu, in Northern Thai villages or cities, while others enjoy the puzzled expressions of Northern Thai passerbys trying to figure out what language they are speaking. The Bisu draw particular satisfaction from having Northern Thai guess they are speaking English or French!

Children are taught both Bisu and Northern Thai from birth. Children may be scolded in either language, although particularly harsh reprimands are often delivered in Northern Thai. It is not uncommon to hear children and parents discussing the day’s events at school in Northern Thai (the most spoken language at school, despite government policy), then switching to Bisu to discuss non–school matters.

1.3.3 Language viability

The numerical weakness of the Bisu and the ongoing linguistic pressures of the larger Thai world place the language in a state of endangerment. The question thus becomes one of how long Bisu will remain viable.

Factors that would seem to mitigate against the long term viability of Bisu include the following (adapted from Suwilai 1995, as cited in Miglizza 1998: 22):

1. **Language policy of the Thai government:** The school curriculum is in standard Thai, and students are discouraged from using minority languages at school for fear of factionalism and general trouble making.

2. **Employment outside the language area:** Frustrated by the hard economic realities of village life, many Bisu young people spend at least several years in semi-skilled jobs in Bangkok, Chiang Mai, or other cities. Most hope to eventually return to the village, although it is difficult to guess how many actually will.

3. **Marriage outside their language community:** As mentioned earlier, intermarriage with non-Bisu speakers is increasing, especially as more young people seek educational and occupational opportunities outside of the village. It is nonetheless interesting to note that offspring of such unions are likely to learn Bisu *if* they spend the bulk of their childhood in a Bisu village.

4. **Pervasive influence of mass media:** Since the arrival of electricity in the Bisu villages in the mid-1990s, Standard Thai radio and television broadcasts have become quite influential.

Nonetheless, several other factors indicate that Bisu has a good chance of remaining viable for at least a few more generations. These include:

1. **Interest of the Thai Royal Family:** For many years, the Thai Royal Family has taken an active interest in enhancing the lives of various ethnic minorities, primarily through agricultural projects and the promotion of local crafts. During his younger days, His Majesty King Bhumibol Adulyadej, the “Lord of Life,” frequently visited remote hilltribe villages, working with the villagers to solve local dilemmas. The Bisu had not been part of prior Royal Projects, primarily because of their small numbers and lack of readily identifiable ethnic dress. In 1999, however, a unit of Royal Project medical workers began visiting Doi Chompoo Village on a regular basis. In addition, the author and his wife had the honor of presenting the first Bisu books to Her Royal Highness Crown Princess Maha Chakri Sirindhorn, an event that was broadcast on Thai national news (figure 1.13). The Bisu enjoy telling their Northern Thai neighbors, “The Crown Princess has our words!” That one of the most beloved and revered figures in the kingdom values their language and culture has been a significant source of inspiration for the Bisu.

2. **Growing appreciation of ethnic diversity:** The Thai government has taken some steps toward encouraging the unique cultures of the ethnic minorities. Much of this began in the late 1980s, as Thailand became a popular tourist destination. The Tourism Authority of Thailand has sponsored a number of hilltribe fairs, festivals, and sporting events, some of which have been covered on national television. The Bisu would like to become involved in these activities, and there has been discussion of reviving their ethnic dress to draw the attention of Thai officials.

3. **Language attitude:** Although there is some individual variation, most Bisu value their language. This is manifest by the fact that they still teach it to their

children, and that they have requested help from Thai government and the academic community to preserve their language and culture.

4. **Development of a written language:** In December 1998 some thirty Bisu of all ages gathered in the Doi Chompuu village temple to reach a consensus on how Bisu should be written using the Thai script (Person 1999). Since then, Bisu authors trained in joint Payap University–SIL International workshops have produced nearly forty short books, including folktales, a Bisu–Thai–English picture dictionary, and basic literacy materials.



Figure 1.13. Her Royal Highness Crown Princess Maha Chakri Sirindhorn receives the first Bisu books from the author and his wife.

1.3 Motivation and scope of the study

1.3.1 Research problem

Particles are a vital component of many Asian languages. Nonetheless, they typically receive little treatment in grammatical studies (Chan 1999). This may be due in part to the theoretical orientations of generative grammar which, intentionally or accidentally, can tend to skew data collection and analysis toward theory–predicted sentence alignments. In addition, the exact meaning and usage of many particles can be anything but obvious. Even educated native speakers will often tell the analyst that particles are not “true words” and have no “real” meaning. The fact that particle use is more abundant in the spoken language than the written *language* also contributes to this neglect; many native and non–native speakers of a language assume that the written form is somehow more “correct” than ordinary, sloppy speech.

Bisu is a case in point. As any cultural outsider who has ever attempted to learn Bisu can attest, it is quite easy to master the basic SOV sentence structure of the language. The greatest challenge comes sentence finally, where one to six syllables can be strung together in a way that profoundly impacts the meaning of the utterance. It is extremely difficult to discover the meaning of these particles, and otherwise identical sentences can take different particle sets in different situations.

In his 1976 paper on “Mystery Particles.” Robert Longacre highlights the fact that many particles can only be understood from the discourse perspective. As all three published works on Bisu grammar are limited to discussions on the sentence level, where particle usage seems somewhat unpredictable, a discourse–minded approach is needed.

1.3.2 Research question

The basic question addressed in this dissertation is one of how particles function in Bisu discourse. The working hypothesis is that particle usage in Bisu discourse is affected by a number of factors, including text type, genre, place in the discourse, transitivity, and semantic connotations, and that once these factors are understood, particle usage will become somewhat more predictable.

1.3.3 Scope and limitations

This dissertation has as its primary concern an understanding of the meaning of individual particles and their usage in the context of written folktales. A secondary concern involves the uses of particles in life stories and expository texts. The folktales, life stories, and expository texts are monologues, although some conversation is embedded in the folktales. Thus, this work does not aspire to explain the use of particles in Bisu dialogue. In addition, while Bisu particles are occasionally compared to counterparts in other Asian languages, no attempt is made to formulate systematic cross-linguistic generalizations.

1.4 Outline of Bisu phonology

The purpose of this section is to provide the reader with a basic overview of Bisu phonology such that the examples cited throughout this text will be more readily comprehensible. This section will draw from the fieldwork of the author and other researchers, relying heavily upon the recently developed Bisu orthography (Person 1999).

1.4.1 Syllable structure

Native Bisu syllables (as opposed to Daic loan words) have the canonical form C1 (C2) V T (C3), where C1 represents an obligatory initial consonant, C2 and optional second element in a consonant cluster, V an obligatory vowel, T an obligatory tone, and C3 an optional final consonant. Stress, a relatively minor component of Bisu phonology, does not affect syllable structure. Bisu syllables follow the sonority sequencing principle in featuring a rise in sonority from onset to nucleus, as illustrated in the following words:

Phonetic transcription	English gloss	Phonetic transcription	English gloss
ŋè	to be struck by a falling tree	kòŋkúp	owl
naŋ	you (sg)	p ^h æ̀lòŋ	bag
p ^h lúp	to expectorate	k ^h wáat	water channel

1.4.2 Initial consonants

Bisu has 30 initial consonants, as shown in figure 1.14. Nine of these, /p, t, k, ʔ, m, n, ŋ, w, j/, also serve as final consonants.⁸

⁸ The presence of these final consonants is notable: many other languages of the Southern Yiphoish/Loloish branch no longer have final consonants (Edmondson 2000).

		Labial	Alveolar	Palatal	Velar	Glottal
stops	Vl	p	t	c	k	ʔ
	Vl Asp	p ^h	t ^h		k ^h	
	Vd	b	d		g	
fricatives	Vl		s	ʃ		h
affricates	Vl		ts			
	Vl Asp		ts ^h	tʃ ^h		
laterals	Vd			l		
	Vl			hl		
nasals	Vd	m	n	ɲ	ŋ	
	Vl	hm	hn	hɲ	hŋ	
approximants	Vd			j	w	
	Vl			hj		

Figure 1.14. Initial consonants.

The following words illustrate each of the initial consonants:

Initial Cons.	Phonetic transcription	English gloss	Initial Cons.	Phonetic transcription	English gloss
p	pɔŋ ^h naa	water buffalo	n	naŋ	2ps
t	toɔloɔ	butterfly	ɲ	ɲàmpàj	grasshopper
c	cók cók	lizard	ŋ	ŋè	to be struck by a falling tree
k	kòŋkúp	owl	hm	hmjaa	knife
ʔ	ʔùuhlòŋ	pot	hn	hnàw	mucus
p ^h	p ^h ælòŋ	bag	hŋ	hŋaaŋ	fishing pole
t ^h	t ^h àaŋ	sword	hŋ	hŋèe	leech
tʃ ^h	tʃ ^h oohmaasè	yawn	s	sùk ^h òɔ	cucumber
k ^h	k ^h àlaw	shirt	j	jàabii	young woman
b	bè	to lick	h	hootàm	rat
d	dæjàa	ghost	ʃ	ʃì	blood

g	gaa	lps	w	wàa	pig
ts	tsàa	to eat	l	lɔɔbaa	stone
ts ^h	ts ^h alàa	tiger	hl	ʔùuhlòŋ	pot
m	mòŋ mònŋ	mango	hj	hjaa	chicken

1.4.3 Consonant clusters

Various researchers have come to different conclusions as to the exact number of consonant clusters in Bisu.⁹ The Bisu orthography currently recognizes fourteen, as shown in figure 1.15.¹⁰

	C2	l	j	w
C1				
p		x	x	
p ^h		x	x	
b		x	x	
k		x	x	x
k ^h		x	x	x
hm		x	x	

Figure 1.15. Consonant clusters.

Consonant clusters only occur in syllable initial position. The following words illustrate each of the consonant clusters:

Cons. cluster	Phonetic transcription	English gloss	Cons. cluster	Phonetic transcription	English gloss
pl	nàmplaʔ	round cucumber	p ^h j	p ^h jaa	to tear down

⁹ Efforts to elicit words for some of the other clusters described by other researchers failed. Most of the sounds concerned were reported to occur very rarely.

¹⁰ Nishida and Beaudouin describe some of these as labialized or palatalized sounds, while Nuamkaew terms them clusters. In terms of the Bisu orthography, all are interpreted as clusters.

p ^h l	p ^h lúp	expectorate	bj	bjáa	to clear a field
bl	blàa	arrow	hmj	lɔŋ hmjaa	shrimp
kl	klaa	to fall	kj	ʔùukjaŋ	tree-dwelling ant
k ^h l	k ^h əək	to be broken	k ^h j	ʔùuk ^h jàa	field crab
kw	kwàa	°to hunt	k ^h w	k ^h wáat	water channel
pj	pjàa	bee	hml	hmlàaŋ	long time

1.4.4 Vowels and diphthongs

Like Thai, Bisu has nine vowels, as shown in figure 1.16:

	Front	Central	Back
High	i	ɤ	u
Mid	e	ə	o
Low	æ	a	ɔ

Figure 1.16. Bisu vowels.

Unlike Thai, Bisu vowels do not have phonemic length contrast. Length is an issue phonetically, however, and the Bisu have insisted in indicating length in their orthography (Person forthcoming).

Two diphthongs, /aw/ and /aj/ occur frequently in Bisu, and are also found in Thai.¹¹ The following words illustrate each of the vowels and diphthongs:

Vowel	Phonetic transcription	English gloss	Vowel	Phonetic transcription	English gloss
i	ciŋkoŋmàa làaŋ	praying mantis	ii	ʃii	blood

¹¹ Additional diphthongs are mentioned by Beaudouin in STEDT (Namkung 1996). These would seem to be very rare, sometimes the result of borrowing. Only two diphthongs are recognized in the current Bisu orthography.

e	lékkòn	nail	ee	ɲèe	to be struck by a falling tree
æ	p ^h æ̀ræʔ	goat	ææ	bæ̀æ	to lick
u	nàaʃùŋ	ear	uu	sùuk ^h òo	cucumber
ə	k ^h əʔ	to, toward	əə	tsàakèəŋ	dish eaten with rice
a	naŋ	you (sg)	aa	wàa	pig
u	p ^h lúp	expectorate	uu	?ùuhlòŋ	pot
o	joʔ	yonder (intermediate distance)	oo	rakòoŋ	bracelet
o	cók cók	lizard	oo	tòoloo	butterfly
aw	hnàw	mucus	aj	ɲàmpàj	grasshopper

1.4.5 Tone

Bisu has three contrastive tones, low, mid, and high, as illustrated in the following words (Vacharee 1987: 110):

Phonetic transcription	English gloss	Phonetic transcription	English gloss
hjàa	to itch	lùm	Clf of misc. objects
hjaa	chicken	lum	to forget
hjáa	field	lúm	to be hot

All initial consonants are attested in low–tone syllables, with the exception of *hŋ* and *hŋ* (which occur rather infrequently on the whole). Similarly, all initial consonants may begin mid–tone syllables. All initial consonants save *n*, *ŋ*, *hn*, *d*, *tʃ^h*, and *ts* may begin high–tone syllables (Vacharee 1987: 114).

Vacharee's analysis of 1,512 major syllables found 422 low–tone syllables, 1,008 mid–tone syllables, and a mere 82 high–tone syllables (1987: 115). This

dramatic distribution curve accounts for the relatively few examples of three-way tonal contrast in identical environments.

1.4.6 Other phonological processes

1.4.6.1 Tone sandhi

There is a limited amount of tone sandhi in Bisu, particularly in the verb phrase and in particle clusters. The low tone preverbal negation marker *bà*, for example, typically lowers the tone of the immediately following word. Similarly, the mid-toned *tʃ^hii*, one of the most frequently occurring sentence final particles, often becomes low-toned under the influence of the preceding word or particle, as shown in example 1.1:

- (1.1) *cáa aŋjàa màaŋ tɔɔj lùu tʃ^hii jèe*
 then child Clf. release go pt pt

Then the child released him to go. (CK 35)

1.4.6.2 The mysterious floating nasals

One of the greatest challenges for outsiders learning Bisu is determining whether or not a word ends in a nasal. This is due to the fact that nasals (usually [n] or [ŋ]) seem to “pop-up” between many words. This phenomenon has not been documented in any published research, something which Makkio Katsura relates to the fact that it is very difficult to understand. In his ten years of thinking seriously about the Bisu language, he has yet to discover any systematic phonological process at work here. Thus, Katsura has dubbed the floating nasals, “One of the two greatest mysteries about Bisu” (Katsura 2000).¹² Most Bisu seem unconscious of most of

¹² The second “great mystery,” claims Katsura, is the sentence final particle system.

these nasals, and rarely attempt to transcribe them. This is definitely an area where further research is needed.

(1.2) kwaan
sweep

juum	kwaan	ɲ	bəən	ja
house	sweep		finished	pt-af̃

[I've] finished sweeping the house.

1.4.6.3 Assimilation of initial /j/

When a word ending with a vowel is followed by a word beginning with /j/, a process of assimilation often occurs.

(1.3) tsaa
eat
hàaŋ tsaa j ja
rice eat pt-quest

Have you eaten?

Again, as with the mysterious floating nasals, the Bisu seem largely unconscious of this process: the floating /j/s are rarely written. This is yet another area for further research.

1.5 Outline of Bisu syntax

The purpose of this section is to provide a basic syntactic sketch of Bisu. This in no way attempts to be a complete grammar of the language; rather, the ensuing pages will provide the syntactic background necessary for the reader to more clearly understand the particle-related discussions to follow.

1.5.1 Areal features

Bisu grammar is typical of Tibeto–Burman languages on a number of points. Morphemes correlate closely to syllables. An extensive system of classifiers modify nouns. Serial verbs are often used to encode successive events. Nouns do not take any sort of case or gender markers, nor are verbs inflected for voice, tense, gender, or number. There is no subject–verb agreement system. The handful of affixes present in the language have a low functional load, with their utilization being determined more by syntactic contexts than morphological word building. Semantically, there are a large number of distinct lexical items showing various shades of carrying and cutting words (Solnit 1997: 7). Zero anaphora is used extensively in discourse.

1.5.2 The noun phrase

Bisu noun phrases are typically ordered possessor, head, adjective, determiner, numeral, classifier, as shown in the following examples:

- (1.4) ɭaŋʃjaam t^hùu maŋ
 otter one Clf
 one otter (AK 3)¹³

¹³ Text abbreviations may be found in sections 3.1.1, 3.1.2, and 3.1.3. Sentences elicited from the grammatical questionnaire are designated GQS.

- (1.5) man ?aŋ?u?aŋhùu saam ?aŋ
 tuber large three Clf
 three large tubers (GQS 55)
- (1.6) gaa aŋjâa aŋlak maŋ
 lps child beloved Clf
 my beloved child (CW 16)
- (1.7) aŋboon tuk^hjàam
 father skull
 father's skull (FS 1)
- (1.8) gaa aŋbloon naamaa
 lps husband this_one
 this my husband (CK 25)
- (1.9) aŋbaa aŋjùu máa
 mother new Clf
 the new mother (OR 6)
- (1.10) aŋboon póomaaŋ nŋbaa bàa mææn
 father widower heart neg. good
 bad hearted widower–father (CW 1)
- (1.11) laŋjaam pùu namàa
 otter rotten this
 this rotten otter (AK 32)

1.5.3 The verb phrase

The verb phrase is composed of the head verb and any adverbs or sentence final particles (the function of which will be discussed later in this dissertation) which may

accompany it. Adverbs are often non-adjacent to the head verb, as shown in examples 1.12–1.15 (verb phrases underlined):

- (1.12) jaŋ juum hæə æən tʃ^hii jèe kjàap jèe
 3ps house at ascend pt pt quiet pt

She thus returned home quietly. (CO 23)

- (1.13) jaŋ àŋwàaj k^hjaan jèe hùun luun tʃ^hii
 3ps quickly quickly pt run pt pt

The child ran away quickly. (MB 25)

- (1.14) cáa aŋbaa aŋʃùu máa hæmæ hmjaan jao aŋwàj jèe
 then mother new Clf like that see then quickly pt
 juum ʔook hæə plæk klaan luu tʃ^hii
 house exit at jump fall pt pt

Then when the new mother saw that, then she quickly jumped out of the house and fell to the ground. (OR 33)

- (1.15) hæŋ aŋboon maŋ kùt gaa làəjao aŋwàj aŋk^hjaan
 after father Clf think pt then quickly quickly
 ʃòŋkɔŋ joo hùun læn tʃ^hii
 forest at run pt pt

After that, the father came to a realization and (he) quickly ran to the forest. (CW 21)

1.5.3.3 Verbal adjectives

Like many languages in Southeast Asia, Bisu makes abundant use of verbal adjectives.¹⁴ These are morphologically identical to adjectives found in noun phrases, but function as the predicate of the sentence, as shown in examples 1.16–1.18:

¹⁴ In discussing Lahu, another Tibeto-Burman language, Matisoff (1973: 195) points out:

The fact that Lahu adjectives are simply a subclass of the verbs is a point that Lahu shares with her Sino-Tibetan sisters, as well as with Thai, Cambodian, Japanese, and many other genetically unrelated languages. From a general typological viewpoint, Indo-European seems to be

(1.16) antùk jèe
poor pt

(He) was poor. (PB 2)

(1.17) ank^hlæù jèe
lazy pt

(He) was lazy. (MB 3)

(1.18) baa nój ?antùn
Mr. Noi fat

Noi is fat. (GQS 15)

1.5.3.4 Serial verbs

Like many languages in Southeast Asia, Bisu makes abundant use of serial verbs. Series of actions which would be handled as separate clauses in English are thus handled as single clauses. In the written folktale corpus, a maximum of four serial verbs are used, as shown in the following examples:

(1.19) anjàa màaŋ naa hùøn dùuj ?oøk pooj lèu
child Clf ACC run dig exit lay out pt

He ran and dug up and took out and laid out the child. (CW 22)

(1.20) kamlaŋ hæə ?ùuhoonŋ maŋ pòon^hnaa maŋ
momentarily at turtle Clf water buffalo Clf
naatúu mànpooŋ cóot klaaj tùuj paanòo
upper lip mouth enter quickly fall strike pt

Momentarily, the turtle fell down into the mouth of the water buffalo.
(ST 15)

idiosyncratic in having separate adjective-classes that show, if anything, greater affinity for the nouns than for the verbs.

1.5.4 The clause

Like most Tibeto–Burman languages, the basic clausal order of Bisu is SOV. This is true of all text types.

1.5.4.1 Clauses which may involve the accusative-like *naa* (*naa~naʔ*)

Typical western grammar paradigms make a systematic distinction between direct and indirect objects, transitive and intransitive clauses. Such distinctions are less useful in Bisu, as they are in Lahu (Matisoff 1973: 157).

In the Bisu context, it is useful to discuss the role of *naa*, which carries something of an accusative-like function. Nonetheless, it is hazardous to try to describe the full functions of *naa* with a single designation.¹⁵ James Matisoff's comments on the Lahu equivalent, *t^hàʔ~àʔ~hà*, are relevant here:

Note that we do not assign any very precise meaning to the term 'object' in Lahu grammar. It is merely a convenient intuitive label for any NP whose last element is *t^hàʔ*, or wherein *t^hàʔ* may grammatically be inserted with no effect on the meaning beyond a certain change of emphasis. *t^hàʔ* by no means occurs mechanically after every noun that is the 'recipient of the action of the verb.' It is, rather, used quite sparingly, only where clarity demands or when special emphasis is desired (1973: 155).

In this spirit, then, the remainder of this section will examine a number of sentences where *naa* is or could be used.

The following examples show *naa* following the direct object:

¹⁵ Throughout this dissertation, *naʔ* is glossed as "ACC" as a matter of convenience, despite the fact that its exact role is somewhat ambiguous.

- (1.21) ?iinææ ná? lan?kla?o pii n?ææ
 baby ACC bath cause pt

(I) bathe the baby (daily). (E 7)

- (1.22) an?jàa màan? naa hùun dùuj ?o?k pooj làu
 child Clf ACC run dig exit lay out pt

He ran and dug up and took out and laid out the child. (CW 22)

- (1.23) cáa an?baa an?ùu máa an?jàa màn? jèet naa
 then mother new Clf child Clf both ACC
 bàa so? jèe
 neg like pt

And the new mother did not like the two children. (OR 6)

- (1.24) naan? gaa na? gaa làa suun? jâ?o naan? an?jàa
 2ps 1ps ACC pt pt pt then 2ps child
 man? na? sææ pèe
 Clf ACC kill IMP

“If you want me, kill your child!” (CW 11)

Examples 1.25–1.26 illustrate how, in discourse, *naa~na?* is frequently absent.

- (1.25) hik^hàm lan?jaam man? ka?taj man? ?ææn?k^hàa
 that time otter Clf rabbit Clf fart
 buum tʃ^hii pannò?
 suck pt pt

At that time the otter sucked on the fart of the rabbit. (AK 22)

- (1.26) hææn? jèe mo?joŋ làaj ?ææ tʃ^hii
 after pt gong get ascend pt

After that (she) went to get a gong. (CK 33)

Sentences 1.27–1.28 illustrate how *naa* may follow the entire “object complex,” a designation which includes direct and indirect objects:

- (1.27) kirk mak^haam suzie naa pii
 (name) tamarind (name) ACC give

Kirk gave Suzie a tamarind. (F 11)

- (1.28) baa suk man jàaŋ ga ná? pii lá? ɲææ
 Mr. Suk Clf 3ps 1ps ACC give pt pt

Suk gave me a tuber. (GQS 56)

“Intransitive” sentences that do not contain anything that could be construed as an object do not take *naa*, as shown in examples 1.29 and 1.30:

- (1.29) aŋbii aŋblooŋ t^hùu kùu caaŋ jèe
 wife husband one couple have pt

There was a husband and wife. (CK 1)

- (1.30) jaaŋ àŋwàaj k^hjaaŋ jèe hùun luun tʃ^hii
 3ps quickly quickly pt run pt pt

He (the child) ran away quickly. (MB 25)

1.5.5 Time and location

The time and location of events typically is stated at the onset of the clause, usually followed by *həə*, *wə?*, *jèe*, or *jóo*, as shown in examples 1.35 and 1.36 (time and location phrases underlined):

- (1.31) mùnk^hii jàamlàaŋ həə lánhúaj wə? laŋʃjaam
 dark evening at stream at otter
 t^hùu maŋ cáa k^haalaj
 one Clf have pt

When it was almost dark, at the stream, there was an otter. (AK 3)

- (1.32) kalòokkalìik hæ tʃ^háp læjáo kiibaa t^haan
 underarm at insert and_then path beside
hæ coon tʃ^hii jèe
 at hide pt pt

(The rabbit) inserted (the stick) under (the rabbit's) arm and went to hide himself alongside the path. (AK 24)

- (1.33) hææn jèe tʃ^hæŋkõojkõoj maŋ bææn jao hùun
 after_that Chengkoikoi Clf know then run
 k^hèe lææn tʃ^hii
 follow pt pt

After that, when Chengkoikoi realized what had happened, she ran after him. (CK 23)

- (1.34) sùuk^hajlòok pǎŋ joo kap jàaŋ k^hòoj tʃ^hiitʃ^hajao
 (type of tree) Clf. at trap that set leave in place

She set the trap at the suukhajlook tree and left it there. (TS 29)

Movement of a time phrase to a later point in a sentence may serve to emphasize a point, as in example 1.35, wherein an evil father repeatedly tries to abandon his children in the forest:

- (1.35) cáa jàakee maŋ jèet mi kuu t^hæe jèe juum
 then child Clf both well every occurrence pt house
 aŋlæu lææ gaa kaa
 return pt pt pt

Then both children, well, every time were able to return home. (OR 9)

1.5.6 Zero anaphora

Like many Asian languages, Bisu makes abundant use of zero anaphora in discourses. Typically, a participant's identity will be stated only in the first sentence in a series where the referent is unambiguous, as shown in the first episode of Ai Kham:

(1.36) mùŋk^hi jàamlæŋ hæ lánhúaj wə? laŋʃjaam
 dark evening at stream at otter
 t^hùu maŋ cáa k^haalaj
 one Clf have pt

When it was almost dark, at the stream, there was an otter. (AK 3)

∅ naasóon na? hmjaan tʃ^hi jèe
 ∅ fish trap ACC see pt pt

(He) saw the fish trap. (AK 4)

∅ jào naasóon hæ ɔɔŋ læn tʃ^hi jèe
 ∅ then fish trap at enter pt pt pt

And then (he) went into the fish trap. (AK 5)

∅ lòɔŋtæ ʔɔɔŋ tsàa k^hoo pìi tʃ^hi jee
 ∅ fish enter eat completely pt pt pt

(He) ate all the fish completely. (AK 6)

∅ cáa k^hoon jáo bàa ʔook lùu tɔɔ ka? jèe
 ∅ then completely then neg. exit pt pt pt pt

Then after the (fish) were all gone, (he) could not get out. (AK 7)

1.5.7 Embedded clauses

Embedded clauses have been observed in a number of positions, as shown in examples 1.37–1.39:

(1.37) gaa wàa naan máa làa tʃ^hi mæ haaj jàa
 1ps this 2ps tell pt pt same do pt

“I did what you told me to do.” (CW 15)

- (1.38) k^hàatooŋ æən næə nà? àahaa tsàa ləə coo
 self clever pt pt IMP think pt IMP

“I’m clever”—don’t think that! (CO 1)

- (1.39) ?ùuhooŋ anjàa ?úu anbaa maŋ luu na?
 turtle child group mother Clf return ACC
 hmjaan klæəklæə jèe
 see call out pt

The turtle kids saw that their mother was returning and called out. (TS 23)

Relative clauses do not receive any distinctive markers, but are rather inserted immediately after the nouns they modify, as shown in examples 1.40–1.41:

- (1.40) ?acām k^hùu anbaa kuu t^həə næə k^hèe
 in addition dog mother every occurrence npt follow
plòoŋ maŋ bàa caa lá?waa
 help Clf neg have pt

In addition, the mother dog who always followed and helped them was not there. (OR 17)

- (1.41) níi naŋ gaa naa tsàa làaŋ jâo ciikùu gaa
 this 2ps 1ps ACC eat pt then thorn 1ps
lak^hũu t^hao lælat^hinín ts^həə cák ?ook
 foot pierce at_that_place bite pull exit
 luu laa poonoo
 pt pt pt

“If you want to eat me, pull out that thorn that pierced my foot, please!” (TD 17)

1.5.8 Compound sentences

A number of relationships, including condition, causality, and sequence, are not encoded lexically with words such as ‘if’, ‘because’, and ‘when’, but are rather

indicated through the position of two adjacent clauses within the same sentence or across sentence boundaries, as shown in examples 1.42–1.45:

- (1.42) níi naŋ gaa naa tsàa làaŋ jao cìikùu gaa
 this 2ps lps ACC eat pt then thorn lps
lak^hũu tʃ^hao lælatʃ^hinín ts^hææ cák ʔɔɔk
 foot pierce at that place bite pull exit
 læu laa poonoo
 pt pt pt

“If you want to eat me, pull out that thorn that pierced my foot, please!” (TD 17)

- (1.43) naaŋ gaa naʔ gaa làa sũuŋ jao naaŋ aŋjàa
 2ps lps ACC pt pt pt then 2ps child
 maŋ naʔ sææ pèe
 Clf ACC kill IMP

“If you want me, kill your child!” (CW 11)

- (1.44) p^hii k^hàm laʔkàa lòŋtææ koŋ jàaŋ kooj
 grandmother Kham in_front_of fish pile that gather
 jao juum hææ ææn lææ tʃ^hii jèe
 then house at ascend pt pt pt

[Previous sentence= ‘she knew the technique’] [So], she took those fish that were piled up in front of Grandmother Kham and then went home. (CO 18)

- (1.45) hæmæ kjàaj jao aŋboŋ máa namlææw jèe
 like_that hear then father Clf finally pt
 nũuŋbaa plaak ʃiin tʃ^hii
 heart break die pt

When he heard that, the father’s heart broke and he immediately died. (OR 32)

1.5.9 Changes in constituent order (right–dislocation)

Right–dislocation may be utilized for emphasis or clarification, as shown in examples 1.46–1.59. It should be noted that the sentence final particles in these sentences remain adjacent to the verb, rather than following the dislocated element.

- (1.46) cáa naan lan̄kaa naowaa kasəəj ʔuu
 then ask pt pt monkey group
 Then they asked each other—the monkeys. (PB 34)

- (1.47) joo nan̄ k^haʔkoo ʔuukooj pao baacəə laʔman̄miʔ
 well, 2ps take pile gather IMP what which one
 “Well, take a pile—whichever one (you want).”(CO 16)

- (1.48) poo cǎj tʃ^hii jaan̄ t̄u k^hùn
 care_for pt pt 3ps one Clf
 (She) raised (just) one (of the two children). (FM 8)

- (1.49) wàt d̄uŋ l̄æ pii tʃ^hii maan̄p^hæə maan̄ j̄èe
 temple live pt pt pt younger_brother Clf pt
 The one caused to live at the temple was the younger brother.(FM 10)

CHAPTER 2

REVIEW OF RELEVANT INFLUENCES

2.0 Introduction

Any research project begins with certain presuppositions about the nature of the to be studied. These sometimes masked postulates profoundly impact both the questions asked by the researcher and the ways in which answers and explanations are sought.

The purpose of this chapter, then, is to lay bare the presuppositions of this researcher. In doing so, a riverine metaphor will be employed in an effort to demonstrate how the work of several individuals and their respective theoretical approaches (streams and tributaries) have, in confluence, affected the course of this research.

2.1 Longacre and the discourse stream

In his 1978 paper, "Why we need a vertical revolution in linguistics," Robert E. Longacre calls for a "radical reorientation" in how linguists think about language. After praising some of the positive outcomes of the dominant Chomskyan approach to grammar, Longacre addresses what he perceived as the "blind spots that [Chomsky] inherited from Bloomfield and never challenged." He elaborates:

The greatest of these hangups inherited from Bloomfield was inherent in the definition of grammar as a device for generating sentences. This perpetuated the Bloomfieldian blindspot in which the independence of the sentence from its context was over emphasized....This definition effectively ruled out the possibility of grammar beyond the sentence (1978: 248).

Longacre goes on to mention some of the “voices raised against this Bloomfieldian–Chomskyian restriction”: various members of the Prague school, Louis Hjelmslev, Rupert Frith, Zellig Harris, Kenneth Pike, Joseph Grimes, and Teun van Dijk, among others (1978: 248). Longacre states that these individuals fired the “opening guns” of a “revolution” based on the following proposition:

It is not simply that systematic analysis and study of units larger than the sentence is possible, nor even that such analysis is desirable, but rather that discourse analysis is a rock bottom necessity, i.e. all linguistic structure must ultimately be related to the structure of context (1978: 249).

In support of his thesis, Longacre discusses several specific grammatical phenomena which he claims cannot find explanatory sufficiency in a sentence–based approach: definitivization and the use of deictics, pronominalization, use of tense, aspect, mode, and voice, word order phenomena, use of location and temporal expressions, uses of adverbial clauses, sequence signals and conjunctions, nominalization and topicalization, variation in reported speech, variation in length of syntactic units, and “mystery particles” and affixes. A full understanding of these and other grammatical concepts can only be understood through examination of the larger context—the discourse context.

The years since Longacre’s call for a “vertical revolution” have seen the field of discourse studies expand in a number of ways. As Longacre predicted, linguists from a variety of theoretical backgrounds have made unique contributions. Longacre’s vision that discourse analysis would “take us beyond the frontiers of linguistics itself and land us at the crossroads of linguistics, sociology, psychology, and perhaps several other disciplines” (1978: 267) has also been borne out. Still, Longacre’s basic thesis remains the central tenet of the field (and, by implication, this dissertation):

many sentence–level phenomena can only be understood in their discourse environment. Or, as Longacre himself put it, “language is language only in context” (1996: 1).

2.1.1 Discourse tributaries

This section comprises an overview of four doctoral dissertations, all within the general stream of discourse theory, which have impacted the present research.

2.1.1.1 Hwang and “structural importance”

Shin Ja Joo Hwang’s 1981 Ph.D. dissertation, *Aspects of Korean narration*, represents a thorough analysis of eight Korean folktales and short stories.¹⁶ Hwang begins by defending the study of discourse in general, marshalling evidence from phonology, semantics, syntax, pragmatics, and even philosophy (1981: 14). After discussing the structure of the texts to be analyzed, Hwang discusses the “structural importance of information”—what Longacre would later term “salience” (Longacre 1996: 7). The levels of importance are encoded through a number of surface structure phenomena.

Unlike Tibeto–Burman languages, Korean encodes for tense. Hwang identifies the past tense as the main indicator of mainline (important) material, with present + *kos i-ta* construction, present + activitive, and present representing successive departures from the mainline (decreasing in importance) (1981: 138). Korean grammar also utilizes aspectual suffixes. Hwang thus identifies completive aspect as being high in importance, while inchoative, inceptive, repetitive, continuative, progressive, resultative, and incompletive indicate successively less–salient material (1981: 148).

¹⁶ This dissertation was later recast as a book (Hwang 1987).

Drawing from Nida (1949), Hwang discusses one prefix and several suffixes which are used to indicate mode in Korean. Declarative mode indicates mainline, while activitive, quotative, experimentative, retrospective, desiderative, intentive, conjecture, question, and negation all represent decreasing degrees of textual importance (1981: 156). Hwang ranks transitivity in terms of clause types, with ditransitive clauses leading the way, with transitive, passive, intransitive, existential, and equative clauses indicating decreasing transitivity.

Closely related to transitivity is the notion of verb type, which Hwang also analyzes as part of the “importance” schema. She categorizes verbs according to case frames, beginning with action–process followed by action, process, state, existential, and equative (1981: 165).

Hwang’s final factor is sentence structure, with independent clauses at the top of the salience ranking, followed by coordinate clauses + *나중*, coordinate clauses, subordinate clauses, and modifying clauses (1981: 171).

These six factors, then, interact with one another to indicate importance in Korean narrative. The net effect can be best grasped through a circular chart in which overall sentence importance increases as one moves along the individual spokes toward the center:

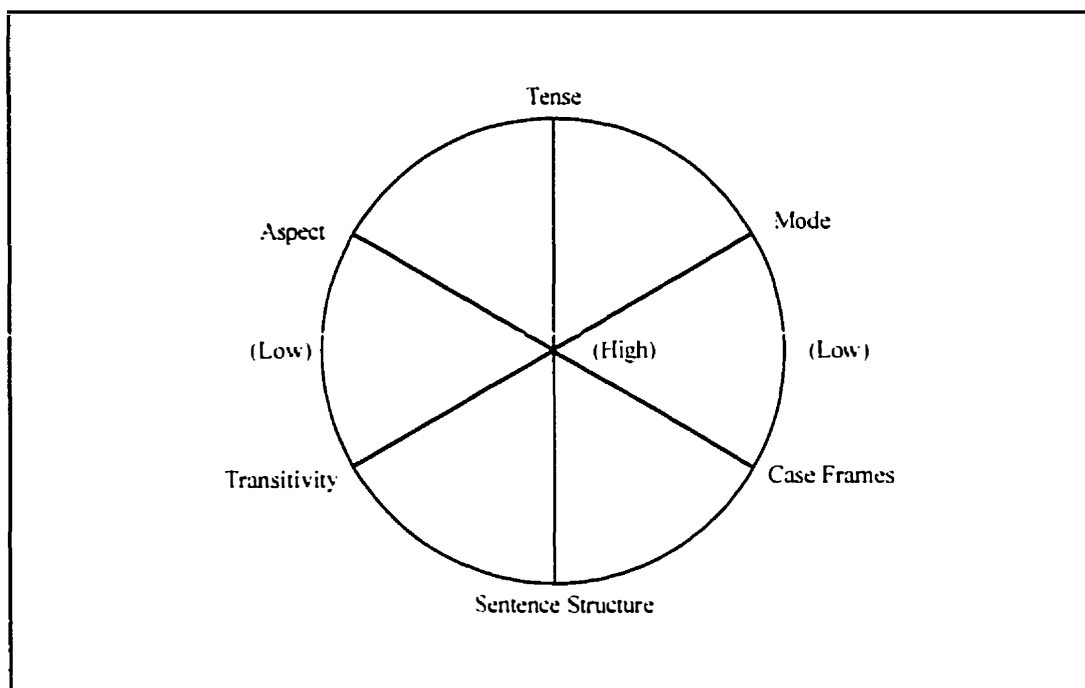


Figure 2.1. Continua of relative importance of information represented as a circle graph.
(Hwang 1981: 172)

This balancing of multiple factors has influenced the course of the present research by pressing the need to think in non-linear terms. That is, factors such as salience should not be construed in terms of one or two features only, but in the confluence of a number of structural phenomena.

2.1.1.2 Burusphat and discourse without tense

While Longacre and Hwang worked primarily with inflectional, agglutinative languages, Burusphat's dissertation and subsequent book *The structure of Thai narrative* (1991) represented the first attempt to apply Longacre's theoretical approach to an isolating language that does not mark tense. Burusphat's work is thus significant in demonstrating how the Longacrean theory can be applied in the Southeast Asian typological context.

Working from a series of Thai folktales, Burusphat claims that such phenomena as salience, which, for many Asian languages, cannot be understood in terms of verb tense, can be observed in the form of sequential markers, temporal adverbs, time phrases, verb type, relative clauses, and so forth. (Burusphat 1991: 113).

The way in which Burusphat thinks through discourse issues in Thai has impacted the present research in a number of ways. Perhaps the prime moral that this researcher has drawn from her work is “To thine own Southeast Asian typology be true,” with the addendum, “Just because you don’t have tense, don’t assume that your life is going to be any easier; dig deeper!”

2.1.1.3 Herring and the quantification of tense and aspect

While Hwang and Burusphat wrote as students of Longacre, Susan Herring’s 1991 “Functions of the verb in Tamil narration” reflects a number of influences, demonstrating an appreciation for Longacre’s emphasis on text type and schema, Paul Hopper’s work on grounding, and Talmy Givón’s concern for supporting discourse generalizations quantitatively.

Unlike Thai, Tamil has a well developed tense–aspect system. Nonetheless, traditional grammars of the language had failed to fully explain the “exceptions”—times when the “textbook” stance on how sentences should be structured was not followed. Herring tackles this problem by looking at the distribution of various verb–related phenomena, including tense, aspect, compound verbs, and modals, in different text types. In doing so, she relies heavily on frequency counts, numerically demonstrating the grammatical trends exhibited by sentences found in different text types.

This correlation of text type to grammatical phenomena, supported by frequency counts, has greatly influenced the approach of the present work. Given the large quantity of Bisu particles and the wide range of contexts in which they occur, some sort of numerical approach was needed to separate trends from exceptions, the intuition of the researcher (and, sometimes, that of native speakers) from the abundance of data.

2.1.1.4 McClelland and the correspondence of prosody and discourse features

Clive McClelland's 1996 dissertation "Interrelations of prosody, clause structure, and discourse pragmatics in Tarifit Berber" examines the connections between prosody, clause structure, and discourse pragmatics. Although such interrelations had long been discussed and even taken for granted by a number of discourse-minded linguists, McClelland endeavored to support theoretical assumption with empirical validation.

To carry this out, McClelland developed a statistical model wherein various discourse factors were correlated with prosodic measurements. Each of the 211 clauses in his corpus of four Tarifit Berber oral texts received codings for a number of variables, including place in the discourse (orientation, inciting incident, mounting tension, climax, lessening tension, denouement, coda), role in the discourse (episode juncture, storyline, topic, focus), clause structure (word order variation, use of clause adverbials, presence of preceding dependent clauses, use of case nouns). These were then correlated with various prosodic characteristics, including clause duration (in milliseconds), amplitude levels, relative width of fundamental frequency contours, rate of delivery (morphemes per second), and duration of pauses. Under statistical analysis, significant correlations between these variables were revealed.

The present work involves neither prosody nor formal statistical analysis. Nevertheless, McClelland's overall approach, especially in relation to the coding of clauses for discourse properties, has significantly impacted the methodology of this dissertation. McClelland's influence is clear in the structure of the Excel database (see 3.2) from which many of the conclusions of this dissertation were derived.

2.2 On the banks of the Yangzhe: particles in Chinese

As a world-class language with a long written tradition, Mandarin Chinese has often served as the lens through which the other Asian languages have been viewed. Indeed, ancient Chinese scholars are still frequently cited in discussions of tone, grammar, and historical reconstruction with regard to both Chinese and "barbarian" tongues. Nonetheless, there has been relatively little serious linguistic research into the use of Chinese particles (Chan 1999).

2.2.1 Li and Thompson: auxiliary markers and "mood words"

Li and Thompson's (1981) reference grammar of Mandarin Chinese represents a common stream of thought that divides what Matisoff (1973) groups as "verbal particles" into discrete categories: auxiliary verbs, aspect markers, and sentence final particles. These groupings are made on the basis of whether the forms at hand "share a set of distributional properties not possessed by any other set of forms" (1981: 172).

As defined by Li and Thompson, auxiliary verbs occur in prepredicate position. Among other limitations, auxiliary verbs cannot be used without a main verb (stated or implied from context), be nominalized, or be modified by intensifiers. They are distinct from adverbs, in that adverbs require stated (not just implied) main verbs. Li and Thompson's list of auxiliary verbs include the following English glosses: 'ought

to, should,' 'be able to,' 'has permission to,' 'dare,' 'be willing to,' must, ought to,' and 'will. know how' (1981: 183).

In the absence of tense markers, aspect markers play a vital, albeit difficult to comprehend, role in Mandarin. Four types of aspect are utilized. Perfective is indicated by the suffix *-le*, while imperfective (durative) may be indicated by either the suffix *-zhe* or the word *zài* in pre-predicate position. Experiential is indicated by the suffix *-guo*, while delimitative is shown through verb reduplication (1981: 185).

Li and Thompson identify six sentence final particles in Chinese, indicating 'currently relevant state,' 'response to expectation,' 'solicitation of agreement,' 'friendly warning,' 'reduction of forcefulness,' and 'question' (1981: 238). Again, these differ in sentence position from auxiliary verbs and aspects markers, and form a vital component of social interaction. As Li and Thompson explain (1981:317):

Traditional Chinese grammar refers to the sentence-final particles as *yǔqì cí* 'mood words'; this term aptly suggest that the function of these sentence-final particles is to relate to the conversational contexts in various ways the utterance to which they are attached and to indicate how this utterance is to be taken by the hearer.

Li and Thompson's analysis has been helpful to this dissertation in several ways. The object of their study is not Chinese grammar in the abstract, but as it is actually used in everyday life. Most of their examples reflect conversational, rather than standardized written usage. As such, they are careful to explain the situational conditions under which a given sentence would be uttered. Thus, while they do not address discourse level issues per se, they open the door to discourse-related issues. Indeed, many other contemporary books and articles on Chinese grammar refer to Li and Thompson in some way, often amplifying, modifying or even challenging Li and Thompson's interpretations.

2.2.2 Marjorie Chan and the sociolinguistic back-door into discourse

One contemporary Chinese scholar who has been particularly vocal about the necessity of taking particles seriously is Marjorie K.M. Chan of Ohio State University. In several recent conference papers, as well as a graduate seminar syllabus posted on the world wide web, she has expressed amazement at how sentence final particles have been the victims of neglect:

As to the study of sentence-final particles, they never play a prominent role in sentence-based, formal grammar, and those that appear typically serve grammatical functions, such as [those] occurring at the end of yes-no questions...Publications on the semantics and pragmatics of those sentence-final particles that are "optional" (i.e., they are not obligatory for grammatical function), do exist, but they remain relatively rare (Chan 1999).

Chan's interest in particles stems from sociolinguistic concerns. Her current research project involves analyzing video tapes of a popular Cantonese soap opera seeking clues as to the relationship between particle usage and gender. Among other things, she has discovered that certain particles are more likely to be used by females than males. Thus, particles offer insight into how societal roles are played out.

Chan's work was helpful to the present author in underlining the importance of particles on every level of linguistic analysis. Although the scope of this dissertation is limited to monologues, Chan's insistence that particles receive full and fair treatment in grammars has helped maintain the focus of this dissertation.

2.2.3 Chauncy Chu and the "core functions" of particles

One of the most ambitious works on Chinese syntax in recent years is Chauncy Chu's *A Discourse Grammar of Mandarin Chinese*.

Like many scholars of Asian languages, Chu finds “the Western theoretical framework that has been imposed on the study of Chinese grammar since...the end of the nineteenth century” unsatisfactory (1998: 1). He protests:

When the criteria of such a sentence grammar is applied to a language like Chinese, it is immediately obvious that the model is far from being adequate for describing the structure of a linguistic system that lacks an elaborate formal apparatus of tense–aspect, case marking, voice, modal auxiliaries, etc., in terms of the familiar structural signals that prevail in Indo–European languages. Chinese, in particular, relies heavily on relative ordering of constituents, inter–clausal coreference, particles, and semantic correlates, among many others, to signal syntactic structure as well as discourse relations. It is therefore indispensable, on one hand, to account for the syntactic structure of Chinese in terms of signals different from the ones familiar to most Western grammarians and, on the other, to utilize discourse notions to uncover the inner workings of the clause/sentence structure of the language (1998: 2).

Chu’s view of how discourse should be analyzed draws heavily from pragmatics and semantics. In approaching Mandarin sentence–final particles, for example, he searches for “core functions at one or more levels.” These core functions, in turn, are used as the base from which the context–sensitive meaning and role of a particle are generated.

Although Chu’s view of discourse is chiefly related to conversation, spending only a few pages discussing the “paragraph and beyond” and never mentioning text type issues, his pragmatically–sensitive approach is helpful in understanding Bisu particles. Most importantly, he recognizes that sentence final particles cannot be neatly and cleanly defined; rather, they are sensitive to contextual, syntactic, and attitudinal variables.

2.3 Following the Mekhong: particles in Southeast Asia

2.3.1 Joseph Cooke and Thai conversational particles

The most comprehensive work on particles in any Southeast Asian language to date is Joseph Cooke's 1989 *Thai sentence particles and other topics*. In his years as learner of Thai, teacher of Thai, and co-compiler of a Thai-English dictionary, Cooke became aware of the vast ocean of Thai particles. Many of these particles were very difficult for native speakers to define or explain. As Cooke (1989: 33) states:

Sentence particles (many of them at least) have no unified, clearly focused meanings: they are so variable from context to context that they can only be explained by describing the range of contexts in which given sentence particles are used.

By analyzing Thai written dialogue as it appears in popular novels and covertly observing the conversations of Thai friends and colleagues, Cooke developed an overall "feeling" for the role of particles in different communicative contexts. Nonetheless, these "feelings" do not align neatly with concise dictionary entries. The following description of the Thai particle *naa* exemplifies the way in which Cooke was compelled to write not lexical definitions, but context-sensitive descriptions of particles:

These are utterances in which the speaker states a fact, expresses an opinion, tells about his expectations, provides an explanation, or whatever, and then (by his use of *naa*) conveys his expectation or request for agreement or acquiescence. The net result is a question much like English questions ending with "huh?", "isn't it?", and "right?", "don't you think so?", "okay?", "are you with me?", "did you get what I'm saying?" and so forth. Such utterances are usually relaxed and friendly, with the speaker fully expecting (though not demanding) the response he seeks.

When the *naa* occurs following or bracketed by names, nouns, and pronouns that are used as vocatives...it is used to call the addressee's attention, to render the speaker's message more intimate and personal, or to highlight the speaker's baffled complaint (1989: 131, 134).

Cooke's work has impacted dissertation work on several levels. First, it has affected this researcher's expectations of the behavior of Bisu particles, as well as the ability of native speakers to explain how the particles work. Without Cooke, this researcher would have probably become extremely frustrated in an attempt to wrench out concise particle definitions from hapless Bisu language assistants. Second, Cooke's work has proven to be an invaluable resource in understanding Northern Thai particles. As Northern Thai is the language of wider communication in the Bisu region, Bisu language assistants often explained Bisu particles relative to their Northern Thai counterparts. Indeed, some Bisu speakers have incorporated Northern Thai particles into their own speech—loan particles, as it were.

2.3.2 James Matisoff and Lahu particles

Nearly 700 pages in length, James Matisoff's *The grammar of Lahu* (Sino-Tibetan, Tibeto-Burman, Yi-Burmese) is one of the most extensive descriptions of any language in Southeast Asia. Part of this work's appeal is that it is not bound by any one syntactic theory; rather than seeking to find evidence of allegedly "universal" grammar, Matisoff takes the language as it is, describing in minute detail both "normal" paradigms and "unusual" permutations. In addition, although *The grammar of Lahu* is not written from a "discourse perspective" (something which was just developing when Matisoff was collecting his data in the mid 1960s and early 1970s), the majority of Matisoff's example sentences are garnered from a large corpus of oral texts representing a variety of text types.

Matisoff dedicates over two hundred pages to the Lahu verb phrase. Some eighty of those pages, in turn, discuss what Matisoff terms “verb particles,” “universal unrestricted particles,” and “final unrestricted particles,” all of which are considered part of the verb phrase in this SOV language. The following explanation of “verbal particles” gives a sense of the great diversity of attributes which these tiny words may contain:

A verb–particle (Pv) is a word which cannot constitute an utterance by itself and which occurs always and only after members of the class of verbs (or after other verb–particles). Semantically, they serve to elucidate the meaning of the verb in a variety of ways, conveying notions of aspect, directionality, subjective attitudes toward the verbal event, etc. Conspicuously absent are any Pv’s referring to tense. Tense–concepts are foreign to the Lahu verb, as they are for the Sino–Tibetan languages in general. (1973: 315)

Matisoff goes on to classify Lahu particles into four divisions, indicating directionality, subjective attitudes/nature of one’s own experience, aspect, and imperatives/interjectives. At the same time, he concedes that there can be significant variation in both the phonetic realization of particles and their semantic role in different contexts. The particle *è*, for example, can have an interjectory, interrogative, or imperative sense, depending on context, and is easily confused with the particle *èʔ* ‘only/just/even’ and the “adverbializing particle” *è* (1973: 382). As designations like “adverbializing particle” illustrate, many aspects of Lahu grammar demand the creation of new English terms.

The grammar of Lahu has been invaluable to the dissertation at hand. First, the freedom with which Matisoff coins new terms and the vivid explanations he gives of his nomenclature encouraged the present researcher to explain Bisu on its own terms, rather than trying to fit it into Indo–European descriptive forms. Second, because of

the close genetic affiliation between Bisu and Lahu, learning about Lahu grammar has yielded insight into Bisu grammar. This has been particularly helpful where the particles are concerned. At least fourteen Bisu particles appear to have Lahu cognates, while a number of others are phonologically distinct but functionally similar to Lahu particles.

2.3.3 David Solnit and Eastern Kayah Li

David Solnit's *Eastern Kayah Li: grammar, texts, glossary* provides a thorough overview of a language that, while related to Bisu, is genetically more distant than Lahu. Eastern Kayah Li is a member of the Karen sub-group of Tibeto-Burman.

Like all Karenic languages, Eastern Kayah Li is SVO. This fact has caused a minority of linguists to expel Karenic languages from Tibeto-Burman, inasmuch as the rest of the family is SOV (Solnit 1997: xiv). Nonetheless, this different word order has implications for the interpretation of particles. Whereas Matisoff considers all sentence final particles under the rubric of the verb phrase, Solnit is compelled to distinguish several particle categories, based on position. Kayah Li's "Pre-verbal particles," include aspect markers, modals, and a few attitudinal markers, while the post-verbal particles include markers of repetition, addition, temporary state, emphatic or unexpected negative, comitative participant involvement, excess, new participant, and benefit. Interrogative, imperative, and assertive particles also occur sentence finally (1997: 102ff, 226ff).

Curiously, some of the particles which occur sentence finally in Kayah Li (and therefore after both verb and object) carry seemingly similar connotations to some of the sentence medial particles. These include particles of negation, past or perfective irrealis, and "possible undesirable event" (1997: 231).

Solnit's work has been helpful to this dissertation in confirming the "difficult to generalize" nature of some particles. In addition, Solnit acknowledges that the boundaries between particles and other grammatical classes are often fuzzy. For example, some Kayah Li particles under some circumstances behave more like verbs than particles (1997: 100). This is also the case in Bisu.

2.3.4 Inga–Lill Hansson and Akha evidentiality

Swedish linguist Inga–Lill Hansson's study of Akha (Tibeto–Burman, Yi–Burmese) has resulted in one very concise paper on evidentiality particles (Hansson 1996). Based on over one thousand pages of interlinearized texts, Hansson posits sixteen such particles, with English glosses such as 'know for sure,' 'infer from seeing,' 'infer from hearing', 'infer from feeling,' 'doubt,' and so forth.

Unlike Lahu particles, none of the Akha evidential particles have apparent cognates in Bisu. Nonetheless, the fact that a related language has such rich evidential resources has affected the course of this research.

2.4 Overlooking Chompuu Creek: previous work on Bisu

2.4.1 Tatsuo Nishida and the first analysis

Nishida's "discovery" of the Bisu resulted in a basic profile of the language, published first in Japanese (1966) and later in English (1973). Nishida's suggestion that Bisu be assigned to the Loloish/Yiphoish subgroup of Tibeto–Burman continues to be widely accepted.

Given the relatively short amount of time Nishida spent with the Bisu, his sketch of Bisu phonology, word formation, and incorporation of Thai loan words is accurate and insightful. His treatment of Bisu grammar is, by his own admission, somewhat sparse. He nonetheless recognizes thirteen "verb forms," composed of a

verb plus what later linguists would consider particles. These “verb form” combinations are given such labels as “progressiveness,” “mutualness,” “question,” “causation,” “perfect tense,” and “experience of the past” (1973: 72–74).

2.4.2 David Bradley and James Matisoff on Bisu historical development

The bulk of the previous work on Bisu has dealt with issues of basic phonology and historical development. David Bradley’s *Proto-Loloish* (1979) discusses Bisu in relation to other languages in the family, using Bisu as a conservative exemplar of some of the family traits. Bradley has also examined nasality in Bisu (1985) and Bisu dialects within Thailand (1988). Drawing on data collected by Nishida and Bradley, James Matisoff (1976) carried out “microlinguistic” comparisons between Bisu and the closely-related Mpi. Matisoff coined the term “Bisoid” to encompass such South-Loloish languages as Pyen, Phu Noi, and Coong, and frequently refers to Bisu in articles and presentations on Sino-Tibetan history.

2.4.3 Vacharee Nuamkaew on Bisu phonology

Vacharee Nuamkaew’s 1987 Mahidol University thesis represents the first full-scale phonological analysis of Bisu. Basing her work on the Bisu dialect spoken at Pha Daeng Village (Amphoe Phan, Tambon Doi Ngam, Chiang Rai Province), Nuamkaew presents helpful information about syllable type, stress patterns, and phoneme distribution. Her findings provided the linguistic basis for the development of a Thai-based Bisu orthography (Person, in press).

2.4.4 Patrick Beaudouin on Bisu grammar

During the late 1980s, French linguist Patrick Beaudouin studied Bisu, resulting in several conference papers and his 1991 dissertation, *Une monographie du Bisu*.

This work contains an outline of Bisu phonology, as well as sections on morphology, phrase structure, classifiers, and syntax.

Beaudouin's description of Bisu particles in a 1991 Sino–Tibetan Conference presentation features the following list of thirty sentence final particles (1991a: 6–10):

Table 2.1. Bisu particles
(adapted from Beaudouin 1991a)

Function/meaning	particle	Function/meaning	particle
Exclamative	pe ja	'from'	tʃ ^h aj
	pəjjɛ de	'similarity'	hmə
Interrogative	la		mə
	əa	'wish'	sə
Present aspective	ŋɛ	'must'	aŋga
	o	'may'	aŋ+V+təg a
Past aspective	ja	'go up (or North)'	lɛ
	tʃha	'go down (or South)'	ɛ́
	tʃ ^h i	'come from up (or North)'	lu
Negative past aspective	sə	'come from down (or South)'	lá
	səŋ	'give':causative	pí
Future aspective	na	totality	k ^h o
	naje	'only'	kan
Imperative 'with' or 'at'	wo	repetition of action	lɛ́
	kəŋ	end of action	pən

Nonetheless, Beaudouin readily reveals some of the questions that remain as to actual particle usage, pointing out several particle–containing sentences of his own construction which Bisu language assistants reluctantly reported as being grammatically acceptable but somewhat different from normal native speaker patterns (1991a: 10). Beaudouin's dissertation contains six expository texts but, again, they are not analyzed from the discourse perspective, and some of the most frequently

occurring particles found in Bisu narratives are altogether absent from his otherwise thorough analysis.

Beaudouin's work has proven invaluable to this dissertation. While his work does not incorporate a discourse perspective, his documentation of sentence level grammar and at least most of the particles he describes is accurate. Beaudouin's work thus provides a springboard for the present work.

2.4.5 Xu Shixuan on Bisu in China

The discovery of Bisu in China resulted in the most thorough description of the language to date. Xu Shixuan's *The Bisu language* (forthcoming). Shixuan includes an overview of Bisu culture, detailed discussion of Bisu phonology, extensive analysis of Bisu sentence-level grammar and comparison of Bisu dialects and related languages. Shixuan treats Bisu particles as "markers" or "auxiliaries" attached to the verb phrase, limiting her analysis to their use at the sentence level. Many of the "markers" discussed by Shixuan are not present in Bisu as spoken in Thailand, one indication of the seemingly significant differences between the Chinese and Thai dialects.

CHAPTER 3

RESEARCH DESIGN AND METHODOLOGY

3.0 Introduction

This chapter describes the research design and methodology used in this investigation. Section 3.1 describes the texts examined in this research, including information on how those texts were collected and prepared for analysis. Brief summaries of each text are included to provide a context for the example sentences used throughout the dissertation. Section 3.2 discusses the analytical procedures to which the written folktales were subjected in an effort to “tease out” discourse and sentence level features which could provide insight into particle meaning usage.

3.1 Corpus

While the focus of the dissertation is written folktales, several expository texts and life histories were included in the corpus to provide additional insight into Bisu sentence final particles.

3.1.1 Written folktales

The thirteen Bisu folktales examined in this study were all written in March, 1999, at a literacy materials workshop held at the Applied Linguistics Training Center, Payap University, Chiang Mai, Thailand. As a Thai-based orthography for the language had been adopted in December, 1999, this workshop represented the first attempt to actively use the orthography on a wide scale. Workshop participants received instruction in a variety of basic writing concepts, including readability,

naturalness, and vividness. Each text was drafted by an individual author, with other workshop participants reading and commenting upon the drafts. While some of the texts represent age-old Bisu folklore, others were original creations or Bisu renditions of familiar folktales which may have originated with other ethnic groups.¹⁷ Text names, length, and author information follow:

Table 3.1. Written folktales studied

Narrative and Abbreviation		Number of Sentences	Author(s)	Gender	Age	Occupation
Ai Kham Goes Fishing	AK	34	Kongkham Wonglua	male	50+	farmer
Mr. Kiew the Deaf Man and Mr. Paw the Blind Man: a Story of Two Chicken Thieves	DB	25	Kongkham Wonglua	male	50+	farmer
The Swans and the Turtle	ST	19	Kongkham Wonglua	male	50+	farmer
Turtle and Squirrel	TS	38	Moon Tajan	male	47	farmer
Tiger and Deer	TD	26	Surasak Puikham	male	30	farmer
The Mischievous Boy	MB	32	Surasak Puikham	male	30	farmer
Lessons from Mother and Father	FM	18	Nikom Buasuwan	male	23	farmer
The Cruel Widower	CW	23	Nikom Buasuwan	male	23	farmer
Orphan Children	OR	35	Nongnuch Jassadakrysri and Nawalas Tajan	females	17	students
Chengkoikoi, the Female Spirit	CK	43	Somchai Kaewkhamnoi	male	17	student
Don't Dare Think You're Clever!	CO	27	Somchai Kaewkhamnoi	male	17	student
Poor Boy	PB	47	Somchai Kaewkhamnoi	male	17	student
Father's Skull	FS	17	Somchai Kaewkhamnoi	male	17	student
	Total	384				

The two older men had learned to read and write Thai while serving as Buddhist monks. They are among the minority of Bisu speakers aged thirty and above who are literate. Both of these men are well-known for their storytelling prowess. The two

¹⁷ There are a number of essentially similar folktales which are found throughout Southeast Asia. Each ethnic group seems to have a certain local "spin" to these common stories (Gregerson et.al. 1987: xii).

younger men had been educated through the sixth grade in the Thai school system, and had also taken adult education courses. Two of the teenagers were students at in the agricultural program of a local vocational school (tenth grade equivalent). The third teenaged participant was a secondary school student at the Chiang Mai Blind School, where she had mastered touch typing!

All of the manuscripts were input into Microsoft Word by the Bisu teenagers, none of whom had prior computer experience. The texts were formatted as books, using SIL's *Bookmaker* program, while the original rich text format (.rtf) files were saved for this analysis.

To facilitate interlinearization and translation, a teenaged Bisu male, Somchai Kaewkhamnoi, was employed to mark word and sentence breaks in the texts. This proved to be a major undertaking since Bisu, like Thai, does not contain orthographic indications of word and sentence boundaries. A degree of ambiguity remains on some of these divisions, a number of which have been revised as the author's understanding of the Bisu language has expanded. Somchai also prepared Thai free translations of each sentence. The texts were then imported into *Shoebox*, a program developed by SIL for text glossing and lexicon construction. Somchai assisted the author in preparing phonetic transcriptions and English glosses for each Bisu word. This resulted in a 1,500 word Bisu–English–Thai lexicon.¹⁸

3.1.1.1 Folktale summaries

To enable readers to relate example sentences to their contexts, this section contains brief summaries of each of the folktales studied.

¹⁸ Most of the Bisu particles were not included in this lexicon, inasmuch as Somchai was often unable to suggest any Thai equivalents. Therein lay the genesis of this dissertation!

3.1.1.1.1 “Ai Kham goes fishing”(AK)

Ai Kham places a fish trap in the stream. That evening, an otter climbs into the trap and eats all the fish. He is unable to get back out of the trap. Early the next morning, a rabbit comes hopping along and informs the otter that the trap’s owner will certainly kill him. The otter begs for help, and the rabbit obliges by releasing gas into the otter’s mouth. Later that morning Ai Kham returns and assumes, based on the odor, that the otter is dead. He throws the otter out of the trap then spies the rabbit, who is acting as though he has been impaled on a stick. Ai Kham pursues the rabbit, who throws down the stick and flees. Meanwhile, the otter has escaped.

3.1.1.1.2 “Mr Kiew the deaf man and Mr. Paw the blind man: a story of two chicken thieves” (DB)

Two deaf and blind friends attempt to steal Grandpa Kaew’s chickens. Kiew was to grab the chickens as instructed by Paw. Of course, Kiew cannot hear Paw’s instructions as to which type of chickens to grab, and a great deal of shouting ensues. Grandpa Kaew hears the commotion, and storms onto the scene. Kiew escapes, while Paw, running underneath Grandpa Kaew’s house, steps on a farm implement which flips upward, striking him in the forehead. Thinking he is being beaten by a stick-wielding assailant. Paw confesses all.

3.1.1.1.3 “The Swans and the Turtle” (ST)

A turtle wants to cross a valley to forage for food on another mountain. Two swans agree to help, holding a stick which the turtle grasps with his mouth. Some boys herding water buffalo see the unlikely flying trio, and shout out “The swans are carrying the turtle!” The turtle replies, “No, I’m carrying the swans!” While speaking, he loses his grip on the stick and plunges into the mouth of a startled water buffalo. His shell is shattered, and his internal organs splash onto the arm of a nearby

buffalo boy. This is why water buffalo do not have hard upper lips, and also why human armpits smell bad to this day.

3.1.1.1.4 “Turtle and Squirrel” (TS)

Two friends head out into the forest to collect firewood. Instead, they end up enjoying the small, red fruit of the *sukhajlok* tree. The squirrel eats carelessly from the upper branches, while the turtle diligently collects fallen fruit, putting them in her shoulder bag. On the way home, the squirrel claims to have a stomachache, and the kindly turtle offers to carry her friend home in her shoulder bag. Once in the bag, the squirrel feasts and, upon reaching the village, declares that her stomach ache has been cured. The turtle returns home to her excited children, telling them about the wonderful fruit they are about to enjoy. The shoulder bag is now empty, however, and the turtle realizes the squirrel’s deceit. Early the next morning, the turtle returns to the *sukhajlok* tree, setting a trap at its base. She then returns to the village and invites the squirrel to come walking in the forest. The squirrel walks into the trap and is killed. Thereafter, the turtle skins and minces her friend, feeding her to the squirrel’s children. The squirrel children munch happily until one recognizes the hand of their mother in the stew.

3.1.1.1.5 “Tiger and Deer” (TD)

A tiger lies in wait beside a stream. A deer comes along, limping. Perplexed, the tiger asks what the deer did to his foot. The deer replies that he stepped on a thorn, which is still embedded in his foot. The tiger realizes that eating the deer could be hazardous—the thorn could become stuck in his throat. The deer suggests that the tiger take out the thorn in exchange for the deer’s willingness to be eaten afterwards. As the tiger extracts the thorn by holding it between his teeth, the deer kicks him in

the mouth, shattering all his teeth and causing the tiger to faint with pain. The deer escapes.

3.1.1.1.6 “The Mischevious Boy” (MB)

A hopelessly lazy boy runs off to the forest to escape his parent’s constant scolding. As evening comes, he begins missing his home, and starts to return. In the shadow of a tree blocking his path, he sees a huge, blood-covered spirit with a long tongue and bulging eyes. The spirit chases the boy through the forest until he collides with his father. The spirit disappears, and the boy becomes a model of diligence and obedience.

3.1.1.1.7 “Lessons from Mother and Father” (FM)

A family is shattered by the death of the father. Thereafter, the mother must care for both children. Eventually, her poverty forces her to send one of her sons to live in a Buddhist temple (something which Bisu families have often had to do). She cares for the remaining son until he grows up, at which time he cares for his aged mother. An ancient proverb says that a son who becomes a Buddhist novice repays the merciful grace of his mother (by “making merit” for her future reincarnations), while a son who becomes a full Buddhist priest repays the merciful grace of his father. The hearers must teach this to their children.

3.1.1.1.8 “The Cruel Widower” (CW)

A father, mother, and child live in harmony for many years. Then the mother dies. Several years thereafter, the father wants to remarry. The object of his affection declares, “If you want me, kill your child.” He thus takes the child into the forest and buries it alive. The cruel widower returns to the woman, explaining how he carried out her wishes and proposing that they wed immediately. The woman, however,

terminates the relationship, thinking “If he’d kill his own child, what might he do to me?” The father realizes his error, rushes to the forest, and digs up his child. He is too late; the child is dead.

3.1.1.1.9 “Orphan Children” (OR)

A family of four is traumatized by the mother’s death. Thereafter, the father remarries. The stepmother hates the children, and orders her husband to kill the children. He attempts this by abandoning them in the forest. Time after time, they are able to return home, assisted by a mother dog. The stepmother orders the father to kill the dog and make the children eat its steamed flesh.¹⁹ Thereafter, she commands that the father take the children deep into the forest. He complies, and the children wander, hopelessly lost. They eventually come upon a wealthy, childless couple who adopt them as their own. Years later, the stepmother tells the father about news of a wealthy family who help poor people. They arrive at the rich family’s house, but do not recognize the children. The children invite them up into the house to eat specially prepared food. As the dish is set before them, the children say, “Father dear, Mother dear, eat! Steamed dog flesh, like you once gave us!” Upon realizing what has happened, the father immediately dies of a heart attack. The stepmother jumps from the stilt-house and is swallowed up by the earth.

3.1.1.1.10 “Chengkoikoi, the Female Spirit” (CK)

A married couple are fishing together when Chengkoikoi appears and kidnaps the husband. She forces him to become her mate, resulting in the birth of one child. Every day the spirit locks the husband in the house while she goes about her business

¹⁹ The Bisu as a group claim to have never consumed dog meat, although other hilltribes in the immediate vicinity do.

outside. When she says she'll be gone only briefly, she stays away for a long time, and vice versa. The child takes after its spirit mother. One day, after Chengkoikoi has left the house, the father convinces the child to unlock the door so that he can go outside to relieve himself. He runs until he collapses with exhaustion in a rice field. He shakes heads of rice over his body, to create the illusion that he has been dead for some time and is now covered in fly eggs. Chengkoikoi returns home to find him missing, and sets out in hot pursuit. She finds her husband lying the field, and thinks that he has indeed died—although she tickles him, just to be sure. She then brings a special gong to the alledged corpse, instructing her husband that, in his next reincarnation, he should beat the gong in order to become wealthy. After she leaves, the man runs home to his wife. Thereafter, whenever he beats the gong, silver and gold appear, and he becomes more and more wealthy.

3.1.1.1.11 “Don’t Dare Think You’re Clever!” (CO)

Grandmother Kham and Grandmother Up go fishing together. They do quite well and, upon returning to the village, begin sorting the fish. But Grandmother Kham becomes greedy, piling the larger fish in front of herself and the smaller ones in front of Grandmother Up. She then tells Grandmother Up to choose whichever pile she wants. Realizing what Grandmother Kham is up to, Up grabs the larger pile and runs home. Grandma Kham runs after her, shouting, “Wait! I didn’t divide those right! Let’s do it again!” The moral of the story: people should live together in harmony and not be greedy. Do good, receive good. Do evil, receive evil.

3.1.1.1.12 “Poor Boy” (PB)

A poor boy plants a hill field in order to ease his poverty. His melons and cucumbers are doing well—such that they attract the attention of a group of monkeys.

Afraid that they will eat all his profits, the poor boy lies down in the field and plays dead. Fearing that his rotting corpse will ruin the melons and cucumbers, the monkeys decide to take him and throw him down a mine shaft filled with treasure. After the monkeys leave, the poor boy helps himself to the treasure and returns home. Later, a friend asks him how he became so wealthy. The formerly poor boy truthfully relates the story. Enthused, the friend attempts to follow in his footsteps. He plants a field, plays dead, and is taken by the monkeys to a mine shaft. The monkeys throw him into the shaft, where he dies on impact.

3.1.1.1.13 “Father’s Skull” (FS)

A poverty–stricken family of three is traumatized by the death of the mother and the decline of the father. Finally, on his deathbed, the father tells his son: “When I die, tie a rope to my skull, drag it along the ground, and wherever it gets stuck, work that hillfield.” The son follows these instructions, and the skull becomes wedged alongside a stone. All efforts to dislodge the skull prove futile. Thus, the boy works that hillfield and becomes richer and richer.

3.1.2 Expository texts

Although the emphasis of this dissertation is upon Bisu narrative discourse, several expository texts were examined. These shed additional light upon the meaning and usage of several of the particles.

All of the expository texts analyzed were published in Patrick Beaudouin’s 1991 dissertation, *Une monographie du Bisu*. The six texts are:

Table 3.2. Expository texts
(Beaudouin 1991b)

Title and Abbreviation		# sentences
Death rituals	DR	34
Birth rituals	BR	5
Lineage of the Bisu	LB	10
Village construction	BV	8
The spirit posts	SP	10
Sacrifices to the village spirit	SS	29
	Total	96

Beaudouin identifies Moon Tajan as the author of “Sacrifices to the village spirit.” but does not indicate whether the other texts were written by Moon or other authors.

Beaudouin transcribed these texts using the international phonetic alphabet and provided word-by-word and sentence-by-sentence translation into French. Margaret Spielmann, an SIL member who has served in Francophone Africa and French Polynesia, assisted in the translation of these texts into English. To facilitate easier discussion of the texts with Bisu language informants, the author worked with Somchai Kaewkhamnoi to transcribe the texts in the new Thai-based Bisu script, and provide Thai sentence glosses (since less is lost in Bisu-Thai translation than Bisu-English or, one suspects, Bisu-French).

3.1.3 Life stories

For additional cross-genre comparison, three life stories were incorporated into the corpus. Told by elderly Bisu women, these stories were recorded, transcribed, and manually interlinearized with Thai glosses and free translations by a group of Bisu teenagers, most of whom had attended the workshop mentioned in 3.1.1. Somchai Kaewkhamnoi re-checked the transcriptions and prepared the manuscripts for Shoebox.

Table 3.3. Life stories

Speaker and Abbreviation	# sentences	
Ui Daa Wonglua	UD	171
Ui Duang Wonglua	UDG	464
Ui Haa Wonglua ²⁰	UH	230
	Total	865

The content of all three life stories is somewhat similar. Two of the three women had been orphaned at an early age: their childhood recollections are thus of being passed from relative to relative as all struggled to survive. Childhood games are recalled only by the speaker who was not an orphan. All three speakers discuss at length the terrible hardships that reduced the Bisu to begging for rice and clothing in Northern Thai villages. The theme of begging is not limited to any one episode in these discourses, but is often revisited in the course of the stories. All likewise discuss their marriages and children, a number of whom died in infancy, and speak of how, when little food was available, the children would be allowed to eat before the adults. Two opaquely deny selling their daughters into prostitution, claiming they intended to send them away to work in other professions. All three agree that life is much easier now.

3.2 Coding of folktale sentences

Each folktale was subjected to a series of analytical procedures, the overall goal being to “tease out” discourse and sentence level features which could provide insight into particle usage.

A coding scheme was established in which each sentence of each folktale received binary ratings based on a series of variables that could potentially impact

²⁰ “Wonglua” is the surname that the Thai government assigned to all the Bisu of Doi Chompuu village. As this name has derogatory connotations, many younger Bisu have had their surnames legally changed.

particle useage. These included place in the discourse, transitivity, sentence complexity, and whether the sentence contained direct or indirect quotations.

The coding process was carried out with *Excel*, a computer program ideally suited to the configuration and sorting of large amounts of numeric and alphabetical data. *Excel's* charting capabilities facilitated visual confirmation of correlations between some particles and the variables mentioned above.

3.2.1 Discourse profile analysis

Fundamental to what Longacre (1996:2) terms "grammatical profile" is the idea that texts do not have a uniform "texture." Rather, texts can be divided into various macro-segments, each representing a different stage in the text's development, as shown in figure 3.1. Evidence from a wide variety of languages strongly supports the notion that each stage of a text's development will manifest stage-specific grammatical phenomena. This is particularly true of the "peak" of a text, an area Longacre (1996: 38) denotes a "zone of turbulence" inasmuch as dramatic shifts in verb tense, verb density, pronominal reference, quotation formula, and so forth often occur here.

For this reason, each sentence in the written folktales was coded according to the stage of the discourse in which it was found. Those sentences involving a change in place, time, or participant-in-focus were also noted as boundaries between episodes or stages.

Surface Structure	Title	Aperture	Stage	(Pre-Peak) Episodes	Peak	Peak'	(Post-Peak) Episodes	Closure	Finis
		Formulaic Phrase/Sentence	Expository paragraph/discourse Narrative paragraph/discourse	Paragraph/Discourse (usually narrative or dialogue) Articulated by means of: 1. Time horizons in succession 2. Back-reference in paragraph/discourse to the preceding 3. Conjunctions 4. Juxtaposition, i.e. clear structural transition to another paragraph of embedded discourse	Rhetorical underlining, concentration of participants, heightened vividness: *Shift of tense *Shift to more specific person *Narr-pseudo-dialogue-drama Change of pace: *Variation in length of units *Less conjunction & transition Change of *Vantage point *Orientation	See Peak	See pre-peak episodes	Of varied structure especially expository paragraph, but can be expository discourse, narrative discourse, hortatory discourse (=moral?)	Formulaic phrase/sentence
Notional Structure (Plot)	Surface Features Only		1. Exposition "Lay it out"	2. Inciting Moment "Get something going" 3. Developing Conflict "Keep the heat on"	4. Climax "Knot it all up proper" A. Climax may encode as peak and denouement as peak' OR B. Climax may encode as pre-peak episode and denouement as peak C. Climax may encode as peak and denouement as post-peak episode	5. Denouement "Loosen it"	6. Final Suspense "Keep untangling"	7. Conclusion "Wrap it up"	Surface Feature only

Figure 3.1. Narrative discourse schema.
(Longacre 1996: 36)

3.2.1.1 Orientation

The orientation stage of a discourse typically introduces the audience to the time, location, and participants of a narrative.²¹

The folktale orientations examined in this study begin with a formulaic schema—somewhat like the “once upon a time” opening of English folk tales—with the main verb being *caj* or *caaj* ‘have’. The orientation may be realized by a single sentence, as in example 3.1, or several sentences, as in example 3.2:

(3.1)

tùu núuŋ caa k^haalai ?aj k^hàm naasóon k^ham càj tʃ^hii
 day one have pt Ai Kham fish_trap trap do pt

One day Ai Kham went to trap fish. (AK 3)

(3.2)

k^haataæ ts^haaŋ caaŋ jèe
 long_ago people have pt

k^haataæ mə? saam k^hùn aŋbaa aŋboon aŋjàa nəæ dʌŋ jèe
 long_ago when three Clf mother father child npt live pt

t^hùugaa laagaanæ dʌŋ bàa sii bàa lææ kaa jèe
 together together live neg quarrel neg fight pt pt

A long time ago there were these people. In the past there were three people—mother, father, and child—living together. They lived together without quarrelling or fighting.

(CW 2–4)

²¹ “Orientation,” as used here, corresponds to the “Aperture” and “Stage” portions of Longacre’s narrative schema (1996: 36).

3.2.1.2 Inciting moment

Following the orientation, a single sentence comprises the “inciting moment.” This is the point at which the action of the story truly begins. The participants mentioned in the orientation do something which, in comparison to the orientation, is not routine, and that singular action sets off the chain of events which is the story.

Example 3.3 follows the orientation stage of “The Cruel Widower.” It is the pivotal event which makes the husband a widower and, in turn, a cruel person:

(3.3)

jào bàa mlàaŋ sʉumə cáa aŋbaa maŋ ʃiin pìi tʃ^hiijèe
 then neg long_time when then mother Clf die pt pt pt

And then, not long thereafter, the mother died. (CW 5)

Similarly, example 3.4 follows the description of how the squirrel and turtle are good friends of the same age, and begins the chain of events which leads to the dissolution of the friendship and the death of the squirrel:

(3.4)

tàa nuŋ caalàŋ hootʃ^hén maŋ ?ùuhoŋ maŋ na? tʃ^hàaŋ
 day one have squirrel Clf turtle Clf ACC invite
 ?ææ tʃ^hiijèe
 ascend pt pt

One day the squirrel invited the turtle: (TS 3)

Inciting moments comprise the first sentence of pre-peak episodes (3.2.1.4), and serve, by definition, as episode boundaries (3.2.1.3). Thus, sentences containing inciting moments are coded under three categories.

3.2.1.3 Episode juncture

Sentences marking the juncture between one macrosection and another often have unique linguistic features (Longacre 1996: 37). Although any given episode juncture sentence would naturally be classified as part of the episode it initializes, an additional variable category was established to specifically mark these potentially unique clauses. Episode junctures typically involve any one of the following: change in time, change in location, change in participants.

Example 3.5 marks a juncture between the second and third pre-peak episode of “The Cruel Widower.” The second episode describes the interaction between the widower and a potential new spouse, while the third episode involves the widower and his child, the next day, in the forest:

(3.5)

jào t^hùu wàn máa aŋbooŋ maŋ aŋjàa màaŋ na?
 then one day after that father Clf child Clf ACC
 ʃòŋkɔŋ sùuʃ lææn tʃ^hii jèe
 forest go_together pt pt pt

One day after that the father took the child to the forest. (CW 12)

Similarly, in example 3.6, the focus of the story turns from the disappointment of turtle’s children the previous evening to the turtle’s solitary early-morning mission of revenge:

(3.6)

sɔot^háa bàa plææn húu kap haan k^ham lææ
 early_morning neg light before trap wrap and take trap pt
 tʃ^hii jèe
 pt pt

The next morning before it was light (she) took a trap to trap. (TS 28)

As they begin new episodes or stages of their respective discourses, episode juncture sentences are coded under several categories, often including time, location, and place in the discourse.

3.2.1.4 Pre–Peak episodes

Pre–Peak episodes typically follow the orientation clause, and highlight the mounting tension of the story as the peak is approached. Pre–peak episodes typically display what could be termed the “normative” conventions of storytelling prior to the “turbulence” of the peak (Longacre 1996: 38).

In Bisu written folktales, pre–peak episodes are typically two to four sentences long, corresponding to paragraphs.

The following example constitutes the second pre–peak episode of “The Cruel Widower.” Whereas the first and third pre–peak episodes focus on the widower and his child, the second pre–peak episode features a conversation with a prospective spouse:

(3.7)

nik^hàm wàa aŋboon maŋ k^hàabaa aŋsùu gaa làa siŋ jèè
 this time this father Clf wife new pt pt pt pt

jào k^hàabaajàa t^hùu maŋ na? hmjaan caaj tʃ^hii jèè
 then female one Clf ACC see have pt pt

jào k^hàabaajàa màaŋ mâaj tʃ^hii jèè jàakee maŋ aŋboon
 then female Clf tell pt pt child Clf father
 maŋ na?
 Clf ACC

naaŋ gaa na? gaa làa sùuŋ jào naaŋ aŋjàa maŋ na? sàæ
 2ps 1ps ACC pt pt pt then 2ps child Clf ACC kill
 pèe
 IMP

At this time, the father wanted a new wife. He met a woman. And then the woman told him—that person the father of the child: “If you want me, kill your child!” (CW 8–11)

3.2.1.5 Peak

Peak represents the climax of a story. Longacre (1996: 38) characterizes peak as a “zone of turbulence” in which many of the “normative” grammatical features seen in the pre–peak episodes suddenly seem to go awry. Longacre elaborates:

Routine features of the storyline may be distorted or phased out at peak. Thus, the characteristic storyline tense/aspect may be substituted for by another tense/aspect. Alternately, the characteristic tense/aspect of the mainline of a discourse may be extended to unexpected uses at peak. Particles which elsewhere mark rather faithfully the storyline of a story may suddenly be absent. Routine participant reference may be disturbed. In brief, peak has features peculiar to itself and the marking of such features takes precedence over the marking of mainline, so that the absence of certain features or even analytical difficulties can be a clue that we are at the peak of a discourse (1996: 38).

Peak may be marked by rhetorical underlining, concentration of participants, heightened vividness (including a higher concentration of action verbs or a shift to dialogue), change of pace, change of vantage point and/or orientation, and incidence of particles and onomatopoeia (Longacre 1996: 39–48).

Example 3.8 comprises the peak of “Turtle and Squirrel.” Aside from the climactic nature of the squirrel’s death (resolving, from the standpoint of the turtle, a grave injustice), the sentences are quite long; indeed TS 67 represents something of a run–on–sentence. A great number of action verbs are piled one upon another, compressing a series of events that, in reality, would have taken several hours to accomplish. The squirrel is not mentioned in TS 67; rather, zero anaphora streamlines the sentence from unnecessary mention of the obvious patient.

(3.8)

ʔaŋʔan joo k^həə kan læə cáŋ hoətʃ^hén maŋ kap
 previous_place at arrive pt pt have squirrel Clf trap
 jaan gaaŋ səə læə naowaa
 that be afflicted die pt pt

ʔuuhooŋ maŋ piit^hòo caŋ aŋmáu p^hii k^hút jao juum
 squirrel Clf fire_wood kindle body_hair burn scrape then house
 k^həə læu jao t^hoo buan tsəəŋ hmíiŋ jao k^həəj ʃaaj
 arrive return then chop fine cook finish then dish_out give
 ʔæ tʃ^hii jèe
 pt pt pt

At the time that they arrived at the previous place, the squirrel was afflicted by the trap and died. The turtle set (the squirrel) on fire, then burnt and scraped off the body hair, then went back to the house, then chopped (the squirrel) up finely, then cooked it until it was done, then put it in a dish to give. (TS 33–34)

Example 3.9 contains the peak of “Orphan Children.” Years earlier, the father, at the insistence of the evil stepmother, had abandoned his children in the forest. Unbeknownst to the parents, the children were taken in by a good–hearted rich couple. The parents eventually show up at the home of the rich couple, begging for rice. The children treat them kindly before revealing their identities. The overall pace of this peak is relatively slow, but the use of quotations heightens the vividness of the moment:

(3.9)

juum t^hàa həə háw taaj laa pi jao hàanp^həən
 house upstairs at call ascend come pt then tray
 caan læu pi tʃ^hii
 prepare prepare pt pt

jao jèet mi haan jèe
 then both well, tell pt

baa wǎə booŋ wǎə tsàaj pao
 mother pt father pt eat IMP

k^hùu hòonuuŋ jàaŋ náj háəmə? t^haw
 dog steam in leaves this you_two in_past wrap
 pìi la? tʃ^hii jàaŋ
 pt pt pt pt

After that they called them to come up into the house, then they prepared a tray of food and took it out (to them). Then both of them said: "Mother dear, father dear, eat!" "Dog in a steamed leaf bundle like you once gave us." (OR 28–31)

3.2.1.6 Peak'

Some texts contain an additional zone of peak-like features in post-peak position. The use of peak' seems to be quite popular among Bisu storytellers, tying up loose ends of the discourse and bringing the narrative to a dramatic end. In some cases, peak' has attributes of a denouement (lessening of tension), while in others the peak' involves a sudden, final action or result.

Example 3.10 continues the story of the "Orphan Children," bringing the tale to a sudden, dramatic conclusion:

(3.10)

həmæ kjàaj jao aŋbooŋ máa namlæw jèe nuuŋbaa
 like that hear then father Clf finally pt heart
 plaak ʃiin tʃ^hii
 break die pt

cáa aŋbaa aŋʃùu máa həmæ hmjaan jao aŋwàj jèe
 then mother new Clf like that see then quickly pt
 juum ʔook həə pləək klaan luu tʃ^hii
 house go out at jump fall pt pt

nuuŋtʃ^hàa həə k^həə kancàŋ nuuŋtʃ^hàa jàaŋ plaak
 earth at arrive that_time earth that break

la tʃ^hii jèe
 pt pt pt

cúut jèe aŋbaa aŋʃùu maŋ kaaj ææn tʃ^hii
 enter pt mother new Clf fall go pt

When he heard that, their father's heart broke and he immediately died. Then when the new mother saw that, then she quickly jumped out of the house and fell to the ground. When she hit the ground the earth opened. The new mother fell into (the chasm). (OR 32–35)

Similarly, example 3.11, comprises the peak' stage of "The Cruel Widower." At the story's peak, the widower's marriage proposal had been rejected. Coming to his senses, he attempts to save his child, an event related with a concentrated series of verbs in CW 43. The resulting unhappy ending is not uncommon in Bisu folktales.

(3.11)

hææn aŋboon maŋ kùt gaa lææ jao aŋwàj aŋk^hjaan
 after_that father Clf think pt pt then quickly quickly
 ʃòonkōon jóo hùn lææn tʃ^hii
 forest at run pt pt

aŋjàa màan naa hùn dùuj ʔook pooj làu.
 child Clf ACC run dig exit lay_out pt

jàan aŋjàa màan ʃiin tʃ^ha jèe
 that chld Clf die pt pt

After that, the father came to a realization and (he) quickly ran to the forest. He ran and dug up and took out and laid out the child. (But) his child was already dead. (CW 21–23)

3.2.1.7 Post–Peak episodes

In those narratives not containing peak', a more gradual descent from the climax is utilized, which, like peak', represents something of a denouement.

In “Chengkoikoi,” a man escapes from his spirit–captor (peak) and returns home to his wife, where, in a final episode, we learn of the magical powers of the spirit’s gong. In the absence of this post–peak episode, the audience would be left wondering whether the instrument was truly capable of doing all that the spirit claimed:

(3.12)

jooŋ juum wəə k^hàabaa maan̄ kooŋ dən̄ ?æə tʃ^hii
 3ps house at wife Clf one live pt pt

cáa moojooŋ tʃ^hák jèe
 then gong strike pt

t^hùukàm tʃ^hák k^hàm ?ook
 one time strike gold exit

t^hùukàm tʃ^hák p^hluu ?ook
 one time strike silver exit

hæŋjèe caan laa tʃ^hii
 after that have pt pt

He went to his house he lived with his wife. Then he struck the gong. He struck it and gold came out. He struck it (the second time) and silver came out. After that, he was rich. (CK 39–43)

In “The Mischievous Boy,” the main character is chased by a spirit (peak), which disappears when the boy runs (literally) into his father. Thereafter, in a post-peak episode, the boy is described as a changed person:

(3.13)

juum wəə k^həə ?æə jao jaan̄ miimæən laa tʃ^hii jèe
 house at arrive ascend then 3ps good pt pt pt

lâaakaan plòŋ bŭu jao jèe
 work help do pt pt

When they returned to the house, then he was good. He helped with the work.
 (MB 30–31)

3.1.1.8 Conclusion

The conclusion in some way “wraps up” the discourse. This may be done in a number of ways. Example 3.14 is structurally similar to sentences in the orientation in describing the ongoing state of the reformed boy. Example 3.15 follows the peak of “The Swans and the Turtle,” wherein the turtle falls from the sky and crashes into the face of a water buffalo with a great splat that splashes onto the arm of a herdsman, relating that event to the current human situation. Example 3.16 contains a typical moral.

(3.14)

hæŋ caajlaa pìi jao aŋbaa nə? aŋboŋ ʔɰm bàa
 that_time since pt then mother and father group neg
 ʔíi kaŋ jèe
 scold pt pt

Since that time, the father and mother did not scold (him) again. (MB 32)

(3.15)

jao kòpæt pæt nam ʔaamɯk^héə
 then armpit stinky up_to_this_time

Thus (our) armpits smell bad to this day. (ST 19)

(3.16)

k^haatæ ts^haŋ wàa ʔup kaa ŋæ
 long_ago people this speak pt pt

praa nīi wàa aŋbaa kùn naa tæen jèe
 novice monk this this mother meriful_grace ACC repay pt

jào saatu nīi wàa aṅboon kùn naa tàæn jèe
 then ordained_monk this this father merciful_grace ACC repay pt

hæŋjèe bìit^hàan kàmsoon tàæn
 after_that fable teachings repay

?aŋluuk? aŋlaan na? soon ŋææ
 children grandchildren ACC teach pt

In the past, people said: The novice monk repays the meritorious grace of his mother. And the ordained monk repays the meritorious grace of his father. From this, repay the fable. Teach (your) children and grandchildren. (FM 14–18)

3.2.2 Transitivity

In their 1980 article, “Transitivity in grammar and discourse,” Paul J. Hopper and Sandra A. Thompson set out to expand and quantify the definition of transitivity. Underlying their “Transitivity Hypothesis” is the idea that some grammatical phenomena can be better explained by taking relative transitivity into account. This is especially the case with discourse, where various transitivity factors figure prominently in marking foreground and background material.

For Hopper and Thompson, transitivity can be empirically determined through examining the presence or absence of ten parameters, as shown in table 3.4:

Table 3.4. Categories of transitivity
(Hopper and Thompson, 1980: 252)

	High	Low
Participants	2 or more participants, A and O	1 participant
Kinesis	Action	Non-Action
Aspect	Telic	Atelic
Punctuality	Punctual	Non-punctual
Volitionality	Volitional	Non-volitional
Affirmation	Affirmative	Negative
Mode	Realis	Irrealis
Agency	A high in potency	A low in potency
Affectedness of O	O totally affected	O not affected
Individuation of O	O highly individuated	O non-individuated

These ten parameters enable researchers to evaluate degrees of transitivity, as opposed categorically stating that a sentence is transitive if it involves an affected object, intransitive if it does not. As Hopper and Thompson (1980: 252) state:

It is easy to show that each component of Transitivity involves a different facet of the effectiveness or intensity with which the action is transferred from one participant to another.

Just as different levels of transitivity would be expected to frequently correspond to certain English verb tenses, connections between transitivity and Bisu particle choice may be present. The remainder of this section, then, will expand upon Hopper and Thompson's parameters and their realization in the Bisu texts at hand.²²

3.2.2.1 Participants

“No transfer at all can take place unless at least two participants are involved” (Hopper and Thompson 1980: 252). Thus, the parameter of participants is set in

²² In multiclausal sentences, only the final clause receives a transitivity score, simply because preposed clauses rarely contain particles.

binary terms, with a “high” reading for two or more participants, low for one participant. Example 3.17 thus illustrates what could be termed a “maximally marked” sentence, with explicit agent and patients, that would receive a score of 1, while example 3.18, with only one participant, would receive a score of 0 for this parameter:

(3.17)

cáa ni kâm máa aŋbooŋ maŋ aŋjâa jèet naa
 then this occurrence that father Clf child both ACC
 còoŋkǎoŋ aŋwəə ʃùuŋ tɔɔj læ tʃ^hii jèe
 forest far go_together release pt pt pt

Then this time their father took both children far into the forest together and released them. (OR 15)

(3.18)

cáa aŋbaa aŋʃùu maŋ bæən tʃ^hii jèe
 then mother new Clf know pt pt

Then the new mother realized it. (OR 11)

Zero anaphora, a phenomenon common in many Southeast Asian languages, presents something of a challenge to this parameter. Hopper and Thompson (1980: 284) acknowledge this, and indicate that implicit reference should be counted as participants, inasmuch as “missing arguments may be supplied with no change in grammaticality.” Thus, example 3.19 would receive a score of 1 for this parameter, inasmuch as the agent, the otter (last mentioned in the previous sentence), is clear from the discourse context:

(3.19)

kaʔtaj maŋ naʔ mǎan paʔnóo
 rabbit Clf ACC tell pt

(The otter) told the rabbit: (AK 16)

3.2.2.2 Kinesis

Hopper and Thompson use kinesis to indicate whether the action “can be transferred from one participant to another” (1980: 252). Thus, example 3.20 would receive a score of 1 for this parameter, while example 3.21, carrying a more stative sense, would receive a score of 0:

(3.20)

cáa koowææ hææŋ ʔuun p^hòoj lǎæ tʃ^hii jèe
 then rice_head that shake scatter pt pt pt

And then he shook the rice heads over his body. (CK 22)

(3.21)

naasón naʔ hmjaan tʃ^hii jèe
 fish trap ACC see pt pt

(He) saw the fish trap. (AK 4)

3.2.2.3 Aspect

Actions which are viewed as having been completed are designated “telic,” while those which are only partially completed or are in the process of being completed are considered “atelic.” These terms roughly correspond to the notions of perfective and imperfective aspect. Example 3.22 thus would receive a score of 1 for this parameter, while example 3.23, which reflects an ongoing action, would receive a score of 0:

(3.22)

hæŋjèe tʃhæŋkɔ̌jkɔ̌j maŋ læn jao hùn æn tʃhii
 after_that Chengkoik Clf pt then run pt pt

After Chengkoikoi had left, he ran away. (CK 38)

(3.23)

hæŋjèe aŋbaa maŋ tùm kʰùn næ pɔɔ tʃhii aŋjàa
 after_that mother Clf one Clf watch care_for pt child
 sɔɔŋ kʰùn na?
 two Clf ACC

After that, the mother cared for (them)—the two children. (FM 6)

3.2.2.4 Punctuality

In defining punctuality Hopper and Thompson (1980: 252) point out: “Actions carried out with no obvious transitional phase between inception and completion have a more marked effect on their patients than actions which are inherently on-going; contrast *kick* (punctual) with *carry* (non-punctual).” Example 3.24 would thus receive a score of 1 for this parameter, while example 3.25 would receive a score of 0:

(3.24)

bàa mlàaŋ jào kʰabaa maŋ ʃiin tʃhii jèe
 neg long_time then wife Clf die pt pt

Not long thereafter the wife died. (OR 4)

(3.25)

jao aŋjàa aŋboon nə? dʌŋ mlàaŋ ka tʃha jèe
 then child father npt live long_time pt pt pt

Then the child and father lived together for a long time. (CW 6)

3.2.2.5 Volitionality

This parameter addresses the question of whether the agent was acting of his or her own accord—whether there was purpose in the action. Example 3.26 would thus receive a score of 1 for this parameter, while example 3.27, wherein the agent is clearly not purposefully carrying out the action, would receive a score of 0:

(3.26)

cáa ni kâm máa aŋbooŋ maŋ aŋjàa jèet naa
 then this occurrence that father Clf child both ACC
 còoŋkɔoŋ aŋwàə ʃùuj tɔɔj lææ tʃ^hii jèe
 forest far go_together release pt pt pt

Then this time their father took both children far into the forest together and released them. (OR 15)

(3.27)

càawàa aŋbooŋ máa ʃiin pìi tʃ^hii jèe
 then father Clf die pt pt pt

But (their) father died. (FM 9)

3.2.2.6 Affirmation

This parameter serves to distinguish affirmative from negative sentences. Example 3.28 would thus receive a score of 1 for this parameter, while example 3.29 would receive a score of 0:

(3.28)

hootʃ^hén ʔuu aŋjàa ʔǎu na jooŋ sùuŋ kaa tsàan
 squirrel group child group ACC 3pp go_together pt eat
 tʃ^hii jèe
 pt pt

That group of squirrel children, they ate together. (TS 35)

(3.29)

jàakee maŋ jèet mi bàa ʃùuj kaa luu làæ too kaa
 jèe
 child Clf both well,neg go_together pt pt pt pt pt pt

The two children were unable to return together. (OR 16)

3.2.2.7 Mode

This parameter distinguishes between realis and irrealis actions. The latter would seem to overlap with negative sentences (3.2.2.6 affirmation), but also include future projections. Example 3.30 would thus receive a score of 1 for this parameter, while example 3.31 would receive a score of 0.

(3.30)

ts^halàa màaŋ háæŋjèe ŋææm làæ pìi tʃ^hii
 tiger Clf after_that look_upwards pt pt pt

After that the tiger looked upwards. (TD 21)

(3.31)

cìikùu cák ʔook pìi jao saaŋ tsàa nææ
 thorn pull exit pt then short_time eat pt
 hoopòoŋ máa joojjèe

“(I) will pull the thorn out and soon thereafter will eat.” (But this intent was frustrated) (TD 22)

3.2.2.8 Agency

By agency, Hopper and Thompson mean the degree to which a participant is able to carry out an action. Thus, non-animate subjects would be considered low in agency. Example 3.32, containing an animate subject, would thus receive a score of 1, while example 3.33, containing a non-animate subject, would receive a score of zero:

(3.32)

cáa háæŋjèe hoopòŋ màaŋ muu lak^hüü jáaŋ
 then after_that deer Clf well, foot that
 jóok lææ tʃ^hii
 lift pt pt

After that, the deer lifted his foot up. (TD 20)

(3.33)

jaaŋ laʔkáa hæə aŋtoo aŋhüü ææn jaʔ jèe
 3ps in_front_of at self large both pt pt

All the large (fish) were in front of her. (CO 12)

3.2.2.9 Affectedness of object

This parameter refers to the degree to which an action has been carried out on the object. It addresses the question of whether the object was totally or only partially affected by the actions of the agent. Example 3.34 would thus receive a score of 1, while example 3.35 would receive a score of 0:

(3.34)

lòŋtæə oŋ tsàa k^hoo pìi tʃ^hii jèe
 fish enter eat completely pt pt pt

(He) ate all the fish completely. (AK 6)

(3.35)

laŋʃjaam maŋ naasóŋ klaw hmjaaŋ làüjào
 otter Clf fish trap inside see and_then
 laŋʃjaam maŋ naʔ naan tʃ^hii jèe
 otter Clf ACC ask pt pt

And then (he) saw the otter in the trap and then asked the otter: (AK 11)

3.2.2.10 Individuation of O

This parameter simultaneously refers to “both the distinctness of the patient from the A[gent]...and to it’s distinctiveness from it’s own background” (Hopper and Thompson, 1980: 253). The following characteristics clarify this concept:

Table 3.5. Components of individuation
(Hopper and Thompson 1980: 253)

Individuated	Non-individuated
proper	common
human, animate	inanimate
concrete	abstract
singular	plural
count	mass
referential, definite	non-referential

Under this criterion, example 3.36 would receive a score of 1, while example 3.37 would receive a score of 0:

(3.36)

hik^hàm kaʔtaj maŋ lamaaj tu lùm gaaj jào tàu
 that_time rabbit Clf stick one Clf get then one
 sook jèe moon ɲææ
 forearm pt length pt

At that time the rabbit got a stick that was a forearm's length. (AK 22)

(3.37)

laaŋ ʃaa taŋ lua jào
 water search for drink pt pt

(He) came looking for water. (AK 10)

Bisu's abundant use of zero anaphora would seem to present something of a challenge to this parameter. Nonetheless, since the identification of the absent object is always clear from context, sentences like example 3.38, where the husband is the victim of both an evil spirit and zero anaphora, would receive a score of 1.

(3.38)

cáa	hæmæhaaj	læ	tamlæ	t ^h àalæ
then	like_that	go	continue	and_then
tʃ ^h æŋkɔ̃jkɔ̃j	maŋ	tʃ ^h uu	buun	tʃ ^h ii jèe
Chengkoikoi	Clf	grab	take	pt pt

And as (they) were going along like that, then Chengkoikoi came and grabbed (the husband) and took (him) away. (CK 5)

3.2.3 Sentence complexity

Clive McClelland's 1996 dissertation on Tarifit oral discourse suggested possible correspondences between clause structure and various prosodic features. Similarly, sentence complexity could have an impact upon particle selection: more complex sentences might require more complex particle clusters.

For this reason, all the sentences in the Bisu folktale corpus were sorted according to the number of clauses contained in each sentence (excluding relative clauses). All the Bisu conjunctions (including zero) employed in joining the clauses were entered into the database in order to determine the frequency with which each conjunction was used. On this basis, further examination of the relationship between sentence complexity and particle usage was carried out.

3.2.4 Quote/non–quote material

Quoted material in Bisu narratives often behaves differently from non–quoted material in terms of particle usage. For this reason, a quote/non–quote category was established, likewise comprising a binary coding for each sentence.

3.2.5 Experiencer/non–experiencer

Bisu exhibits a basic evidential system, indicating whether the speaker was personally involved in the events being related. For this reason, an experiencer/non–experiencer category was established, comprising a binary coding for each particle. The elicited sentence in example 3.39 displays the speech of an experiencer (the speaker speaking about himself), while example 3.40 relates the same event from the vantage of a non–experiencer (speaker reporting information about someone else):

(3.39)

gaa wit^haajuu jàaŋ kàaŋ tʃ^hii
lps radio it break pt

My radio, it broke.

(3.40)

somt^hʃaj wit^haajuu jàaŋ kàaŋ tʃ^hii jèe
Somchai radio it break pt pt

Somchai's radio, it broke.

3.3 Cloze Exercise

As a further test of the degree to which language community consensus might exist on particle usage, a cloze exercise was developed. A total of 100 particle clusters were replaced with blank spaces in three folktales, “Ai Kham,” “Poor Boy.”

and “Turtle and Squirrel.” Literate Bisu volunteers were then asked to “fill in the blanks.” Several volunteers did not completely fill out the instrument, while several others worked cooperatively on the project. Results from the remaining five valid cloze exercises were transferred to a spreadsheet and discussed at length with Somchai Kaewkhamnoi, the main language assistant for this project.

CHAPTER 4

RESULTS

4.0 Introduction

This chapter presents the results drawn from application of the methodology outlined in chapter three, coupled with information gleaned from discussions with native speakers.

The first major portion of this chapter, section 4.1, presents an overview of particle usage in the written folktale corpus. Thereafter, 4.1.1 discusses the frequency with which particles occur in the corpus, while 4.1.2 provides an inventory of folktale particles. In 4.1.3, a degree of contrast is drawn between particles which appear only in isolation, those which only occur in particle clusters, and those which may appear in either context. 4.1.4 highlights the relatively few sentences which do not contain particles, seeking plausible reasons for their absence. 4.1.5 comprises an overview of transitivity rankings throughout the thirteen folktales, providing a framework for interpreting transitivity scores. Similarly, 4.1.6 takes a “big picture” perspective on multiclausal sentences and their particles.

The middle sections of this chapter feature profiles of individual particles, highlighting, among other things, their semantic connotations, discourse roles, and transitivity associations. For organizational ease, the particles which see the most frequent use and have the heaviest functional loads are profiled in 4.2, 4.3 and 4.4, while less used particles are grouped in 4.5.

The final section of this chapter compares particle usage in the written folktales, the life stories, and the expository texts, demonstrating the co-dependent relationship between text type and particle usage.

A synthesis of these results is presented in chapter five, while a summary chart of the particles found in the folktales is provided as an appendix.

4.1 Overview of particle usage

4.1.1 Particle frequency

The vast majority of sentences in Bisu written folktales contain final particles. The thirteen folktales at hand contain 384 sentences. 338 (88.02%) of which contain particles.²³ This high proportion of particle-containing sentences is found throughout the data, whether one is examining quotation sentences, audience-directed sentences (commands and explicit story morals), or non-quotation sentences, as shown in table 4.1:

Table 4.1. Particle frequency in the 13 written folktales

Sentence contents	Number of sentences	Number of sentences containing particles	Percent of sentences containing particles
Quotation	85	73	85.88%
Audience-directed	6	5	83.33%
Non-quotation	293	260	88.74%
Total	384	338	88.02%

²³ For purposes of this dissertation, percentages are expressed as pure numerical values (rather than being rounded up)

Table 4.2. Number of particles contained in particle containing sentences

#particles/ sentence	Quote	%	Non-quot e	%	Audience -directed	%	Total	%Total
0	12	14.12%	33	11.26%	1	16.67%	46	11.98%
1	31	36.47%	93	31.74%	1	16.67%	125	32.55%
2	32	37.65%	98	33.45%	3	50.00%	133	34.64%
3	8	9.41%	58	19.80%	1	16.67%	67	17.45%
4	2	2.35%	10	3.41%	0	0.00%	12	3.13%
5	0	0.00%	0	0.00%	0	0.00%	0	0.00%
6	0	0.00%	1	0.34%	0	0.00%	1	0.26%
Total	85	100.00%	293	100.00%	6	100.00%	384	100.00%

Examples 4.1–4.6 illustrate maximal and minimal particle configurations:

(4.1)

jàakee maŋ jèet mi bàa ʃùuj kaa luu làæ
 child Clf both well. neg go_together pt pt pt
 too kaa jèe
 pt pt pt

The two children were unable to return together. (OR 16)

(4.2)

hæŋ aŋjàa tùu k^hùn màaŋ na? wát duŋ
 that child one Clf Clf ACC temple live
 làæ pi tʃ^hii jèe
 pt pt pt pt

And caused the other child to live in the temple. (FM 9)

(4.3)

cáa aŋjàa màaŋ tooj lùu tʃ^hii jèe
 then child Clf release pt pt pt

Then the child released him to go. (CK 18)

(4.4)

ʔoo lanʃjaam naʔ maa ʃiin tʃ^háʔ máʔ
 Ooh! otter ACC Clf die pt pt

"Ooh—this otter is dead already!" (AK 27)

(4.5)

aŋjàa t^hùu màaŋ gá jèe
 child one Clf get pt

They had one child (CK 8)

(4.6)

t^hùu kàm tʃ^hék k^hàm ʔoɔk
 one time strike gold exit

(He) struck it and gold came out. (CK 41)

4.1.2 Particle distribution

As shown on table 4.3, the written Bisu folktales at hand contain seventy–five distinct sentence final particles, occurring a total of 624 times. In looking over the number of times that each particle is actually employed, however, it becomes readily apparent that only a small number of particles occur with great regularity. Indeed, only nine particles are used more than ten times. These nine particles together are used 459 times, thus accounting for 73.56% of all particle occurrences.

Table 4.3. Particles contained in the thirteen written folktales

Particle	# Occurrences	% of total sent (384)	% sent w/part (338)	% of total particles (624)	Particle	# Occurrences	% of total sent (384)	% sent w/part (338)	% of total particles (624)
Jèe	171	44.53%	50.59%	27.40%	paanaa	2	0.52%	0.59%	0.32%
tʃ ^h ii	148	38.54%	43.79%	23.72%	poonoo	2	0.52%	0.59%	0.32%
læm	44	11.46%	13.02%	7.05%	tʃ ^h ii2	2	0.52%	0.59%	0.32%
ŋæm	22	5.73%	6.51%	3.53%	?àahaa	2	0.52%	0.59%	0.32%
kaal	18	4.69%	5.33%	2.88%	gaal	2	0.52%	0.59%	0.32%
pii	15	3.91%	4.44%	2.40%	jao	2	0.52%	0.59%	0.32%
læm1	14	3.65%	4.14%	2.24%	ŋá?	2	0.52%	0.59%	0.32%
paanɔɔ	14	3.65%	4.14%	2.24%	?íi	1	0.26%	0.30%	0.16%
lúul	13	3.39%	3.85%	2.08%	cáan	1	0.26%	0.30%	0.16%
naem	9	2.34%	2.66%	1.44%	gaa2	1	0.26%	0.30%	0.16%
naowaa	8	2.08%	2.37%	1.28%	hæm	1	0.26%	0.30%	0.16%
kaa2	7	1.82%	2.07%	1.12%	jáo	1	0.26%	0.30%	0.16%
tʃ ^h á?	7	1.82%	2.07%	1.12%	kanna	1	0.26%	0.30%	0.16%
?æm	6	1.56%	1.78%	0.96%	k ^h aa	1	0.26%	0.30%	0.16%
laal	6	1.56%	1.78%	0.96%	k ^h u	1	0.26%	0.30%	0.16%
laa4	6	1.56%	1.78%	0.96%	kjáap	1	0.26%	0.30%	0.16%
lankaa	6	1.56%	1.78%	0.96%	lá?	1	0.26%	0.30%	0.16%
læm2	6	1.56%	1.78%	0.96%	lá?	1	0.26%	0.30%	0.16%
jáal	5	1.30%	1.48%	0.80%	lá?waa	1	0.26%	0.30%	0.16%
laa2	5	1.30%	1.48%	0.80%	lía	1	0.26%	0.30%	0.16%
laa3	5	1.30%	1.48%	0.80%	laaj	1	0.26%	0.30%	0.16%
coo	3	0.78%	0.89%	0.48%	laalá?	1	0.26%	0.30%	0.16%
jáa2	3	0.78%	0.89%	0.48%	laalæm	1	0.26%	0.30%	0.16%
já?	3	0.78%	0.89%	0.48%	laaŋ	1	0.26%	0.30%	0.16%
jaa3	3	0.78%	0.89%	0.48%	lɔɔ	1	0.26%	0.30%	0.16%
jóo	3	0.78%	0.89%	0.48%	læw1æm	1	0.26%	0.30%	0.16%
k ^h aalaj	3	0.78%	0.89%	0.48%	maamaa	1	0.26%	0.30%	0.16%
lúu2	3	0.78%	0.89%	0.48%	mæm	1	0.26%	0.30%	0.16%
má?	3	0.78%	0.89%	0.48%	náocá	1	0.26%	0.30%	0.16%
pèe	3	0.78%	0.89%	0.48%	naa	1	0.26%	0.30%	0.16%
pjaadèe	3	0.78%	0.89%	0.48%	pá?1æm	1	0.26%	0.30%	0.16%
tɔɔ	3	0.78%	0.89%	0.48%	paaná?	1	0.26%	0.30%	0.16%
wa?	3	0.78%	0.89%	0.48%	paanadèo	1	0.26%	0.30%	0.16%
pao	3	0.78%	0.89%	0.48%	plæm	1	0.26%	0.30%	0.16%
cáa	2	0.52%	0.59%	0.32%	poj	1	0.26%	0.30%	0.16%
læw	2	0.52%	0.59%	0.32%	siŋ	1	0.26%	0.30%	0.16%
nɔɔ	2	0.52%	0.59%	0.32%	ʃeewáa	1	0.26%	0.30%	0.16%

4.1.3 Particle cluster ordering

As mentioned in 4.1.1, any given Bisu sentence may contain up to six particles. The basic order of these clusters is illustrated in figure 4.1²³:

²³ Additional information about each of the particles listed in figure 4.1 will be provided later in the dissertation.

Joint Action	Motion Component	Intensification	"give" construction	Ability	Aspectual Core (Declarative Sentences)	Evidential	Emphasis	Negative Benefit	End Quote Marker
kaa2 "together"	læ downward/ southerly	læl repeated action	pii causative/ purposive/ permissive	kaal state/ability	nææ stative				nææ
lanka? "together"	læa "come out"/ quote form.	læ2 emphasis laa4 benefactive		gaalkaal ability tookaa1 inability	tʃ ^h ii completive tʃ ^h ii jaal completive jaal completive laal completive tʃ ^h á? emphatic comp. panoo completive laalpanoo completive naowaa repeated episode k ^h aalaj existential mkr ?æ affirmative mkr	jèe	má? mæ caa	jaa2	

Figure 4.1. Basic order of particle cluster components in the written folktales.

4.1.4 Particles in isolation

Relatively few particles may occur in isolation (that is, without any accompanying particles). Fewer still occur only in isolation. The particles which may occur in isolation, and the number of times in which they occur in isolation relative to their total number of occurrences, are listed in table 4.4:

Table 4.4. Particles which may occur in isolation

Particle	Isolated occurrences	Isolated occurrences in quotes	% Isolated occurrences in quotes	Total occurrences	% Occurrences in isolation
kanna	1	1	100.00%	1	100.00%
k ^h aalaj	3	0	0.00%	3	100.00%
lá?waa	1	1	100.00%	1	100.00%
láa	1	1	100.00%	1	100.00%
laaj	1	0	0.00%	1	100.00%
laalá?	1	1	100.00%	1	100.00%
nòò	2	2	100.00%	2	100.00%
poj	1	1	100.00%	1	100.00%
ŋææ	17	8	47.06%	22	77.27%
pao	1	1	100.00%	2	50.00%
paanòò	6	0	0.00%	14	42.86%
jàal	2	2	100.00%	5	40.00%
jèe	57	0	0.00%	171	33.33%
jóo	1	1	100.00%	3	33.33%
lùu2	1	1	100.00%	3	33.33%
pèe	1	1	100.00%	3	33.33%
pjaadèe	1	1	100.00%	3	33.33%
wa?	1	1	100.00%	3	33.33%
laal	1	1	100.00%	6	16.67%
tʃ ^h ii	18	1	5.56%	148	12.16%
nææ	1	0	0.00%	9	11.11%
lùul	1	0	0.00%	13	7.69%
kaal	1	0	0.00%	18	5.56%

Table 4.4 reveals that twenty–three particles occur in isolation a total of 121 times. Eight of these occur only in isolation, while the remaining fifteen may occur in isolation or as part of a particle cluster. Fourteen of the twenty–three particles occur in isolation only in quotations. Indeed, when *jèe* and *tʃ^hii* are removed from consideration, the vast majority of particle–in–isolation–containing–sentences are seen to be quotations.

4.1.5 Sentences that do not contain particles

This corpus contains forty–six particle–less sentences. Eleven of these are titles. Twelve are quotations, with one mild audience–directed command to carry out the moral of the story, as shown in example group 4.7:

(4.7)

- | | | |
|----|----|--|
| FM | 17 | From this, repay the fable. |
| AK | 12 | "You there—What are you doing in the trap?" |
| AK | 13 | "In a minute, the owner will come—then what will you do?" |
| AK | 17 | "Then what should I do?" |
| CK | 27 | "Why is it like this?" |
| PB | 3 | "Oh! I'm so poor—what am I going to do?" |
| FS | 14 | "What's happening?" |
| DB | 16 | "Who said Kajcong chicken and Puutshaa chicken?" |
| PB | 19 | "In the gold mine shaft or the silver mine shaft?" |
| PB | 43 | "The gold mine shaft or the silver mine shaft?" |
| PB | 37 | "This (will) rot." |
| TD | 13 | "This thorn—It's been here about a year" |
| TD | 18 | "Then, if you are going to eat me, you're welcome to do so." |

The lack of final particles in the remaining twenty–two sentences (example 4.8) can be explained on the basis of discourse features. Twelve of the particle–less sentences (CK 41, CK 42, CO 24, CW 20, PB 47, DB 18, DB 19, ST 12, ST 13, ST 14, ST 17, ST 18, ST 19) occur in the last few lines of their respective discourses, often reflecting a final suspense. Five of the particle–less sentences (AK 10, DB 2,

DB 3, DB 4, DB 5, DB 7, DB 8) involve introductions (although all of the other folktales utilized particles of some sort in the orientation section). PB 31 may lack a particle because of its context in a familiar series of agricultural actions; that is, the story might have been slowed down had the author “cluttered” the series with particles. Similarly, DB 12 repeats the action of a previous sentence and leads into the peak of the story.

One sentence, OR 25, may lack a particle for cultural reasons. The verb meaning ‘beg for rice’ is packed with strong emotion. Many Bisu, age twenty–five and older, have told terrible stories of routinely wandering from village to village begging for rice, inasmuch as they themselves had little arable land, subsisting primarily on what they could forage from the nearby jungle. They were often subjected to much verbal abuse while begging, being taunted as “filthy mountain people.” All of the Bisu life histories collected to this point have included extensive, shame–filled descriptions of this aspect of the group’s history. Perhaps, then, this is a case of “Isn’t a word enough?”; that is, the mere mention of this word draws forth such strong emotion that no additional amplification or clarification of the type usually supplied by particles is needed.

(4.8)

- AK 10 (He) came looking for water
- CK 6 Then that woman was afraid and went back to the village
- CK 41 He struck it and gold came out.
- CK 42 He struck it (the second time) and silver came out.
- CO 24 The moral of this story:
- CW 20 The woman, well, after that did not take him.
- DB 4 Mr. Kiew was deaf.
- DB 5 Mr. Paw was blind.
- DB 7 At Uncle Kaew's house, Mr. Khiew was the one responsible for grabbing the chicken.
- DB 8 Mr. Paw was the one responsible for telling (him where to grab).
- DB 12 Then he went back and asked again.

DB	18 Mr. Khiew ran away.
DB	19 Mr. Paw fled underneath the house
OR	25 After that, she took her husband to go beg for rice to eat.
PB	31 Truly (he) cleared a hillfield.
PB	47 Dead.
ST	12 When he opened his mouth, he fell down
ST	13 The the buffalo looked upwards.
ST	14 All the buffalo in the herd lifted their heads and looked
ST	17 To this day, water buffalo don't have upper teeth.
ST	18 The turtle's shell was completely crushed and excrement of the turtle fell on the upper arm of that person
ST	19 Thus (our armpits) smell bad to this day.

4.1.6 Transitivity ranking: a framework for interpretation

As discussed in chapter three, transitivity ranking has been adopted as one method for “teasing out” the meaning of particles in context. Sentences receive transitivity scores ranging from 0–10, depending on the transitivity factors discussed in 3.2.2. On that basis, an effort is made to associate certain particles with different levels of transitivity.

The purpose of this section, then, is to provide an overview of transitivity scores in the written folktales such that the significance of the transitivity discussions relative to each individual particle will be more readily apparent.

Of the 384 sentences in the written folktale corpus, 288 (75%) received transitivity rankings. Those not ranked include quotations and title sentences, neither of which actually involve action and are thus, by definition, low in transitivity.

The average transitivity score for all 288 sentences is 5.839, with the median score standing at 6.0. Nonetheless, the individual sentence scores do not arrange themselves into a neat bell curve; rather, a two-peaked form emerges as sentences garnering scores of 3 and 6 occur forty-one and forty-nine times, respectively (figure 4.2):

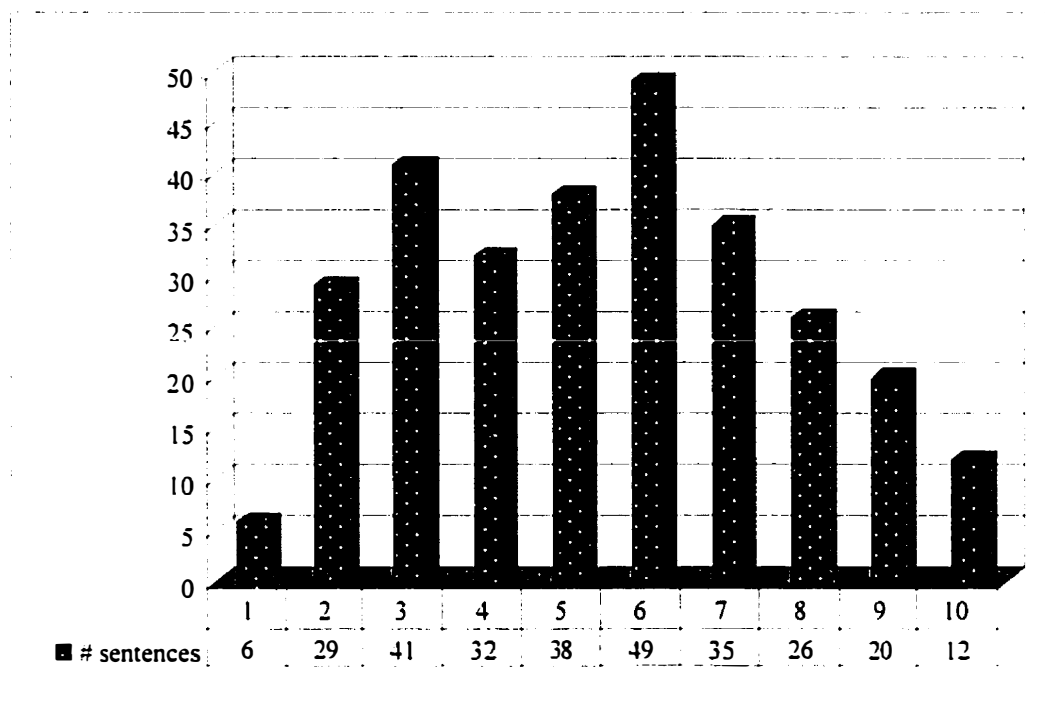


Figure 4.2. Overview of transitivity scores in the written folktales.

Ensuing sections will reveal which particles are most likely to occur at the 6 and 3 junctures. Until then, figure 4.2 will serve as a guideline for characterizing the average transitivity scores of individual particles as high (6 and above), mid (4–5), or low (1–3).

4.1.7 Multiple clauses and particles: a framework for interpretation

Sentences containing more than one clause pose something of a challenge for the interpretation of sentence final particles. Only rarely does a sentence final particle occur at the conclusion of preposed clause. Does the sentence final particle cluster then modify the entire sentence, or only the most recent of the clauses?

To address this question, all of the sentences in the written folktale corpus were coded for the number of clauses which they contain. Multiclausal sentences were further categorized on the basis of how the respective clauses are joined.

Out of a total of 384 sentences, seventy-two contained multiple clauses (18.75%). The distribution of multiple clauses in quote and non-quote sentences, as well as the instruments used to join the clauses, are displayed in table 4.5.²⁴

²⁴ The shades of meaning of the conjunctions in figure 4.5 have not yet been determined. Bisu language assistants consistently glossed all of these conjunctions with the same Thai word.

		jao	zero	luu jao	caa	lae jao	laa jao	jao hlao jao	jao jaa	kan lææ cáŋ	làaŋj ao	laa jee	lææw	Total
Non-Quotes	# occurrences	27	5	6	4	3	2	1	1	1	0	0	0	50
	% occurrences	54.00%	10.00%	12.00%	8.00%	6.00%	4.00%	2.00%	2.00%	2.00%	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%	100.00%
Quotes	# occurrences	14	4	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	21
	% occurrences	66.67%	19.05%	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%	0.00%	4.76%	4.76%	4.76%	100.00%
Total	# occurrences	41	9	6	4	3	2	1	1	1	1	1	1	71
	% occurrences	57.75%	12.68%	8.45%	5.63%	4.23%	2.82%	1.41%	1.41%	1.41%	1.41%	1.41%	1.41%	100.00%

Figure 4.5. Breakdown of multiple clause occurrence and conjunction usage

As shown in table 4.5, the vast majority of multi-clausal sentences utilize *jao* 'and then' to join clauses. *jao*-containing sentences usually involve temporal succession (examples 4.9, 4.10), although conditionality may also be implied (examples 4.11, 4.12).²⁵

(4.9)

kasəəj ʔuu ləək k^hoo jào p^hluu jàaŋ han
 monkey group finish completely then silver that take
 æən tʃ^hii
 ascend pt

When the group of monkeys had all left, then he took the silver and left. (PB 22)

(4.10)

háʔmáʔ mâaj jao aŋbooŋ maŋ ʃiin tʃ^hii jèe
 like_that tell then father Clf die pt pt

When he told (him) that, then the father died. (FS 10)

(4.11)

naaŋ gaa naʔ gaa làa suuŋ jào naaŋ aŋjàa maŋ naʔ sàæ
 2ps 1ps ACC pt pt pt then 2ps child Clf ACC kill
 pèe
 IMP

"If you want me, kill your child!" (CW 11)

²⁵ When pressed to include some sort of overt 'if' word in a sentence, Bisu language assistants invariably borrow the Thai/Northern Thai equivalent, *t^haa*. Bisu language assistants consistently included *t^haa* in their written Thai translations of sentences such as TD 15.

(4.12)

gá hoopòɔŋ nii màŋ naʔ tsàaj jao cìikùu níʔ tʃʰa
 lps deer this Clf ACC eat then thorn this this
 maa gaa mànpɔɔŋ næʔ núŋtʃʰu nú tʃʰao laaŋ jáaŋ
 lf lps mouth and neck this pierce pt pt

"If I eat this deer, then this thorn will pierce my mouth and neck." (TD 15)

The second most used joining device is no device; the lack of any conjunction generally indicates temporal succession (much as was the case with like *jao*-containing sentences) as shown in examples 4.13 and 4.14:

(4.13)

jàojàa juum pʰàolɯɯj kʰàabaajàa màaŋ naʔ
 and_then house return female Clf ACC
 m̄aaʃ lɯɯ tʃʰii
 tell pt pt

And then (he) returned home and told the woman. (CW 14)

(4.14)

ʃii kækæ kasəɔj muuloŋ jáaŋ lùn tʃʰii jèe cáa
 die act monkey group that come pt pt pt

(When he) went and acted like he had died, that group of monkeys indeed came. (PB 11)

The question as to whether sentence final particles related to all or only one of the clauses in a multiclausal sentence will be addressed in the context of the particle profiles, and summarized in chapter 5.

4.1.8 Place in the discourse

As mentioned in chapter three, all the sentences in the written folktales were coded for the point in the discourse in which they occurred. The purpose of this

section is to provide an overview of how transitivity, the use of multiple clauses, and the use of quotations relate to each stage of discourse development.

4.1.8.1 Particles per sentence

As mentioned in 4.1.1, Bisu sentences may take up to six sentence final particles. Nonetheless, the number of particles likely to be taken by any given sentence is somewhat constrained by place in the discourse. As shown in figure 4.3, sentences in pre-peak episodes are more likely to take a larger number of particles than are sentences at other stages. This is not surprising; the orientation and conclusion stages contain few actions, and thus few particles. Peak, peak', and postpeak all are rather dramatic, and the tendency for fewer particles to occur in those places than are found in pre-peak episodes is consistent with the "variation in length of units" Longacre (1996: 36) links to peak. The prepeak episodes, by contrast, do not come under the same demand for dramatic energy, resulting in a more gradual building of the background from which the sudden energy of the peak is launched.

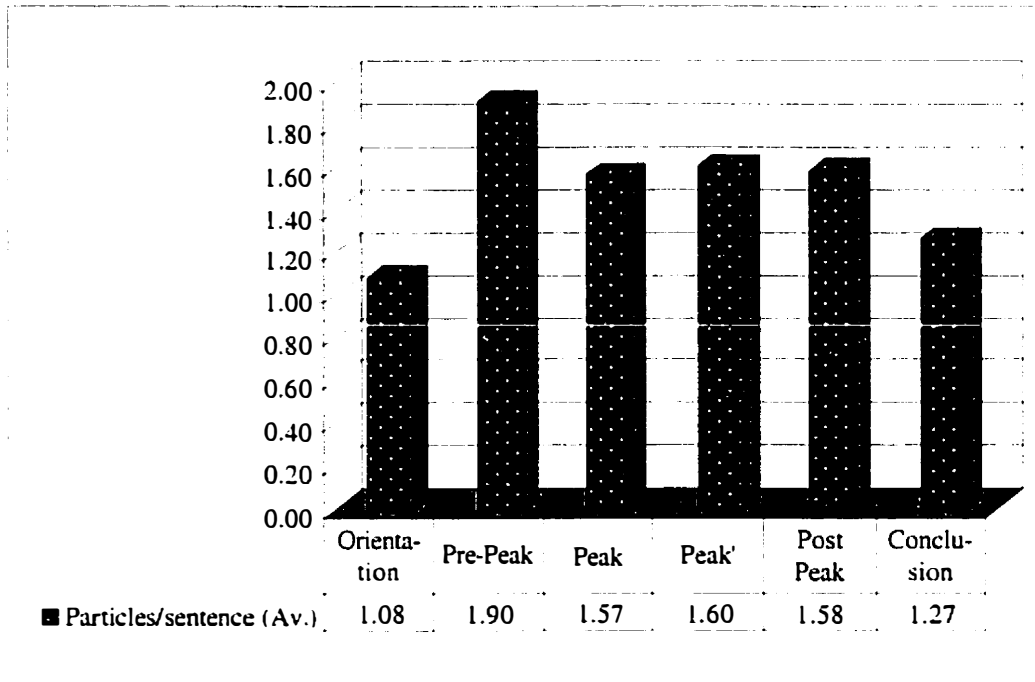


Figure 4.3. Average number of particles per sentence relative to place in the discourse.

4.1.8.2 Transitivity

In comparing the average transitivity of sentences at each point in the discourse, several patterns emerge (figure 4.4). Sentences in the orientation stage are the lowest in transitivity. This is not unexpected, given the fact that orientations usually involve a number of stative verbs, with no appreciable action. Transitivity scores are much higher, as the events of the story unfold. It is somewhat surprising to find peak transitivity scores just slightly higher than those of pre-peak episodes. Peak', as expected, shows very high transitivity, something which definitely fits the tendency of peak and peak' stages to contain much concentrated action. Post-peak episodes taper off to near peak levels, while conclusions, as expected, fall to near orientation levels.

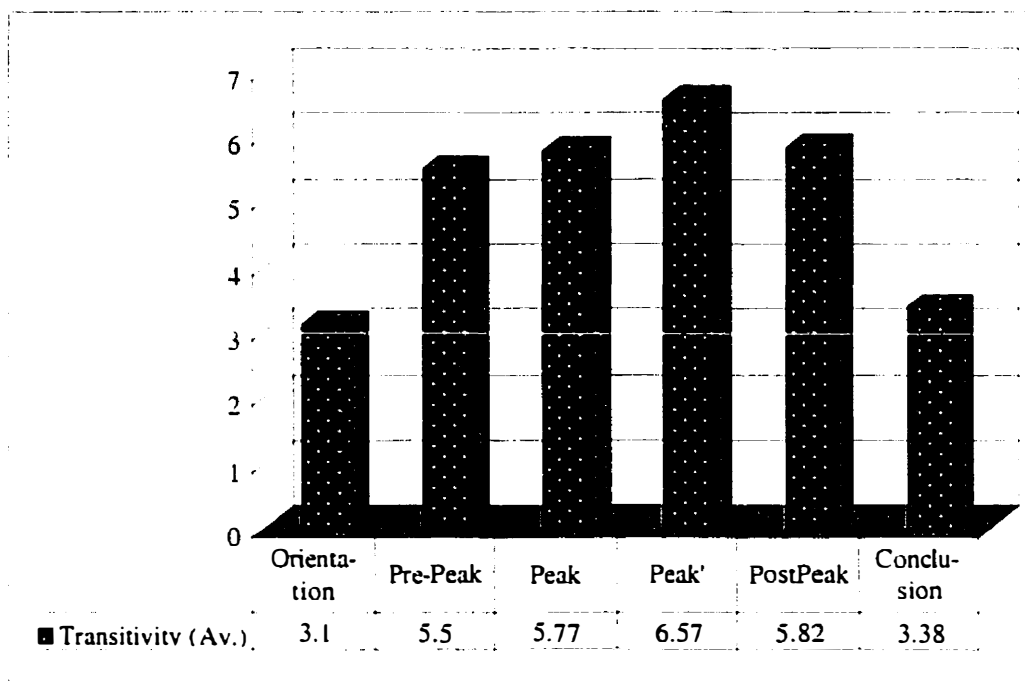


Figure 4.4. Transitivity scores relative to point in the discourse.

4.1.8.3 Multiple clauses

The use of multiple clauses in Bisu folktales would appear to correspond quite directly to the rate at which story's action is taking place. As seen in figure 4.5, the corpus contains no multiple clauses in the orientation stage. By contrast, nearly 15% of pre-peak episode sentences contain multiple clauses. At peak, that figure jumps to 20% of all sentences, with nearly half of all peak' sentences containing multiple clauses.²⁶

²⁶ For purposes of this dissertation, sentences containing serial verbs are not automatically considered "multiclausal." Multiclausal sentences must contain two distinct clauses, either in juxtaposition or connected by one of the devices mentioned in 4.1.6.

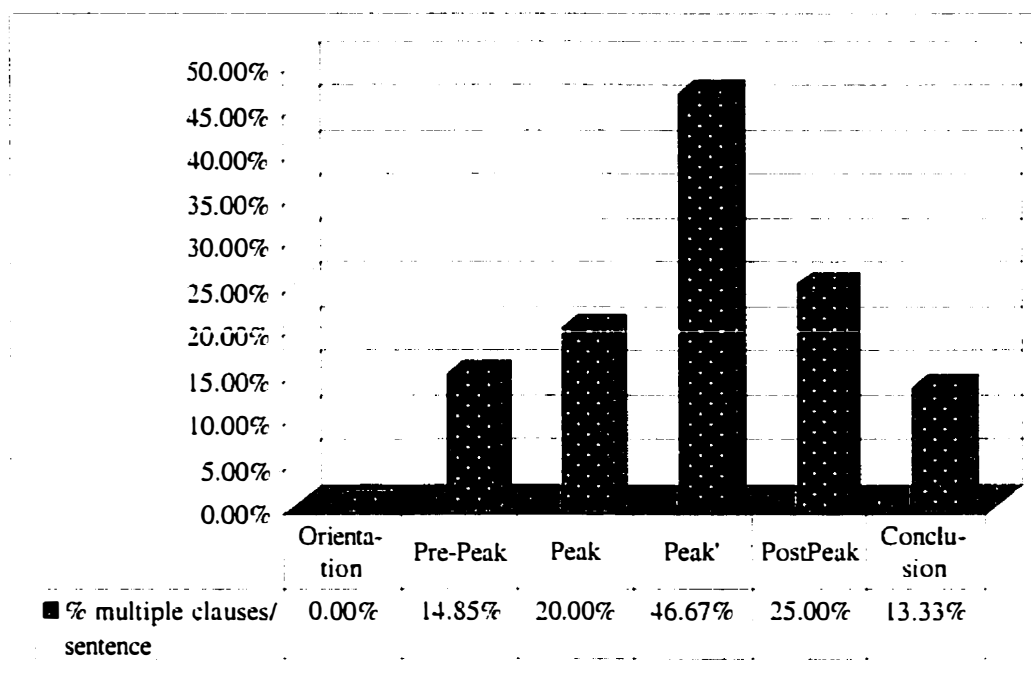


Figure 4.5. Multiple clauses relative to point in the discourse.

It is interesting to compare figures 4.5 and 4.3. While pre-peak episodes contain an average of 1.9 particles per sentence, the highest of all the discourse stages, they contain relatively few multiple clauses. The peak, peak', and post peak stages, by contrast, contain an average of 1.57, 1.60, and 1.58 particles per sentence, but contain many multiclausal sentences.

The implication is that mere presence of more than one clause in a sentence does not indicate that the sentence is likely to have more particles than a monoclausal sentence. In addition, it would appear that Bisu prefers complex sentences in the especially dramatic points in a story. This corresponds to Longacre's contention that sentences may be either dramatically lengthened or shortened at peak and, by implication, peak', which often displays peak-like features (1996: 38, 43).

4.1.8.4 Quote/non-quote material

As shown in figure 4.6, quotations make up a comparable portion of pre-peak episodes, peak, and peak'. This indicates that, while quotations may be utilized to heighten vividness in peak and peak' with a shift to dialogue (Longacre 1996: 42), their mere presence does not indicate peak. It is nonetheless interesting to note quotation formulae are often absent at peak and peak', as will be discussed further in 4.4.12 and 4.4.13.

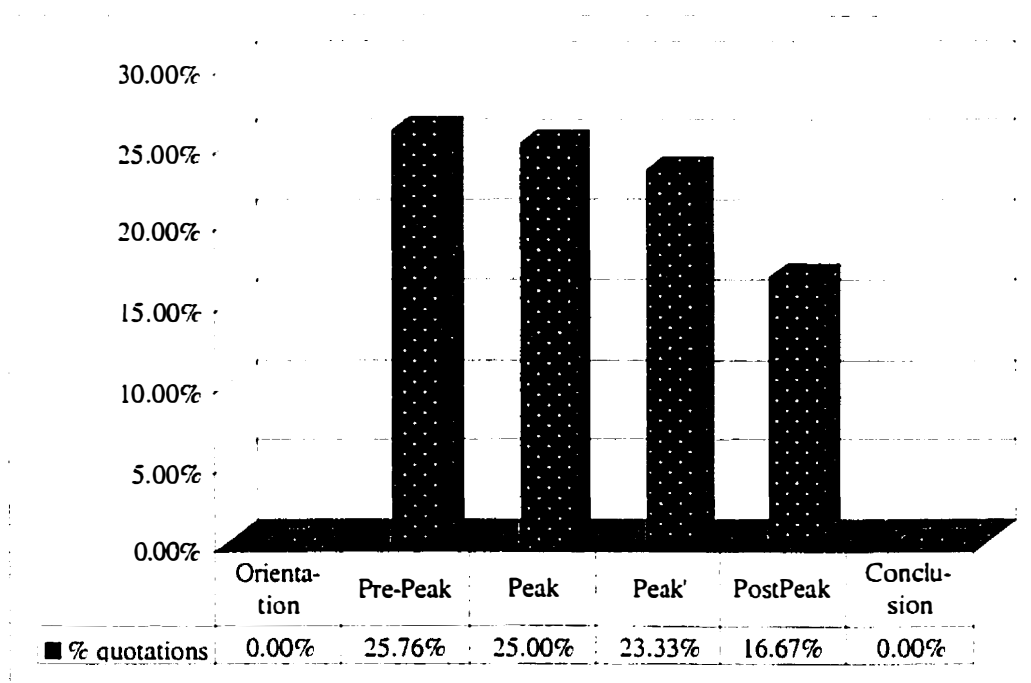


Figure 4.6. Occurrence of quotations relative to point in the discourse.

4.2 The principal particles: $t\int^{hi}$ and $j\hat{e}e$

The two most-frequently used particles in Bisu written folktales are $t\int^{hi}$ (148 occurrences) and $j\hat{e}e$ (171 occurrences). One of these two particles is present

in 36.2% of all sentences in the corpus, 41.1% of all particle-containing sentences, and 49.2% of all particle-containing non-quotation sentences. These particles are often used together, co-occurring as $t\int^{h}iij\grave{e}e$ in 23.4% of all sentences, 26.6% of all particle-containing sentences, and 34.6% of all particle-containing non-quotation sentences in the corpus of written folktales.

These particles see much less use in everyday Bisu conversation than they do in written folktales, with $j\grave{e}e$ being used less frequently than $t\int^{h}iij$. This is reflected in the quotation-containing sentences in the folktales; $t\int^{h}iij$ occurs eleven times in eighty-eight quotations (12.5%), while $j\grave{e}e$ never occurs in a quotation. In addition, on a forty-five sentence grammar questionnaire utilized early in this research, native speaker's usage of these particles differed greatly; one respondent wrote $t\int^{h}iij$ fourteen times and $j\grave{e}e$ seventeen times, while another used $t\int^{h}iij$ nine times and never used $j\grave{e}e$. Beaudouin (1991a: 6), in his otherwise thorough work, classifies $t\int^{h}iij$ as an "aspective particle....for the past," but does not even mention $j\grave{e}e$.²⁷

These facts cry out for an intense investigation into $t\int^{h}iij$ and $j\grave{e}e$ in all their manifestations. The ensuing pages, then, will examine the overall nature of $t\int^{h}iij$ and $j\grave{e}e$, as well as their functions in co-occurrence with one other, in co-occurrence with other particles, and in isolation.

4.2.1 $t\int^{h}iij$ ($t\int^{h}iij \sim t\int^{h}iij \sim t\int^{h}iij$) completive aspect (overall)

$t\int^{h}iij$ is one of the most frequently used particles in Bisu written folktales. Its 148 occurrences encompass 38.5% of all sentences in the corpus and 43.8% of all

²⁷ Similarly Xu (1998, 1999) does not list anything corresponding to $j\grave{e}e$ in her treatment of "auxiliary words." She does, however, list $t\phi i$ as a "sentential auxiliary word" indicating a declarative sentence (1999: 58), but does not include it in her list of aspectual markers (several of which have no equivalent in Thai Bisu). On the basis of Xu's analysis and examples, it is difficult to ascertain whether the Chinese Bisu $t\phi i$ and the Thai Bisu $t\int^{h}iij$ are related. This is not surprising; significant dialect differences are readily apparent, especially in the realm of particles and functors, between Chinese and Thai Bisu.

particle-containing sentences. Only $j\grave{e}e$ occurs more often (171 occurrences, 44.53% of total sentences, 50.6% of particle-containing sentences).

$t\int^h i i$ co-occurs with a vast array of other particles. As shown in table 4.6, it most commonly co-occurs with $j\grave{e}e$. So important is $t\int^h i i$ to written folktale sentences that other particles can often be classified in terms of whether they precede or follow $t\int^h i i$ in the particle cluster.

Table 4.6 Particles co-occurring with $tʃ^{hi}$

pre- $tʃ^{hi}$	post- $tʃ^{hi}$	# occur- rences
	x jèe	56
lææ	x jèe	11
luu	x jèe	4
lææpii	x jèe	2
ka?	x jèe	2
laŋka?	x jèe	1
laŋka?lææ	x jèe	1
laalææpii	x jèe	1
lá?	x jèe	1
lá?	x jèe	1
caaj	x jèe	1
	x	25
pii	x	10
lææ	x	7
laa	x	4
	x laa	2
lu	x	2
	x $tʃ^{hajao}$	1
	x $maamaatʃ^{há?}$	1
	x $laamá?$	1
	x $jèecáa$	1
	x $jàaŋ$	1
	x $cáa$	1
	x $tʃ^{hàn}jèe$	1
	x $pannòo$	1
	x $laanè?$	1
luu	x $ŋææ$	1
luu	x	1
laŋkaa	x	1
laa	x	1
k^hu	x	1
kanlææ	x $jàaŋ$	1
ka?	x	1
càj	x	1

Beaudouin's (1991a: 6) suggestion that $t\int^{h}ii$ is an "aspective particle...for the past." is echoed in this dissertation's designation of $t\int^{h}ii$ as an indicator of "completive aspect" Nonetheless, it is important to stress that, in the Bisu aspectual system, it is not necessary to indicate completion on every sentence discussing past events. In fact, the tendency in Bisu conversation is to leave tense-like indications to time phrases (yesterday, tomorrow, next year, etc.). This is in keeping with the typology of many Southeast Asian languages, and Tibeto-Burman languages in particular (Matisoff 1973: 315).

This completive sense, combined with $t\int^{h}ii$'s frequency, has caused this researcher to consider $t\int^{h}ii$ the mainline marker of Bisu written folktales, as discussed below.

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

As mentioned previously, any given sentence in a Bisu written folktale has nearly a 40% chance of containing $t\int^{h}ii$. Nonetheless, the use of $t\int^{h}ii$ is somewhat constrained by the stage of the discourse in which the sentence occurs. That is, there are some points in the discourse in which $t\int^{h}ii$ is more likely to occur than others.

The distributional tendencies of $t\int^{h}ii$ are detailed on the " $t\int^{h}ii$ overall" row of table 4.7. The left portion of the chart indicates the overall number of $t\int^{h}ii$ -containing sentences that also contain indications of time and location. The episode juncture and inciting moment columns note the number of $t\int^{h}ii$ -containing sentences which occur at those noteworthy transitional points, while the remainder of the chart plots the occurrences of $t\int^{h}ii$ in the various stages of the folktales. The "total # of sentences" row indicates the sum of all

sentences in the written folktale corpus for each of the categories, while “% of total” indicates what percentage of all sentences in each category contain $t\int^{hii}$.

Table 4.7. Distribution of $t\int^{hii}$ overall

	Sentence Contents		Discourse Rules		Place in the Discourse					
	Time	Loc	Inciting mom	Episode junct	Orienta-tion	Pre-Peak Ep	Peak	Peak'	Post Peak	Conclu-sion
$t\int^{hii}$ overall	51	22	11	61	0	101	23	17	5	1
total # of sentences	82	35	13	92	26	227	61	30	12	15
% of total	62.20%	62.86%	84.62%	66.30%	0.00%	44.49%	37.70%	56.67%	41.67%	6.67%

From table 4.7. several generalizations can be made. First, $t\int^{hii}$ occurs in more than 60% of all sentences containing time indicators, location indicators, episode junctures, and inciting moments. Inasmuch as all of these elements are highly significant to the development of a discourse, we may conclude that $t\int^{hii}$ is likewise functionally prominent. In addition, it is apparent that the initial and final stage of the discourse, the orientation and the conclusion, suffer from a $t\int^{hii}$ shortage. This is not entirely unexpected, given the nature of these sections and the nature of $t\int^{hii}$; orientation stages tend to describe situations rather than chronicle events, while most events have been completed before a narrator begins his or her concluding remarks. That the pre-peak, peak, peak', and post-peak sections contain a high number of $t\int^{hii}$ -containing sentences is likewise expected.

Table 4.8 sheds additional light on $t\int^{hii}$ usage by examining the number of $t\int^{hii}$ -containing sentences at each stage in relation to the total number of $t\int^{hii}$ occurrences (148). Here we see that the vast majority of actual $t\int^{hii}$ occurrences

come in the pre-peak episodes—again, something that is not unexpected, given the fact that 227 of the 384 (59%) sentences the entire written corpus occur in pre-peak episodes. It is also interesting to again note the great frequency of $t\int^{hii}$ -containing sentences at episode junctures.

Table 4.8. Distribution of $t\int^{hii}$ overall relative to total occurrences of $t\int^{hii}$

	Sentence Contents		Discourse Roles		Place in the Discourse					
	Time	Loc	Inciting mom	Episode junct	Orienta-tion	Pre-Peak Ep	Peak	Peak'	Post Peak	Conclu-sion
$t\int^{hii}$ overall	51	22	11	61	0	101	23	17	5	1
total # $t\int^{hii}$	148	148	148	148	148	148	148	148	148	148
%of total	34.46%	14.86%	7.43%	41.22%	0.00%	68.24%	15.54%	11.49%	3.38%	0.68%

$t\int^{hii}$'s great frequency, coupled with the fact that it tends to occur at points which are highly significant to the overall development of the discourse, has led this researcher to conclude that $t\int^{hii}$ functions as the mainline marker in Bisu written folktales. This contention is supported by example 4.15, which illustrates how a basic abstract of a story, an outline of a story's macrostructure, can be gained by reading all the $t\int^{hii}$ -containing sentences.

(4.15)

AK	2	One day Ai Kham went to trap fish.	$c\grave{a}jt\int^{hii}$
AK	4	(The otter) saw the fish trap.	$t\int^{hii}j\grave{e}e$
AK	5	And then he went in to the fish trap.	$t\int^{hii}j\grave{e}e$
AK	6	(The otter) ate all the fish completely.	$p\grave{i}i$ $t\int^{hii}j\grave{e}e$
AK	11	And then (the rabbit) saw the otter in the trap and then asked the otter.	$t\int^{hii}j\grave{e}e$
AK	22	At that time the otter sucked on the fart of the rabbit (kept it in its mouth).	$t\int^{hii}$ $p\grave{a}nn\grave{o}$
AK	24	(The rabbit) inserted the stick under (the rabbit's) arm and went to hide himself alongside the path.	$t\int^{hii}j\grave{e}e$

AK	26	Ai Kham lifted the trap up and then saw that otter.	læ tʃ ^h iijèe
AK	28	"It stinks and won't be delicious at all."	tʃ ^h iilaa
AK	31	(The rabbit had) the stick inserted (under its arm) and then Ai Kham saw it (and thought that that rabbit was injured, pierced by the stick).	tʃ ^h iijèe
AK	33	(Ai Kham) threw away the otter and then struck at the rabbit.	tʃ ^h iijèe
AK	34	At that time the rabbit threw the stick and immediately ran away.	tʃ ^h ii

CK	2	They went out fishing.	læ tʃ ^h ii
CK	5	And as they were going along like that, then Chengkoi came and grabbed (the husband) and took him away.	tʃ ^h iijèe
CK	7	Chengkoi made him her husband.	tʃ ^h iijèe
CK	11	Chengkoi would lock the door as she left.	tʃ ^h ii tʃ ^h àŋjèe
CK	15	After that, his father wanted to escape and told the child:	tʃ ^h iijèe
CK	18	Then the child released him to go.	làu tʃ ^h iijèe
CK	19	When the child released him he ran away.	tʃ ^h iijèe
CK	21	He went and lay down in a rice field.	tʃ ^h iijèe
CK	22	And then he shook the rice heads over his body.	læ tʃ ^h iijèe
CK	23	After that, when Chengkoi realized what had happened, she ran after him.	tʃ ^h ii
CK	24	Then she saw him.	tʃ ^h iijèe
CK	25	"Ooh! When did my husband die?"	ká?tʃ ^h ii
CK	30	She tickled him and then ordered.	tʃ ^h iijèe
CK	31	"Well, my beloved one has really died."	tʃ ^h iimaamaat ʃ ^h á?
CK	33	After that, she went and got a gong.	tʃ ^h ii
CK	37	When she had told him everything about the rhythm she left.	tʃ ^h iijèe
CK	38	After Chengkoi had left, he ran away.	tʃ ^h ii
CK	39	At his house he went and lived with his wife.	tʃ ^h ii
CK	43	After that, he was rich.	laatʃ ^h ii

Variable group 2: Transitivity

tʃ^hii-containing sentences in this corpus have garnered transitivity ratings ranging between 3 and 10, with an average transitivity score of 6.57. Thus,

$t\int^{h}ii$ -containing sentences are seen to be high in transitivity. The fact that so many $t\int^{h}ii$ -containing sentences rank so high on the transitivity scale is further indication of $t\int^{h}ii$'s completive sense; the ten transitivity factors are definitely weighted in favor of concluded actions.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

Forty-three (29.05%) $t\int^{h}ii$ -containing sentences are multiclausal, compared to seventy-two (18.75%) of all sentences in the folktales. Thus, $t\int^{h}ii$ -containing sentences occur in multiclausal sentences with an above average frequency.

The majority of these involve the conjunction *jao*, as shown in table 4.9:

Table 4.9. Conjunctions utilized in $t\int^{h}ii$ -containing multiclausal sentences

jao	luujao	zerc	caa	laejao	hæŋjè e	jao jaa	laajao
22	6	6	3	3	1	1	1

It is interesting to note that $t\int^{h}ii$ occurs only sentence finally, never following non-final clauses in a multiclausal sentence. This lends additional credence to the contention that Bisu sentence final particles tend to modify the final clause in the sentence.

Variable group 4: Quote/non-quote material

Some 92.67% of $t\int^{h}ii$ -containing sentences are not in quotations, with nine direct and two indirect quotation-containing sentences comprising the 7.43% minority. $t\int^{h}ii$ does not occur in any morals.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non-experiencer

As $t\int^{h}ii$ may occur in both quote and non-quote material, the experiencer/non-experiencer distinction does not apply. That is, $t\int^{h}ii$ may be used by either event participants or non-participants. A superabundance of $t\int^{h}ii$ -containing sentences, however, is indicative of the folktale genre, as is discussed in section 4.4.1.3.4

Summary

This section has portrayed $t\int^{h}ii$ as a completive aspect marker that indicates the mainline of a folktale. $t\int^{h}ii$ -containing sentences are typically high in transitivity, reflecting the completive sense of the events described. While $t\int^{h}ii$ may be used by experiencers or non-experiencers, a large quantity of $t\int^{h}ii$ -containing sentences is indicative of the Bisu folktale genre.

Despite its great frequency, $t\int^{h}ii$ rarely occurs in isolation; in fact, $t\int^{h}ii$ co-occurs with other particles 83% of the time. It thus becomes necessary to evaluate these multi-faceted contexts to assess the validity of the claims made thus far for $t\int^{h}ii$. This will be undertaken in sections 4.2.3, 4.2.4, and 4.2.5.

4.2.2 $j\grave{e}e$ reported event (overall)

$j\grave{e}e$ is the most frequently used particle in Bisu folktales, its 171 occurrences encompassing 44.5% of all sentences in the written folktale corpus and 50.6% of all particle-containing sentences.

Nonetheless, $j\grave{e}e$ occurs relatively infrequently in conversational Bisu, and is similarly rare in life histories and expository texts. This uneven distribution is perhaps the reason why Beaudouin, who does not indicate whether he analyzed any Bisu folktales, does not include $j\grave{e}e$ in his discussion of particles (1991a, 1991b).

Like $t\int^hii, j\grave{e}e$ occurs with a variety of particles. It is interesting to note that there is only one example in the written folktale corpus of a particle following $j\grave{e}e$, as shown in table 4.10:

Table 4.10 Particles co-occurring with *jèe*

	pre-jèe	post-jèe	# occur- rences
tʃ ^h ii	x		42
læætʃ ^h ii	x		21
jaa	x		6
kaal	x		5
kaa2	x		5
pìi tʃ ^h ii	x		5
laatʃ ^h ii	x		4
lùu tʃ ^h ii	x		3
?ææ tʃ ^h ii	x		2
ká?tʃ ^h ii	x		2
lææpitʃ ^h ii	x		2
ææn tʃ ^h ii	x		2
caajtʃ ^h ii	x		1
gaakaa	x		1
gaalææsiŋ	x		1
hææloo	x		1
jao	x		1
ká?tʃ ^h á?	x		1
kaalææn	x		1
tʃ ^h ii			
kaaluulææ	x		1
tookaa			
kanlèutʃ ^h ii	x		1
jàaŋ			
lá?tʃ ^h ii	x		1
laa	x		1
laalææpii	x		1
tʃ ^h ii			
laŋka?lææ	x		1
tʃ ^h ii			
laŋka?tʃ ^h ii	x		1
lèutoo ka?	x		1
luu tʃ ^h ii	x		1
tʃ ^h á?	x		1
tʃ ^h ii	x	cáa	1
tʃ ^h ii tʃ ^h àŋ	x		1
ŋa?	x		1

Several Bisu language assistants have commented that *jèe* indicates that the text is a “retold” story—that is, the narrator was not personally involved in the events related. *jèe* thus reflects a basic evidentiality distinction, one of several Bisu particles which function in this way. The Bisu *jèe* is thus comparable to the Lahu *cê*, as described by Matisoff:

This important [particle] is used to indicate that the preceding material is reported at second-hand. It is encountered especially often in stories or other extended narratives. Some story-tellers use it in almost every sentence....In connected narrative where *cê*, appears very frequently (even ‘automatically’), it has low information value and is usually best left untranslated (1973: 377).

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

Any given sentence in a Bisu written folktale has roughly a 50% chance of containing *jèe*. Nonetheless, the use of *jèe* is somewhat constrained by the stage of the discourse in which the *jèe*-containing sentence occurs.

Table 4.11 shows that *jèe* occurs with great frequency in sentences containing time and location indicators, or comprising episode junctures or inciting moments. The vast majority of orientation stage sentences contain *jèe*, while pre-peak, peak, and peak’ stages exhibit respective reductions in the number of *jèe*-containing sentences.

Table 4.11. Distribution of *jèe* overall

	Sentence Contents		Discourse Roles		Place in the Discourse					
	Time	Loc	Inciting mom	Episode junct	Orientalion	Pre-Peak Ep	Peak	Peak'	Post Peak	Conclusion
<i>jèe</i> overall	43	20	10	46	18	110	26	8	6	3
total # of sentences	82	35	13	92	26	227	61	30	12	15
% of total	52.44%	57.14%	76.92%	50.00%	69.23%	48.46%	42.62%	26.67%	50.00%	20.00%

Table 4.12 indicates that the majority of all *jèe*-containing sentences are found in pre-peak episodes. This is not surprising, given that 59% of all sentences in the folktales are in pre-peak episodes. Table 4.12 is nonetheless useful in providing balance to table 4.11. In table 4.11, for example, we learn that 76.92% of all inciting moment sentences contain *jèe*; in table 4.12, however, we learn that inciting moment sentences only involve 5.85% of the total occurrences of *jèe*. The significance of this distinction will become apparent in ensuing sections.

Table 4.12. Distribution of *jèe* overall relative to total occurrences of *jèe*

	Sentence Contents		Discourse Roles		Place in the Discourse					
	Time	Loc	Inciting mom	Episode junct	Orientalion	Pre-Peak Ep	Peak	Peak'	Post Peak	Conclusion
<i>jèe</i> overall	43	20	10	46	18	110	26	8	6	3
all <i>jèe</i> particles	171	171	171	171	171	171	171	171	171	171
% of total	25.15%	11.70%	5.85%	26.90%	10.53%	64.33%	15.20%	4.68%	3.51%	1.75%

Were all the *jèe*-containing sentences to be extracted from a text, an outline of sort appears, as shown in example set 4.16. Nonetheless, it should be noted that the majority of *jèe*-containing sentences listed in example 4.16 co-occur with *tʃ^hi i*,

a fact which necessitates the examinations of *jèe*-in-isolation and *jèe*-co-occurring with particles other than *tʃ^hi i* to be carried out in sections 4.2.6 and 4.2.7.

(4.16)

AK	4 (The otter) saw the fish trap.	tʃ ^h i i jèe
AK	5 And then he went in to the fish trap.	tʃ ^h i i jèe
AK	6 (The otter) ate all the fish completely.	pì i tʃ ^h i i jèe
AK	7 Then after the (fish) were all gone, he could not get out.	làu tʃ ^h i i jèe?
AK	9 (The rabbit) (was) from the forest	jèe
AK	11 And then (he) saw the otter in the trap and then asked the otter.	tʃ ^h i i jèe
AK	15 The otter was afraid.	jèe
AK	24 (The rabbit) inserted the stick under (the rabbit's) arm and went to hide himself alongside the path.	tʃ ^h i i jèe
AK	26 Ai Kham lifted the trap up and then saw that otter.	làu tʃ ^h i i jèe
AK	30 The rabbit hopped along.	jèe
AK	31 (The rabbit had) the stick inserted (under its arm) and then Ai Kham saw it (and thought that that rabbit was injured, pierced by the stick).	tʃ ^h i i jèe
AK	33 (Ai Kham) threw away the otter and then struck at the rabbit.	tʃ ^h i i jèe

CK	1 There was a husband and wife.	jèe
CK	3 When they caught a punlung fish, they said it was a catfish.	jèe
CK	4 And when they got a catfish, they said it was a punlung fish.	jèe
CK	5 And as they were going along like that, then Chengkoi came and grabbed (the husband) and took him away.	tʃ ^h i i jèe
CK	7 Chengkoi made him her husband.	tʃ ^h i i jèe
CK	8 They had one child.	jèe
CK	11 Chengkoi would lock the door as she left.	tʃ ^h i i tʃ ^h àŋ jèe
CK	12 After a while, his child did the same.	jèe
CK	15 After that, his father wanted to escape and told the child:	tʃ ^h i i jèe
CK	18 Then the child released him to go.	làu tʃ ^h i i jèe
CK	19 When the child released him he ran away.	tʃ ^h i i jèe
CK	20 But he did not make it to his house.	jèe
CK	21 He went and lay down in a rice field.	tʃ ^h i i jèe
CK	22 And then he shook the rice heads over his body.	làu tʃ ^h i i jèe

CK	24	Then she saw him.	tʃ ^h iijèe
CK	28	And then she tickled him.	jèe
CK	29	But he did not laugh.	laajèe
CK	30	She tickled him and then ordered.	tʃ ^h iijèe
CK	37	When she had told him everything about the rhythm she left.	tʃ ^h iijèe
CK	40	Then he struck the gong.	jèe

Variable group 2: Transitivity

The transitivity scores for *jèe*-containing sentences range from 0 to 10, with an average of 5.5. This would seem to indicate a correlation between the use of *jèe* and relatively high transitivity. Nonetheless, some incongruities arise. Why, for example, would a particle with an allegedly high transitivity occur in 69.23% of all orientation stage sentences, given that orientations do not feature actions and are thus very low in transitivity? The question must also be asked of whether *jèe*'s high average transitivity is related to the particles with which it co-occurs—and to the highly transitive *tʃ^hii* in particular. These issues will be addressed in sections 4.2.6 and 4.2.7.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

Only twenty-nine of the 171 (16.96%) *jèe*-containing sentences involve more than one clause, compared with seventy-two (18.75%) of sentences overall. These are generally linked with *jao*, as shown in table 4.13:

Table 4.13. Conjunctions utilized in *jèe*-containing multiclausal sentences

jao	luujao	caa	zero	laejao	laajao
14	4	4	4	2	1

Variable group 4: Quote/non-quote material

Throughout the corpus, *jèe* never occurs in direct quotations, although it occurs four times in sentences that might be considered indirect quotations. Two of these cases involve summaries of a language game, while the two others are involved in proverbs attributed to past generations of elders.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non-experiencer

As mentioned previously, the presence of *jèe* indicates that the narrator was not involved in the events he or she is reporting. The lack of any *jèe*-containing sentences in quotations further underscores the fact that *jèe*-containing sentences reflect information that is not first hand to the speaker.

Summary

This section has yielded as many questions about *jèe* as it has answers. While the status of *jèe* as the most frequently-occurring particle in Bisu written folktales remains unchallenged, and the relation of *jèe* to information that is somewhat removed from the speaker's experience has been clearly established, any connection between *jèe* and transitivity is as yet unclear. This relates to a larger question, that of how *jèe* (and other particles) interact with other members of particular clusters. It thus becomes necessary to further dissect the co-occurrence of *jèe*, *tʃ^hii*, and other particles, as is undertaken in the next several sections.

4.2.3 $t\int^{hii}$ co-occurring with particles excluding $j\grave{e}e$

$t\int^{hii}$ occurs in combination with particles other than $j\grave{e}e$ some thirty-three times, accounting for 22.3% of the 148 $t\int^{hii}$ -containing sentences.

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

As shown in table 4.14, non- $j\grave{e}e$ -containing- $t\int^{hii}$ -containing clusters account for a relatively small number of occurrences. Nonetheless, it is interesting to note that 22.86% of location-indicating sentences feature non- $j\grave{e}e$ -containing- $t\int^{hii}$ -containing clusters.

Table 4.14. Distribution of non- $j\grave{e}e$ -containing $t\int^{hii}$ -containing clusters

	Sentence Contents		Discourse Roles		Place in the Discourse					
	Time	Loc	Inciting mom	Episode junct	Orienta-tion	Pre-Peak Ep	Peak	Peak'	Post Peak	Conclu-sion
$t\int^{hii}$ co w/o $j\grave{e}e$	11	8	1	13	0	24	6	2	0	1
total # of sentences	82	35	13	92	26	227	61	30	12	15
%of total	13.41%	22.86%	7.69%	14.13%	0.00%	10.57%	9.84%	6.67%	0.00%	6.67%

Table 4.15 demonstrates that non- $j\grave{e}e$ -containing- $t\int^{hii}$ -containing clusters are most likely to make up a significant portion of the total $t\int^{hii}$ inventory at episode junctures, as well as in pre-peak episodes and at peak. Thereafter, usage decreases dramatically, at the same time when $t\int^{hii}$ -in-isolation occurrences increase (see section 4.24).

Table 4.15. Distribution of non-*jèe*-containing *tʃ^hii*-containing clusters relative to *tʃ^hii* overall

	Sentence Contents		Discourse Roles		Place in the Discourse					
	Time	Loc	Inciting mom	Episode junct	Orienta-tion	Pre-Peak Ep	Peak	Peak'	Post Peak	Conclu-sion
<i>tʃ^hii</i> co w/o <i>jèe</i>	11	8	1	13	0	24	6	2	0	1
<i>tʃ^hii</i> overall	51	22	10	61	0	100	23	17	5	1
%of total	21.57%	36.36%	10.00%	21.31%	0.00%	24.00%	26.09%	11.76%	0.00%	100%

Example 4.17 contains all the non-*jèe*-containing *tʃ^hii*-containing particle clusters in two folktales. When compared with example 4.15, it becomes evident that non-*jèe*-containing-*tʃ^hii*-containing particle clusters occur relatively infrequently, and that no meaningful story abstract can be outlined through their extraction.

(4.17)

AK	2	One day Ai Kham went to trap fish.	<i>càjtʃ^hii</i>
AK	22	At that time the otter sucked on the fart of the <i>tʃ^hii</i> rabbit (kept it in its mouth).	<i>pannòò</i>
AK	28	"It stinks and won't be delicious at all."	<i>tʃ^hiilaa</i>

CK	2	They went out fishing.	<i>læætʃ^hii</i>
CK	25	"Ooh! When did my husband die?"	<i>káʔtʃ^hii</i>
CK	31	"Well, my beloved one has really died."	<i>tʃ^hiimaamaa</i> <i>tʃ^háʔ</i>
CK	43	After that, he was rich.	<i>laatʃ^hii</i>

Variable group 2: Transitivity

The transitivity scores for non-*jèe*-containing *tʃ^hii*-containing clusters range from 3 to 10, with an average of 6.77. In posting this relatively high average, non-*jèe*-containing-*tʃ^hii*-containing clusters are comparable to other manifestations of *tʃ^hii*.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

Of the thirty-three non-*jèe*-containing-*tʃ^hii*-containing clusters, eight (24.24%) involve more than one clause. Half of these are joined by *jao*.

Variable group 4: Quote/non-quote material

Eleven of the thirty-three (33.33%) non-*jèe*-containing-*tʃ^hii*-containing particle clusters occur in quotations. Of the eleven *tʃ^hii*-containing direct quotations, nine (81.82%) do not involve *jèe*. From this, a generalization might be drawn to the effect that, in quotations, *tʃ^hii* generally co-occurs with other particles. *tʃ^hii*-in-isolation is found in only two quotations, while *tʃ^hiijèe*, by definition, cannot occur in quotations.

Non-*jèe*-containing-*tʃ^hii*-containing particle clusters do not occur in morals.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non-experiencer

As is the case with all manifestations of *tʃ^hii*, all non-*jèe*-containing-*tʃ^hii*-containing clusters may be used by either experiencers or non-experiencers.

Summary

When $t\int^{hii}$ co-occurs with other particles, $j\grave{e}e$ is most often involved. The relatively few non- $j\grave{e}e$ -containing $t\int^{hii}$ -containing particle clusters are most likely to occur in pre-peak episodes and at peak, often inside quotations. They pattern similarly to $t\int^{hii}$ -overall in manifesting high transitivity and seeing relatively frequent use in multiclausal sentences.

4.2.4 $t\int^{hii}$ in isolation

$t\int^{hii}$ is found in isolation twenty-five times, accounting for 16.89% of all $t\int^{hii}$ -containing sentences, 6.51% of all 384 sentences in the written corpus, and 7.40% of all 338 particle-containing sentences.

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

$t\int^{hii}$ can occur in isolation in virtually the same situations and stages in which other manifestations of $t\int^{hii}$ are found. Nonetheless, $t\int^{hii}$ in isolation occurs with greatest frequency after peak, in 30% of peak' sentences and 16.67% of post peak episode sentences, as shown in table 4.16:

Table 4.16. Distribution of $t\int^{hii}$ -in-isolation

	Sentence Contents		Discourse Roles		Place in the Discourse					
	Time	Loc	Inciting mom	Episode junct	Orienta-tion	Pre-Peak Ep	Peak	Peak'	Post Peak	Conclu-sion
$t\int^{hii}$ in isolation	12	2	1	12	0	10	4	9	2	0
total # of sentences	82	35	13	92	26	227	61	30	12	15
%of total	14.63%	5.71%	7.69%	13.04%	0.00%	4.41%	6.56%	30.00%	16.67%	0.00%

The importance of this distribution is amplified in table 4.17, which demonstrates that 52.94% of all $t\int^{hii}$ -containing sentences at peak', and 40% of $t\int^{hii}$ -containing sentences in post-peak episodes, feature $t\int^{hii}$ in isolation. In addition, $t\int^{hii}$ -in-isolation occurs in only 9% of all pre-peak $t\int^{hii}$ -containing sentences, but in 17.39% of all peak $t\int^{hii}$ -containing sentences. The implication is that, as the pace of action heightens at and following peak, $t\int^{hii}$ becomes more apt to appear in isolation.

Table 4.17. Distribution of $t\int^{hii}$ -in-isolation relative to $t\int^{hii}$ overall

	Sentence Contents		Discourse Roles		Place in the Discourse					
	Time	Loc	Inciting mom	Episode junct	Orienta-tion	Pre-Peak Ep	Peak	Peak'	Post Peak	Conclu-sion
$t\int^{hii}$ in isolation	12	2	1	12	0	10	4	9	2	0
$t\int^{hii}$ overall	51	22	11	61	0	101	23	17	5	1
%of total $t\int^{hii}$	23.53%	9.09%	9.09%	19.67%	0.00%	9.90%	17.39%	52.94%	40.00%	0.00%

Example 4.18 extracts all the $t\int^{hii}$ -in-isolation-containing sentences from two written folktales. As was the case with non- $j\grave{e}e$ -containing $t\int^{hii}$ -containing sentences, the abstract of a story would not be recoverable from $t\int^{hii}$ -in-isolation-containing sentences alone:

(4.18)

AK	34	At that time the rabbit threw the stick and $t\int^{hii}$ immediately ran away.
----	----	---

CK	23	After that, when Chengkoi realized what had $t\int^{hii}$ happened, she ran after him.
----	----	--

CK	33	After that, she went and got a gong. $t\int^{hii}$
----	----	--

CK	38 After Chengkoi had left, he ran away.	$t\int^{h}ii$
CK	39 At his house he went and lived with his wife.	$t\int^{h}ii$

Variable group 2: Transitivity

$t\int^{h}ii$ -in-isolation-containing sentences post transitivity scores ranging from 0 to 10, with an average of 6.16. This relatively high transitivity composite corresponds with the 6.57 average for $t\int^{h}ii$ overall.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

Ten of the twenty-five (40%) $t\int^{h}ii$ -in-isolation-containing sentences involve more than one clause, typically joined by *jao*.

Variable group 4: Quote/non-quote material

An overwhelming twenty-three of twenty-five (92%) $t\int^{h}ii$ -in-isolation occurrences are found in non-quote material. The two occurrences within quotations are in keeping with the conversational usage of $t\int^{h}ii$ in explicitly indicating that the action has truly been completed.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non-experiencer

As $t\int^{h}ii$ may occur in both quote and non-quote material, the experiencer/non-experiencer distinction does not apply. This contention is supported by language assistant intuition. Thus, $t\int^{h}ii$ may be used by both event participants and non-participants.

Summary

$t\int^{h}ii$ -in-isolation exhibits many features in common with other manifestations of $t\int^{h}ii$, including high transitivity and quote/non-quote flexibility.

Nonetheless, $t\int^{h}ii$ -in-isolation is seen to occur most frequently following the peak of a discourse. This may be related to the phenomenon observed in many languages of shortening syntactic units to heighten drama (Longacre 1996: 43). $t\int^{h}ii$ -in-isolation may be used by experiencers and non-experiencers alike.

4.2.5 $t\int^{h}ii$ $j\grave{e}e$ co-occurrence

$t\int^{h}ii$ and $j\grave{e}e$ co-occur in 23.4% of all sentences, 26.6% of all particle-containing sentences in the folktale corpus. No other particles co-occur nearly as frequently. Indeed, no other single particle occurs nearly as often as $t\int^{h}ii$ and $j\grave{e}e$ co-occur. In addition, no other elements are permitted to come between $t\int^{h}ii$ and $j\grave{e}e$ in the particle cluster.

As detailed elsewhere, $t\int^{h}ii$ bears a sense of completion while $j\grave{e}e$ indicates that the narrator is reporting events in which he or she did not participate. Nonetheless, their consistent co-occurrence raises the question of whether the two together form a unit greater than the sum of its parts.

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

$t\int^{h}iij\grave{e}e$ is never found in the opening sentences of a discourse. As shown in table 4.18, the first occurrence of $t\int^{h}iij\grave{e}e$ in nine of the thirteen written folktales is in the inciting moment—that point of the discourse in which the action begins. Indeed, roughly 70% of all inciting moment sentences contain $t\int^{h}iij\grave{e}e$. $t\int^{h}iij\grave{e}e$ is used in every third sentence throughout the pre-peak episodes, every fifth sentence through peak and peak', and every fourth sentence through post-peak episodes. $t\int^{h}iij\grave{e}e$ occurs frequently at episode junctures, often adjacent to time and location indicators. Just as $t\int^{h}iij\grave{e}e$ never occurs in the orientation stage, it never occurs in a conclusion (a designation which includes story morals).

Table 4.18. Distribution of *tʃ^hiijèe*

	Sentence Contents		Discourse Roles		Place in the Discourse					
	Time	Loc	Inciting mom	Episode junct	Orienta-tion	Pre-Peak Ep	Peak	Peak'	Post Peak	Conclu-sion
<i>tʃ^hiijèe</i>	28	12	9	36	0	68	13	6	3	0
total # of sentences	82	35	13	92	26	227	61	30	12	15
percent of total	34.15%	34.29%	69.23%	39.13%	0.00%	29.96%	21.31%	20.00%	25.00%	0.00%

Table 4.19 amplifies the generalizations of table 4.18 by comparing the number of *tʃ^hiijèe*-containing sentences at each point in the discourse to the total number of *tʃ^hiijèe* occurrences. Some 40% of all *tʃ^hiijèe*-containing sentences are seen to occur at episode junctures, most of these occurring in the 75% of *tʃ^hiijèe*-containing sentences that are found in pre-peak episodes. Only a small percentage of all *tʃ^hiijèe*-containing sentences are found at and following peak.

Table 4.19. Distribution of *tʃ^hiijèe* relative to total occurrences of *tʃ^hiijèe*

	Sentence Contents		Discourse Roles		Place in the Discourse					
	Time	Loc	Inciting mom	Episode junct	Orienta-tion	Pre-Peak Ep	Peak	Peak'	Post Peak	Conclu-sion
<i>tʃ^hiijèe</i>	28	12	9	36	0	68	13	6	3	0
total # <i>tʃ^hiijèe</i>	90	90	90	90	90	90	90	90	90	90
% of <i>tʃ^hii</i> overall	31.11%	13.33%	10.00%	40.00%	0.00%	75.56%	14.44%	6.67%	3.33%	0.00%

A reasonable abstract of a folktale may be extracted based on *tʃ^hiijèe*-containing sentences. Nonetheless, upon comparing examples 4.15 and

4.19, it becomes evident that a compilation of all $t\int^{hi}$ -containing sentences provides a clearer developmental skeleton of a story:

(4.19)

AK	4 (The otter) saw the fish trap.	$t\int^{hi}j\grave{e}e$
AK	5 And then he went in to the fish trap.	$t\int^{hi}j\grave{e}e$
AK	6 (The otter) ate all the fish completely.	$piit\int^{hi}j\grave{e}e$
AK	11 And then (the rabbit) saw the otter in the trap and then asked the otter,	$t\int^{hi}j\grave{e}e$
AK	24 (The rabbit) inserted the stick under (the rabbit's) arm and went to hide himself alongside the path.	$t\int^{hi}j\grave{e}e$
AK	26 Ai Kham lifted the trap up and then saw that otter.	$l\grave{a}et\int^{hi}j\grave{e}e$
AK	31 (The rabbit had) the stick inserted (under its arm) and then Ai Kham saw it	$t\int^{hi}j\grave{e}e$
AK	33 (Ai Kham) threw away the otter and then struck at the rabbit.	$t\int^{hi}j\grave{e}e$

CK	5 And as they were going along like that, then Chengkoi came and grabbed (the husband) and took him away.	$t\int^{hi}j\grave{e}e$
CK	7 Chengkoi made him her husband.	$t\int^{hi}j\grave{e}e$
CK	11 Chengkoi would lock the door as she left.	$t\int^{hi}$ $t\int^{h\grave{a}n}j\grave{e}e$
CK	15 After that, his father wanted to escape and told the child:	$t\int^{hi}j\grave{e}e$
CK	18 Then the child released him to go.	$l\grave{u}ut\int^{hi}j\grave{e}e$
CK	19 When the child released him he ran away.	$t\int^{hi}j\grave{e}e$
CK	21 He went and lay down in a rice field.	$t\int^{hi}j\grave{e}e$
CK	22 And then he shook the rice heads over his body.	$l\grave{a}et\int^{hi}j\grave{e}e$
CK	24 Then she saw him.	$t\int^{hi}j\grave{e}e$
CK	30 She tickled him and then ordered.	$t\int^{hi}j\grave{e}e$
CK	37 When she had told him everything about the rhythm she left.	$t\int^{hi}j\grave{e}e$

Variable group 2: Transitivity

$t\int^{hii}j\grave{e}e$ -containing sentences post transitivity scores ranging from 2 to 10, with an average of 6.48. This is similar to the transitivity scores posted for $t\int^{hii}$ overall and $t\int^{hii}$ -in isolation: 6.57 and 6.16, respectively.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

Twenty-five $t\int^{hii}j\grave{e}e$ -containing sentences (27.78%) involve more than one clause. These are generally joined by *jao*.

Variable group 4: Quote/non-quote material

$t\int^{hii}j\grave{e}e$ -containing sentences never occur inside quotations, although there are two quotation-containing sentences which utilize $t\int^{hii}j\grave{e}e$ after the close of a quotation. Similarly, $t\int^{hii}j\grave{e}e$ -containing sentences are never found in morals. These limitations are related to *j\grave{e}e*'s role as indicator of the narrator's non-participant status.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non-experiencer

While $t\int^{hii}$ may be used by experiencers or non-experiencers, *j\grave{e}e* cannot. $t\int^{hii}j\grave{e}e$, then, may only be used by non-experiencers.

Summary

The co-occurrence of $t\int^{hii}$ and *j\grave{e}e* brings together a sense of completion and indication of the narrator's non-participant status. The great frequency with which the two co-occur is indicative of the Bisu folktale genre. That is, any Bisu text of even moderate length would immediately be judged a folktale if $t\int^{hii}j\grave{e}e$ -containing sentences were present. The fact that $t\int^{hii}$ and *j\grave{e}e* are most likely to co-occur in pre-peak episodes, and less likely to co-occur at and

following peak, is indicative of the way in which the notional structure of a discourse may affect sentence level usage.

4.2.6 *jèe* in isolation

Some fifty-six (32.75%) of the 171 occurrences (32.75%) of *jèe* in the folktale corpus are in isolation. Thus, *jèe* is twice more likely to be used in isolation than *tʃ^hii*, which occurs in isolation 16.89% of the time.

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

jèe-in-isolation-containing sentences may be found throughout any given folktale. *jèe*-in-isolation is particularly favored at orientation, present in more than half of the orientation sentences. *jèe*-in-isolation-containing sentences do not occur with much frequency elsewhere in the folktales.

Table 4.20. Distribution of *jèe*-in-isolation

	Sentence Contents		Discourse Roles		Place in the Discourse					
	Time	Loc	Inciting mom	Episode junct	Orienta-tion	Pre-Peak Ep	Peak	Peak'	Post Peak	Conclu-sion
<i>jèe</i> in isolation	10	5	1	7	15	28	8	1	2	2
total # of sentences	82	35	13	92	26	227	61	30	12	15
%of total	12.20%	14.29%	7.69%	7.61%	57.69%	12.33%	13.11%	3.33%	16.67%	13.33%

Table 4.21 further highlights the use of *jèe*-in-isolation-containing sentences in the orientation stage, where *jèe*-in-isolation appears much more frequently than any *jèe*-in-co-occurrence sentences. The remaining stages of the discourse reflect a substantial but by no means overwhelming use of *jèe*-in-isolation.

Table 4.21. Distribution of *jèe*-in-isolation relative to *jèe* overall

	Sentence Contents		Discourse Roles		Place in the Discourse					
	Time	Loc	Inciting mom	Episode junct	Orienta-tion	Pre-Peak Ep	Peak	Peak'	Post Peak	Conclu-sion
<i>jèe</i> in isolation	10	5	1	7	15	28	8	1	2	2
<i>jèe</i> overall	43	20	10	46	18	110	26	8	6	3
% of total	23.26%	25.00%	10.00%	15.22%	83.33%	25.45%	30.77%	12.50%	33.33%	66.67%

jèe-in-isolation's distributional tendencies are evident in the extracted sentences in example 4.20. These sentences show that *jèe*-in-isolation is used primarily when describing characters and situations, and is not helpful in recovering the abstract of a story.

(4.20)

AK	9	(The rabbit) (was) from the forest	<i>jèe</i>
AK	15	The otter was afraid.	<i>jèe</i>
AK	30	The rabbit hopped along.	<i>jèe</i>

CK	1	There was a husband and wife.	<i>jèe</i>
CK	3	When they caught a punglung fish, they said it was a catfish.	<i>jèe</i>
CK	4	And when they got a catfish, they said it was a punglung fish.	<i>jèe</i>
CK	8	They had one child.	<i>jèe</i>
CK	12	After a while, his child did the same.	<i>jèe</i>
CK	20	But he did not make it to his house.	<i>jèe</i>
CK	28	And then she tickled him.	<i>jèe</i>
CK	40	Then he struck the gong.	<i>jèe</i>

Variable group 2: Transitivity

Whereas the overall transitivity scores for *jèe*-containing sentences ranged from 0 to 10 with an average of 5.15, scores for *jèe*-in-isolation-containing sentences range from 0 to 9 with an average of 3.57. This indicates that the high transitivity average stated in section 4.2.2 may be related more to the particles with

which *jèe* was co-occurring. Sections 4.2.7 and 4.2.8 will carry this line of investigation further.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

Some fifty-four (96.43%) of all *jèe*-in-isolation-containing sentences are monoclausal, compared to 142 (83.04%) of all *jèe*-containing sentences and 312 (81.25%) of all sentences in the folktales.

The two multiclausal *jèe*-in-isolation-containing sentences, joined by *jao*, are somewhat unique in that they involve indirect quotations, as discussed in the quote/non-quote section below.

Variable group 4: Quote/non-quote material

jèe-in-isolation occurs four times in sentences that could be considered indirect quotations. Two of these cases involve summaries of a language game, while the two others contain proverbs attributed to past generations of elders.

The remaining *jèe*-in-isolation-containing sentences encompass strictly non-quote material. *jèe*-in-isolation is not found in any morals.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non-experiencer

The examination of *jèe*-in-isolation-containing sentences has not yielded any information that would modify or contradict earlier statements on the evidential nature of this particle.

Summary

This examination of *jèe*-in-isolation has yielded important information. First, it is quite apparent that the distributional patterns of *jèe*-in-isolation-containing sentences are different from those of *jèe* overall. *jèe*-in-isolation-containing

sentences occur most frequently in the orientation section, while the *jèe* overall displays limited use in orientation stages, and more frequent usage in pre-peak, peak, and postpeak sections. In addition, it is evident that the high transitivity scores for *jèe* overall were not reflective of the base implications of *jèe* usage. Additional work in teasing out the relationship between *jèe* and its co-occurring particles is thus required. This will be undertaken in section 4.2.7.

4.2.7 *jèe* co-occurring with particles excluding *tʃ^hii*

jèe occurs in combination with particles other than *tʃ^hii* twenty-four times, accounting for 14.03% of the 171 all *jèe*-containing sentences, 6.25% of all 384 sentences in the written corpus, 7.10% of all 338 particle-containing sentences.

The question to be posited in this section is one of whether non-*tʃ^hii*-containing-*jèe*-containing clusters behave differently than *tʃ^hiijèe*.

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

tʃ^hii-less occurrences of *jèe*-containing particle clusters are most likely to occur in the orientation stage, and to a lesser extent, at peak, as shown in table 4.22:

Table 4.22. Distribution of of $t\int^{hii}$ -less $j\grave{e}e$ particle clusters

	Sentence Contents		Discourse Roles		Place in the Discourse					
	Time	Loc	Inciting mom	Episode junct	Orientalion	Pre-Peak Ep	Peak	Peak'	Post Peak	Conclusion
$j\grave{e}e$ w/o $t\int^{hii}$ co	5	2	0	3	3	13	5	1	1	1
total # of sentences	82	35	13	92	26	227	61	30	12	15
% of total	6.10%	5.71%	0.00%	3.26%	11.54%	5.73%	8.20%	3.33%	8.33%	6.67%

While the relatively small number of $t\int^{hii}$ -less $j\grave{e}e$ clusters makes reliable generalizations difficult, table 4.23 demonstrates that $j\grave{e}e$ is most likely to appear in $t\int^{hii}$ -less clusters in the orientation stage and at peak. That $j\grave{e}e$ appears without $t\int^{hii}$ in the orientation stage is not surprising; $t\int^{hii}$ never occurs in orientations. Nonetheless, the frequency of $t\int^{hii}$ -less $j\grave{e}e$ clusters at peak is interesting, given the fact that $t\int^{hii}$ also appears quite frequently at peak. Further investigation of the context, however, reveals that two of those five $t\int^{hii}$ -less $j\grave{e}e$ clusters at peak refer to negative events (things which did not happen) that significantly affect the outcome of the story, while the remaining three describe states or attributes which are likewise key to textual development.

Table 4.23. Distribution of of *tʃ^hii*-less *jèe* particle clusters relative to *jèe* overall

	Sentence Contents		Discourse Roles		Place in the Discourse					
	Time	Loc	Inciting mom	Episode junct	Orienta-tion	Pre-Peak Ep	Peak	Peak'	Post Peak	Conclu-sion
<i>jèe</i> w/o <i>tʃ^hii</i> co	5	2	0	3	3	13	5	1	1	1
<i>jèe</i> overall	43	20	10	46	18	110	26	8	6	3
% of total	11.63%	10.00%	0.00%	6.52%	16.67%	11.82%	19.23%	12.50%	16.67%	33.33%

All *tʃ^hii*-less *jèe* clusters in four folktales are extracted in example 4.21. Once again, the abstracts of the respective stories are not recoverable from this assortment of sentences. In addition, it is likely that *tʃ^hii* would have been used in AK 14 and CK 58 had the events been actualized (i.e., the otter was able to get out, or the husband had laughed). The examples from “The Cruel Widower” and “The Mischievous Boy” highlight the usage of *tʃ^hii*-less *jèe* clusters to describe durative states/attributes.

(4.21)

AK	7	Then after the (fish) were all gone, he could not <i>làu tɔo</i> get out.	<i>kaʔjèe</i>
CK	29	But he did not laugh.	<i>laajèe</i>
CW	4	They lived together without quarrelling or fighting.	<i>kaajèe</i>
CW	6	Then the child and father lived together for a long time.	<i>káʔtʃ^háʔjèe</i>
CW	7	The father and child lived together for many years.	<i>jáʔjèe</i>
CW	8	At this time, the father wanted a new wife.	<i>gaalæsiŋ</i> <i>jèe</i>
CW	23	(But) his child was already dead.	<i>tʃ^háʔjèe</i>
MB	4	(The child) was not willing to do any work at all.	<i>kaajèe</i>

MB	23	It was completely covered in blood.	ηa?jèe
MB	31	He helped with the work.	jaojèe
MB	32	Since that time, the father and mother did not scold (him) again.	kanjèe

Variable group 2: Transitivity

tʃ^hii-less *jèe* cluster-containing sentences post transitivity scores ranging from 0 to 6, with an average of 3.21. This is congruent with sentences containing *jèe* in isolation, which average 3.57. This also demonstrates that the average transitivity score of 5.15 for *jèe* overall is somewhat deceiving, doubtlessly skewed by the 6.48 transitivity average posted by *tʃ^hiijèe*.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

One *tʃ^hii*-less *jèe* cluster-containing sentence contains two clauses, these being joined by *caa* 'then'.

Variable group 4: Quote/non-quote material

In co-occurrence with particles excluding *tʃ^hii*, *jèe* occurs only in non-quotation sentences.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non-experiencer

tʃ^hii-less *jèe* cluster-containing sentences may only be uttered by non-experiencers.

Summary

tʃ^hii-less *jèe* cluster-containing sentences exhibit many of the same characteristics as other manifestations of *jèe*, including low transitivity, a tendency to occur with greatest frequency in areas of little action (such as the orientation stage), and a prohibition against usage by experiencers.

4.2.8 The argument from absence: where and why do $tʃ^{hii}$ or $jèe$ not occur?

The preceding sections have detailed how $tʃ^{hii}$ and $jèe$ are used in Bisu written folktales. Nonetheless, the question remains of how they are not used; that is, why do only 41.12% of all particle-containing sentences involve either $tʃ^{hii}$ or $jèe$? What of the remaining sentences?

When quotations, story morals, and story titles are removed from consideration, there remain forty-one particle-containing sentences that involve neither $tʃ^{hii}$ nor $jèe$. These forty-one sentences involve a relatively small number of particles, as shown in example set 4.22:

(4.22)

AK	16 (The otter) told the rabbit:	$páʔnóó$
AK	19 The rabbit said:	$lùu paanóó$
AK	21 The otter opened its mouth and then the rabbit farted into the otter's mouth.	$píi paanóó$
AK	25 Ai Kham woke up and went to look at the fish trap	$paanóó$
AK	29 After that the rabbit came walking out.	$paanóó$
DB	13 Mr Paw shouted and said again:	$lǎəpaanóó$
DB	15 At that point, Uncle Kaew the owner of the house heard and suddenly yelled out:	$laapaanóó$
DB	17 Mr. Khiew and Mr. Paw heard and were shocked and fled in different directions.	$paanóó$
DB	20 Under the house, Mr. Paw stepped on an implement which flipped up and struck his forehead.	$lǎəpaanóó$
ST	7 Immediately both swans flew across the field.	$ʔǎə paanóó$
ST	10 Then the turtle heard it and said:	$lùu paanóó$
ST	15 The turtle fell down into the mouth of a water buffalo.	$paanóó$
ST	16 All the water buffalo's teeth fell out.	$paanóó$
AK	23 At that time the rabbit got a stick that was a forearm's length.	$ŋǎə$
CK	10 But really she would go for a very long time.	$ŋǎə$
CK	14 and then went for a short time.	$ŋǎə$
FM	12 Every single day, he would feed his mother rice and give her water to drink and clean her dung and urine for her.	$píi ŋǎʔ$

FM	13	This story tells the children causing (them) to know.	læ piij ŋæ
FM	14	In the past, people said:	ŋæ
OR	3	They had two children	ŋæ
FS	5	This caused (them) to become even poorer.	ŋæ
TD	3	Every time he would wait to eat the flock of deer.	laaŋŋæ
TS	27	The Mother Turtle was very angry.	ŋæ
MB	13	It was very large.	ŋæ
PB	30	He took (some things) and went.	naowaa
PB	34	Then they asked each other—part.—the monkeys:	laŋkaa naowaa
PB	39	(They) carried (him) away.	naowaa
TS	6	(When) they finished speaking then they went off together.	naowaa
TS	13	When it was almost evening (they) went back together.	læ naowaa
TS	32	(When) the squirrel heard, then they went together.	naowaa
TS	33	At the time that they arrived at the previous place, the squirrel was afflicted by the trap and died.	læ naowaa
DB	3	A long time ago there were two people.	k ^h aalaj
ST	2	A long time ago there was a turtle and two swans.	laaj
AK	3	When it was almost dark, at the stream, there was an otter.	k ^h aalaj
AK	8	Early in the morning, there was a rabbit.	k ^h aalaj
OR	9	Then both children, well, every time were able to return home.	kaaluulæga akaa
TS	10	The turtle was unable to climb to that top area.	tɔɔ kaamæ
DB	11	Mr. Khiew didn't hear clearly.	kaa
OR	17	In addition, the mother dog who always followed and helped them was not there.	lá?waa
CW	22	He ran and dug up and took out and laid out the child	læu
FS	17	After that he became very rich.	laa náocá

Thirteen (31.71%) of the sentence listed above involve the particle *pá?nɔɔ*. As will be discussed in section 4.4.2, *pá?nɔɔ* is a somewhat more stylized equivalent of *tʃ^hiijèe*; indeed, cloze exercise participants consistently wrote *tʃ^hiijèe* where the original author had written *pá?nɔɔ*.

The seven (17.07%) sentences involving *naowaa* likewise carry a completive sense. As with *páʔnóó*, most cloze exercise participants substituted *tʃ^hiijèe* for *naowaa*. This is probably related to *naowaa*'s discourse function as a marker of past actions which are being repeated in the present—something of which a cloze exercise subject concentrating on single sentences would be likely to overlook (see section 4.4.3).

The remainder of the non-*tʃ^hiijèe* containing sentences do not carry any sort of completive sense. A total of eleven (26.83%) of the sentences contain *ŋææ*, which is generally used in conjunction with attributes such as length and time duration (see section 4.4.1). Another four (9.76%) of the sentences contain *laaj* or *k^haalaj*, which introduce new characters, while three (7.31%) of the sentences contain variations of *kaa*, a particle which indicates permanent state or ability (section 4.4.6). The remaining particles occur once each: *láʔwaa* shows emphasis (section 4.5.32), *lɛɛ* is associated with motion verbs (section 4.4.13) and *laa náocá* is of as yet undetermined meaning.

4.2.9 Conclusions on *tʃ^hii* and *jèe*

This section has examined the various manifestations of the two most frequently used particles in Bisu written folktales, *tʃ^hii* and *jèe*.

tʃ^hii has been shown to mark the mainline of the folktales, a role in keeping with its semantic connotations of completion. *tʃ^hii*-containing sentences are typically high in transitivity, and, as such, are not often found in the orientation or conclusion stages of a folktale. *tʃ^hii* may be used by experiencers and non-experiencers alike, although it occurs more frequently in written folktales than it does in everyday conversation (where it is used only when the speaker feels the need to make the completive nature of the action reported especially explicit). *tʃ^hii* is

most likely to occur in isolation in post–peak material, and is most likely to occur in non–*jèe*–containing clusters in quotations or in non–quotations with the particles *lææ* or *pii*.

jèe serves first and foremost as an indicator that the narrator was not personally involved in the events related. Thus, *jèe* is a characteristic evidentiality marker in Bisu folktales. When not co–occurring with *tʃ^hii*, *jèe*–containing sentences are typically low in transitivity, occurring in sentences that describe states or negative events (things which did not happen). In keeping with that role, *jèe* occurs most frequently without *tʃ^hii* in the orientation and conclusion sections of folktales.

4.3 *lææ*, *lèæ*, and *l'é?*: cacophony of homophony

The particle *lææ* highlights some of the challenges involved in understanding Bisu particles. Occurring sixty–four times in both quote and non–quote material, *lææ* is one of the most frequently found particles in Bisu written folktales. Nonetheless, there remains a degree of ambiguity as to the particle’s exact role. First and foremost is the question of whether all of the manifestations of *lææ* are created equal; that is, do all the occurrences of *lææ*, *lèæ*, or *l'é?* bear the same semantic connotations and discourse functions?

The answer, according to several native Bisu speakers, is no. Although *lææ* occupies the same position in the particle cluster throughout the corpus, in some cases language assistants glossed it as ‘go,’ while in other places it is rendered ‘again.’ Although the relative newness of the Bisu orthography lends itself to considerable spelling variation, thirty–five out of forty–four *lææ* occurrences related to motion

(79.55%) are written as mid tone, while twelve out of fourteen *lææ* occurrences related to repetition (85.71%) are written as low tone.²⁸

A third, less-frequent category of other *lææ*-like particles involves emphasis. In these six sentences, *lææ* indicates that the event truly did happen. Nonetheless, in most of these sentences, *lææ* could be deleted without any loss of meaning or grammaticality. The emphasis *lææ* is written as a low tone in five of these sentences, and as a mid tone in the remaining sentence.

The ensuing sections, then, will examine the motion *lææ*, the repeated action *lææ*, and the emphasis *lææ* in their respective contexts.

4.3.1 *lææ* (*lææ* ~ *lææn* ~ *lææ* ~ *læ?*) downward/southerly motion

With forty-four occurrences in both quote and non-quote material, *lææ* is the third most frequently used particle in written Bisu folktales.²⁹ Nonetheless, the exact grammatical category of *lææ* is somewhat ambiguous. In everyday Bisu conversation, *lææ* frequently appears as the main verb of a sentence in its primary meaning of 'go downward/south.' In this, it works as the opposite of the verb *ʔææ* 'go upward/northward.'

In forty-two of the forty-four occurrences, however, *lææ* is used in conjunction with other motion verbs, such as run, search, and release as shown in the select examples listed in 4.23. Only once, in a very short sentence (CK 37), is *lææ* the sole verb in a clause.

²⁸ Of the remaining motion related particles, 8 were written as low tones, 1 as a high tone. The 2 remaining repetitive action particles were written as high tones.

²⁹ The final nasal in *lææn*, the most frequent variant of *lææ*, is probably the result of phonological processes. Nonetheless, in example 4.23, it becomes apparent that not all of the Bisu authors were aware of or saw the necessity of adding the nasal in identical phonological contexts. This may be related to the newness of the Bisu orthography.

(4.23)

- AK 5 jào naasóon hæ ɔŋ læn tʃ^hiijèe .
And then he went into the fish trap. læn
tʃ^hiijèe
- AK 34 hik^hám kaʔtaj maŋ lamaj jàaŋ wíi .
lùujào ʃók jèe hùun læn tʃ^hii
At that time the rabbit threw the stick and læn tʃ^hii
immediately ran away.
- CK 2 lóŋtæ suuŋ káʔʃaa lætʃ^hii .
They went out fishing. lætʃ^hii
- CK 19 aŋjåa màaŋ tɔɔj lùujao hùun læn .
tʃ^hiijèe
When the child released him he ran away. læn
tʃ^hiijèe
- CK 23 hæŋjèe tʃ^hæŋkɔɔjkɔɔj maŋ bæŋjao .
hùun k^hèe læn tʃ^hii
After that, when Chengkoi realized what had læn tʃ^hii
happened, she ran after him.
- CK 37 máaj naʔwaa cãŋwáʔŋáaŋ máa .
k^hooʔùpk^hoojao ŋaŋ læn tʃ^hiijèe
When she had told him everything about the læn
rhythm she left. tʃ^hiijèe
- CO 3 lóŋtæ suuŋkaʔ ʃaa lætʃ^hijèe .
They went out looking for fish together. lætʃ^hiijèe
- CW 12 jào t^hùuwàn máa aŋboŋ maŋ aŋjåa .
màaŋ naʔ ʃɔŋkɔɔŋ sùuj læn
tʃ^hiijèe
One day after that the father took the child to the læn
forest. tʃ^hiijèe
- CW 21 hæŋ aŋboŋ maŋ kùt gaa læjao .
aŋwáj aŋk^hjaŋ ʃɔŋkɔɔŋ jóo hùun
læn tʃ^hii
After that, the father came to a realization and (he) læn tʃ^hii
quickly ran to the forest.
- OR 8 k^habaa maŋ naʔ k^hæ aŋboŋ maŋ .
háŋ jèe cɔŋkɔɔŋ ʃùuj tɔɔj
lætʃ^hii
Out of fear of his wife, the father took the children lætʃ^hii
to the forest and let them go.
- OR 14 nikâm wèənæ tʃ^hiʔúkɔɔŋ tɔɔj læw .
bàa pìi lùu lætɔɔ coo næ
"This time take them to a far place to release them læ tɔɔ coo
and then don't let them be able to come back!" næ

OR 15 cáa nikâm máa aṅboṅ maṅ aṅjâa .
 jèet naa còṅkṵṵṅ aṅwèè ʃùuj tɔɔj
 læætʃʰijèe
 Then this time their father took both children far læætʃʰijèe
 into the forest together and released them.

lææ co-occurs with a number of particles, many of which are associated with high transitivity. As shown in table 4.24, *lææ* co-occurs twenty-nine times with *tʃʰii* (65.9% of total *lææ* occurrences), a sum which includes fifteen occurrences with *tʃʰijèe*. In this corpus, *lææ* never occurs in isolation, and never co-occurs with *jèe* in the absence of some other particle.

Table 4.24. Particles co-occurring with *lææ*

preceding particle	<i>lææ</i>	succeeding particle	# occurrences
	X	tʃʰijèe	15
	X	tʃʰii	10
	X	p̄ii tʃʰii	2
	X	p̄ii tʃʰijèe	1
kan	X	tʃʰijâaṅ	1
	X	?ææ	3
kaa	X	naowaa	3
	X	naowaa	1
<i>lææm</i>	X	naowaa	1
	X	paanaa	1
	X	paanè?	1
	X	paanadèo	1
	X	pjaadèe	1
	X	tɔɔ coo nææ	1
	X	wá?nè?	1

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

As shown in table 4.25, *lææ*-containing sentences are found throughout their respective discourses. That one-third of *lææ*-containing sentences also indicate location is not surprising, given the semantic connotations of *lææ*. *lææ*-containing

sentences also occur in a significant number of inciting moments and episode junctures—again, something that is not surprising, inasmuch as inciting moments ‘get something going’ (Longacre 1996: 36), often with a motion or activity, while many episode junctures contain changes in location accomplished by motion verbs. *lææ* is most likely to occur in pre–peak episodes, although a handful of occurrences are found at peak and thereafter. The fact that *lææ* occurs less frequently at peak may be related to the overall tendency to shorten sentences and particle clusters to heighten vividness; as mentioned earlier, *lææ* almost always co–occurs with some other motion verb, making its existence in the sentence somewhat superfluous.

Table 4.25. Distribution of *lææ*

	Sentence Contents		Discourse Roles		Place in the Discourse					
	Time	Loc	Inciting mom	Episode junct	Orienta-tion	Pre-Peak Ep	Peak	Peak'	Post Peak	Conclu-sion
<i>lææ</i>	11	12	3	15	0	37	3	3	1	0
total # of sentences	82	35	13	92	26	227	61	30	12	15
percent of total	13.41%	34.29%	23.08%	16.30%	0.00%	16.30%	4.92%	10.00%	8.33%	0.00%

Table 4.26 lends additional light by comparing the number of *lææ*-containing sentences at each stage to the total number of *lææ*-containing sentences. It may thus be observed that a significant percentage of *lææ* occurrences accompany time and location indicators, as well as episode junctures. That 84.09% of all *lææ* occurrences are found in pre–peak episodes, while only 2–6% occur thereafter, underlines *lææ*’s somewhat superfluous nature, as mentioned earlier.

Table 4.26. Distribution of *lææ* relative to total occurrences

	Sentence Contents		Discourse Roles		Place in the Discourse					
	Time	Loc	Inciting mom	Episode junct	Orienta-tion	Pre-Peak Ep	Peak	Peak'	Post Peak	Conclu-sion
<i>lææ</i>	11	12	3	15	0	37	3	3	1	0
total # <i>lææ</i>	44	44	44	44	44	44	44	44	44	44
% of <i>lææ</i> overall	25.00%	27.27%	6.82%	34.09%	0.00%	84.09%	6.82%	6.82%	2.27%	0.00%

Variable group 2: Transitivity

Transitivity scores for *lææ*-containing sentences range from 2 to 10, with an average of 7.12. Thus, *lææ*-containing sentences rank as some of the most highly transitive sentences in the folktale corpus.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

Fifteen of the forty-four (34.09%) *lææ*-containing sentences involve multiple clauses, making *lææ* one of the particles most likely to be utilized in a multiclausal sentence. In such cases, the clauses are generally joined by *jao*.

Variable group 4: Quote/non-quote material

Ten of the forty-four (22.72%) occurrences of *lææ* are found in quotations. Few other particles in this corpus occur with such frequency in both quote and non-quote situations.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non-experiencer

lææ may be used by experiencers and non-experiencers alike.

4.3.2 *læ̀ɛ1* (*læ̀ɛ ~ læ̀ɛʔ ~ læ̀ɛŋ*) repeated action

With fourteen occurrences, *læ̀ɛ1* boasts relatively frequent use in the folktale corpus. Although an analyst might be tempted to consider many *læ̀ɛ1* occurrences to be variations of *læ̀ɛ*, especially when motion verbs are involved (e.g., CO 27, CW 8, CW 13, PB 41, TS 13, TS 33, MB 11), native speakers are able to clearly and quickly distinguish the two. While *læ̀ɛ* often seems somewhat redundant in that it consistently co-occurs with other motion verbs, *læ̀ɛ1* is the sole indicator of repeated action in all save one (CO 20) of the sentences listed in example 4.24:

(4.24)

- | | | | |
|----|----|---|--------------|
| CO | 20 | ɑŋʃùu pèəŋ læ̀ɛʔbannoo | . |
| | | "Let's divide those again." | læ̀ɛʔpannoo |
| CO | 27 | háaknaʔ bàa mæ̀ən nəʔ haaj jào . | |
| | | kʰàatɔŋ naʔmæ̀ gaaj kʰùn læ̀ɛŋŋæ̀ | |
| | | Do bad to others and it will return to you. | læ̀ɛŋŋæ̀ |
| OR | 5 | cáa ɑŋboŋ maŋ háəŋ jèe kʰabaa . | |
| | | ɑŋʃùu jùun læ̀ɛtʃʰii | |
| | | Then their father married a new wife. | læ̀ɛtʃʰii |
| OR | 9 | cáa jàakee maŋ jèet mi kuutʰəə jèe . | |
| | | juum ɑŋluu læ̀ɛgaakaa | |
| | | Then both children, well, every time were able to | kaaluulæ̀ɛ |
| | | return home. | gaakaa |
| OR | 18 | háəŋ jèe kæ̀ba ʃùuj kaajluŋ . | |
| | | læ̀ɛʔtʃʰi | |
| | | After that, they were lost together again. | læ̀ɛʔtʃʰi |
| CW | 8 | nikʰàm wàa ɑŋboŋ maŋ kʰàabaa . | |
| | | ɑŋsùu gaalæ̀ɛsiŋjèe | |
| | | At this time, the father wanted a new wife. | gaalæ̀ɛsiŋ |
| | | | jèe |
| CW | 13 | jào ɑŋjàa màaŋ naʔ dùuj pʰùum . | |
| | | læ̀ɛtʃʰiijèe | |
| | | And (he) dug a hole and buried (the child). | læ̀ɛtʃʰiijèe |
| CW | 18 | nikʰàm kʰàabaajàa màaŋ muu kùt . | |
| | | læ̀ɛtʃʰiijèe | |
| | | Now this woman, well, thought (again): | læ̀ɛtʃʰiijèe |

- CW 19 k^hanaat aŋjãa maŋnãmmuu sææ .
 t^hoona?t^hào gá ?àasãaŋ nææ kùt
 læætʃ^hiijèe
 "He'd go so far as to kill his own child—and who læætʃ^hiijèe
 am I?" she thought (again).
- PB 41 lam ka? lææ cáa naan .
 laŋka?læætʃ^hiijèe
 (When they) carried him then they asked each laŋka?lææ
 other again. tʃ^hiijèe
- TS 13 mùŋk^hîi baataŋ sùuŋkaaluun .
 læænaowaa
 When it was almost evening (they) went back læænaowaa
 together.
- TS 33 ?aŋ?an jóo k^həə kanlææcãŋ hootʃ^hén .
 maŋ kap jãaŋ gãaŋ sææ læænaowaa
 At the time that they arrived at the previous place, læænaowaa
 the squirrel was afflicted by the trap and died.
- MB 11 jaŋ jòoj pìk luun læætʃ^hiijèe .
 He (started) to walk back again. læætʃ^hiijèe
- DB 13 bàapóo háw màaj lææpaanoo .
 Mr Paw shouted and said again: lææpaanoo

It is nonetheless somewhat difficult to understand exactly how the designation “repeated action” applies in a number of the sentences in example 4.24. In these cases, both discourse factors and cultural elements must be taken into consideration. In CW 18 and 19, for example, the woman is said to have thought again about something. The first act of thinking actually occurs many sentences earlier, when she first receives the proposal of the cruel widower and demands that he kill his child. Thus, she is thinking twice about the action she proposed. Similarly, the use of *lææ1* in TS 33 appears problematic if *lææ1* is assumed to be connected only to the verb *sææ* ‘die.’ In this case, the language assistant claimed that the repetitive element of the sentence is in the arriving at the previous place. Again, this is somewhat unusual in terms of the normal adjacency patterns of Bisu particles. CW 13 reaches to the previous sentence, in which the cruel widower takes his child into the forest. The act

of taking the child into the forest is itself a bad thing, indicating either that the father intended to abandon his son (as in “Orphans”) or, at least that he had no regard for the son’s well being. This stems from the Bisu belief that young children should not be allowed to journey into the forest, even when accompanied by an adult, out of concern that a child’s *k^hwaan* ‘life force’ is weaker than an adult’s, making the child easy prey for forest-dwelling spirits. Thus, the use of *lææ*l in CW 13 in essence is saying, “He did [a bad thing] in taking the child to the forest and then, again, on top of that, did a bad thing by burying the child alive.” In this regard, *lææ*l is used in a way similar to the Northern Thai particle *sam*, which likewise carries the sense of “on top of all that, he went and did X, too.”

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

As shown in table 4.27, *lææ*l-containing sentences do not make up any appreciable sum of the overall quantity of sentences in a discourse:

Table 4.27. Distribution of *lææ*l

	Sentence Contents		Discourse Roles		Place in the Discourse					
	Time	Loc	Inciting mom	Episode junct	Orienta-tion	Pre-Peak Ep	Peak	Peak'	Post Peak	Conclu-sion
<i>lææ</i> l	5	0	0	5	0	9	4	0	0	1
total # sentences	82	35	13	92	26	227	61	30	12	15
%of total	6.10%	0.00%	0.00%	5.43%	0.00%	3.96%	6.56%	0.00%	0.00%	6.67%

Table 4.28 demonstrates that roughly two-thirds of *lææ*l-containing sentences occur in pre-peak episodes. Roughly half of those pre-peak occurrences come at

episode junctures, all of which indicate time—unsurprising, given *lææ1*'s semantic connotations.

Table 4.28. Distribution of *lææ1* relative to total occurrences

	Sentence Contents		Discourse Roles		Place in the Discourse					
	Time	Loc	Inciting mom	Episode junct	Orienta- tion	Pre- Peak Ep	Peak	Peak'	Post Peak	Conclu- sion
<i>lææ</i>	5	0	0	5	0	9	4	0	0	1
<i>lææ</i> overall	14	14	14	14	14	14	14	14	14	14
%of <i>lææ</i> overall	35.71%	0.00%	0.00%	35.71%	0.00%	64.29%	28.57%	0.00%	0.00%	7.14%

Variable group 2: Transitivity

Transitivity scores for *lææ1*-containing sentences range from 4 to 10, with an average of 6.25. Thus, *lææ1* is associated with sentences of relatively high transitivity.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

Four of the fourteen *lææ1*-containing sentences (28.57%) involve more than one clause, these being connected by *jao.caa*, *kanlææcáj*, and juxtaposition, respectively.

Variable group 4: Quote/non-quote material

The corpus at hand contains one occurrence of *lææ1* in a direct quotation, as well as one occurrence of *lææ1* in a story moral. The remaining occurrences are in non-quotation sentences.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non-experiencer

As evidenced by its use in both quote and non-quote material, *læ̀æ̀l* may be used by experiencers and non-experiencers alike.

4.3.3 *læ̀æ̀2 (læ̀æ̀ ~læ̀æ̀)* emphasis

The six *læ̀æ̀2*-containing sentences in this corpus are reported by native speakers to reflect emphasis, underlining the fact that the event related really did occur. This emphasis is not regarded as entirely necessary to the host sentence; of the examples listed in 4.25, *læ̀æ̀2* could be deleted from sentences AK 26, FM 13, TD 7, and CK 22 without a loss of meaning or grammaticality.

(4.25)

- AK 26 ?aj k^hàm naasóon jok lùujao .
 laŋʃjaam maan na? naan læ̀æ̀tʃ^hiijèe
 Ai Kham lifted the trap up and then saw that otter. læ̀æ̀tʃ^hiijèe
- CO l k^hàatooŋ æən ɲæ̀ nə? ?àahaa .
 tsàalæ̀æ̀ coo
 Don't think you are clever. ?àahaa...
 læ̀æ̀ coo
- FM 13 lèəŋ níimaajàakee naamáaj bæ̀æ̀ .
 læ̀æ̀piŋɲæ̀æ̀
 This story tells the children causing (them) to læ̀æ̀ piŋ
 know. ɲæ̀æ̀
- TD 7 hooɖooŋ hæ̀æ̀máŋ ts^halàa maan^hna? .
 hmjaan jao bàa hùun nə? lak^hüu dâa
 tæ̀æ̀ŋ læ̀æ̀tʃ^hiijèe
 The deer saw that tiger and then didn't run because læ̀æ̀tʃ^hiijèe
 his foot hurt.
- DB 20 bàapóo ?æ̀æ̀ŋkóolook wəə tàmtàalàak .
 jàaŋ nàŋ k^hooŋ məək^hooŋ k^hook
 læ̀æ̀paanoo
 Under the house, Mr. Paw stepped on an læ̀æ̀paanoo
 implement which flipped up and struck his
 forehead.
- CK 22 cáa koo^wæ̀ hæ̀æ̀ŋ ?uun p^hooj .
 læ̀æ̀tʃ^hiijèe
 And then he shook the rice heads over his body. læ̀æ̀tʃ^hiijèe

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

lææ2 occurs twice in pre-peak episodes, once at peak, once at peak', once in a conclusion, and once in a title. Only one occurrence is at an episode boundary. Given the semantic connotations of *lææ2*, this particle would appear to have a primarily sentence-level role.

Variable group 2: Transitivity

Transitivity scores for *lææ2*-containing sentences range from 2 to 8, with an average of 6. Thus, *lææ2* is associated with sentences of relatively high average transitivity.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

Only two of the six *lææ2*-containing sentences are multiclausal, joined by *jao* and *luu.jao*, respectively.

Variable group 4: Quote/non-quote material

The one occurrence of *lææ2* in a quotation actually occurs in the title of "Don't Dare Think You're Clever!" That particular usage highlights the emphatic nature of the particle, inasmuch as it co-occurs with two strong imperatives.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non-experiencer

lææ2 may be used by experiencers and non-experiencers alike.

4.4 Other frequently occurring particles

This section contains entries for particles from two overlapping categories: those which are used frequently and those which carry a heavy functional load in Bisu folktales.

4.4.1 *ηææ* (*ηææ* ~ *ηά?*) stative

There are twenty-two occurrences of *ηææ* in the written folktale corpus. As shown in example 4.26, *ηææ* is used in sentences describing physical or emotional states. *ηææ* is also used quite frequently in everyday conversation. Indeed, during wordlist elicitation, Bisu speakers often attach *ηææ* to adjectives.

The states described in *ηææ*-containing sentences may be sudden and temporary, such as the squirrel's feigned stomachache in TS 16, or more durative, such as the fact that the family has two children in OR 3. *ηææ* can also be used in describing routine events, as in FM 12 when the dutiful son's daily actions are recorded, and CK 35 and 36 when instructions for getting money at will are given. Perhaps the most culturally potent use of *ηææ* comes in the moral of "Don't Dare Think You're Clever!"; CO 27 essentially restates the eternally fixed law of karma, a fundamental assumption of Buddhism which Konrad Kingshill (1991:10) considers a major "cultural theme" in Northern Thai life.

(4.26)

MB	13	<i>k^hanaat jèe hùu ηææ</i>	.
		It was very large.	<i>ηææ</i>
TS	27	<i>naammaatáa jèe ?ùuhoon aηbaa maη .</i>	
		<i>nηbaa k^hàa ηææ</i>	
		The Mother Turtle was very angry.	<i>ηææ</i>
PB	13	<i>?asáa naamaη pùn jào mæ?tsàabùu .</i>	
		<i>ηææ</i>	
		"In a moment this (thing) will be rotten and (make <i>ηææ</i>	
		the cucumbers) not be delicious."	
FS	5	<i>k^haacææ kaajèe cáa tùuk lùuη ηææ</i>	.
		This caused (them) to become even poorer.	<i>ηææ</i>
TS	16	<i>?òoj pòonηboon daa ηæ?</i>	.
		"Oh! My stomach hurts!"	<i>ηά?</i>
OR	3	<i>aηjàa soon k^hùn caaη ηææ</i>	.
		They had two children	<i>ηææ</i>

- FM 12 kuwàn juwàn ja?jèe aŋbaa .
 maŋna?hàaŋ tsàalaŋ taŋ?æŋ?iiʃii
 tʃ^hii piŋŋæ?
 Every single day, he would feed his mother rice pii ŋæ?
 and give her water to drink and clean her dung and
 urine for her.
- CK 35 moŋ jào k^hàm ?ɔɔk ŋææ .
 "Beat it (the first time) and gold will come out." ŋææ
- CK 36 moŋ næ? jào p^hluu ?ɔɔk ŋææ .
 "Beat it (the second time) and silver will come ŋææ
 out."
- CO 27 háakna? bàa mææn næ? haaj jào .
 k^hàatɔɔŋ na?mææ gaaj k^hùn lææŋŋææ
 Do bad to others and it will return to you. lææŋŋææ

In these folktales, *ŋææ* occurs in isolation seventeen out of twenty-two times (77.27%). As shown in table 4.29, it may co-occur with a handful of other particles. When it does co-occur with other particles, *ŋææ* is the last element of the cluster. The one apparent exception, where *ŋææ* and *nææ* co-occur, is not truly exceptional in that *nææ* merely signals that the quotation, which included *ŋææ*, is finished (see section 4.4.12).

Table 4.29. *ŋææ* co-occurrences

Preceding Particle	<i>ŋææ</i>	Succeeding Particle	# occurrences
pii	X		1
luwtʃ ^h ii	X		1
lææŋ	X		1
lææ piŋ	X		1
laaŋ	X		1
	X	<i>nææ</i>	1
	X		17

It is interesting to note that *ŋææ* does not co-occur with *jèe*, the most frequently used particle in Bisu written folktales. Possible reasons for this will emerge below.

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

As shown in table 4.30, *ŋææ* does not occur in any truly significant proportion of sentences at any place in the discourse except the conclusion, where it is usually associated with the moral of the story. This fits well with its stative sense, inasmuch as story morals often deal with long-held behavioral norms.

Table 4.30. Distribution of *ŋææ*

	Sentence Contents		Discourse Roles		Place in the Discourse					
	Time	Loc	Inciting mom	Episode junct	Orienta-tion	Pre-Peak Ep	Peak	Peak'	Post Peak	Conclu-sion
<i>ŋææ</i>	4	1	1	2	2	13	1	2	0	4
total # sentences	82	35	13	92	26	227	61	30	12	15
%of total	4.88%	2.86%	7.69%	2.17%	7.69%	5.73%	1.64%	6.67%	0.00%	26.67%

Still, as shown in table 4.31 nearly 60% of all occurrences of *ŋææ* are found in pre-peak episodes. The fact that *ŋææ* occurs so infrequently in the peak, peak', and post peak stages reflects the fact that those places in the discourse typically involve action, rather than explanations of states.

Table 4.31. Distribution of *ɲææ* relative to total occurrences

	Sentence Contents		Discourse Roles		Place in the Discourse					
	Time	Loc	Inciting mom	Episode junct	Orientalion	Pre-Peak Ep	Peak	Peak'	Post Peak	Conclusion
<i>ɲææ</i>	4	1	1	2	2	13	1	2	0	4
<i>ɲææ</i> overall	22	22	22	22	22	22	22	22	22	22
% of <i>ɲææ</i> overall	18.18%	4.55%	4.55%	9.09%	9.09%	59.09%	4.55%	9.09%	0.00%	18.18%

It is nonetheless interesting to note that *ɲææ* does not occur often in discourse orientations, where one would expect statives to be found. This may somehow be related to the fact that *ɲææ* does not co-occur with *jèe*, which is found in 69.23% of all orientation sentences, generally in isolation. Indeed, many of the *jèe*-in-isolation-containing sentences in example 4.20 (section 4.2.6) and elsewhere would seem to involve the same type of attributes to which *ɲææ* can be attached.

Results from the cloze exercise only add mystery. Only two of the ninety slots which originally held *jèe*-containing particle clusters were filled with *ɲææ*. Similarly, *jèe*-in-isolation was substituted for *ɲææ* in only two of ten slots. Thus, *jèe*-in-isolation and *ɲææ* are anything but freely interchangeable!

A partial answer to this problem may lie with text type. As will be discussed in 4.6.1.2, *ɲææ* is the most frequently used particle in both the life stories and the expository texts, occurring in 15.26% and 32.29%, respectively, of all sentences. By contrast, *ɲææ* occurs in a mere 5.73% of written folktale sentences. For its part, the reported speech marker *jèe* occurs in 44.53% of all written folktale sentences, but a mere 0.35% of life story sentences. The discourse parameters of written folktales thus

prefer *jèe* over *ɲææ* in situations where either particle would be grammatically possible.

Variable group 2: Transitivity

ɲææ-containing sentences post transitivity scores ranging from 3 to 8, with an average of 4.9. Thus, *ɲææ* is most often associated with sentences of mid-level transitivity, something that is not unexpected for a stative marker.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

A total of six of the twenty-two *ɲææ*-containing sentences (27.27%) involve more than one clause. Some five of these are joined by *jao*, one by *laajèe*. In everyday Bisu conversation, *ɲææ* often occurs in very short sentences; indeed, sentences containing only a verbal adjective plus *ɲææ* are common in daily interaction.

Variable group 4: Quote/non-quote materials

ɲææ occurs in nine quotations, two morals, and fourteen non-quotations. It is thus the only particle that occurs with near even frequency in both quote and non-quote sentences.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non-experiencer

ɲææ may be used by experiencers and non-experiencers alike.

4.4.2 *paanòo* (*paanoo~páʔnóo*) enhanced completive

With fourteen occurrences in the folktale corpus, *paanòo* occurs relatively frequently. According to the main language assistant for this project, *tʃ^hiijèe* may be substituted for all of the *paanòo* occurrences displayed in example 4.27. This

contention is supported by the results of the cloze test on “Ai Kham”; the respondents consistently used *tʃ^hiijèe* in place of *paanòɔ* in sixteen of twenty slots, never resorting to *paanòɔ*. Thus, *paanòɔ* would appear to carry some of the completive sense of *tʃ^hiijèe*.

Why, then, would an author choose to use *paanòɔ* instead of *tʃ^hiijèe*? According to the main language assistant for this project, *paanòɔ* seems to add emphasis to a sentence. If the sentence is funny, *paanòɔ* makes it funnier. If one character is saying something to another character, *paanòɔ* adds a “he really did say that” element. The particle seems to make the narration more colorful.

It is also interesting to note that all of the *paanòɔ*-containing sentences in this corpus occur in stories authored by Kongkham Wonglua, a former Buddhist monk who is known as a particularly accomplished and humorous storyteller.

(4.27)

- AK 16 kaʔtaj maŋ naʔ mǎan paʔnóɔ .
(The otter) told the rabbit: páʔnóɔ
- AK 19 kaʔtaj maŋ cǐi lǝu paanóɔ .
The rabbit said: lǝu paanòɔ
- AK 21 laŋʃjaam maŋ mǎanpòɔŋ ʔáaj jào .
kaʔtaj maŋ ʔæŋk^hàa tɔɔj kaan
pǐipaanòɔ
The otter opened its mouth and then the rabbit pǐi paanòɔ
farted into the otter’s mouth.
- AK 22 hik^hàm laŋʃjaam maŋ kaʔtaj maŋ .
ʔæŋk^hàa buum tʃ^hii pannòɔ
At that time the otter sucked on the fart of the tʃ^hii
rabbit (kept it in its mouth). pannòɔ
- AK 25 ʔaj k^hàm jùu t^haa laajao naasón .
ʔæ praacàan paanòɔ
Ai Kham woke up and went to look at the fish paanòɔ
trap.
- AK 29 hik^hàm kaʔtaj maŋ jòɔj ʔɔɔk luun .
paanòɔ
After that the rabbit came walking out. paanòɔ

- DB 13 bàapóó háw màaj làəpaanóó .
Mr Paw shouted and said again: làəpaanóó
- DB 15 hik^hám puukaew juum súuŋ maŋ kjàan .
jáo cii hàwháw laapaanóó
At that point, Uncle Kaew the owner of the house laapaanóó
heard and suddenly yelled out:
- DB 17 baak^haew nà? bàapóó jèet kjàan jáo .
k^hæ làəjáo súuŋ kaa hùun paanóó
t^hùutóŋt^hùumanŋ
Mr. Khiew and Mr. Paw heard and were shocked paanóó
and fled in different directions.
- DB 20 bàapóó ?æŋkóóloók wəə tàmtàalàak .
jàaŋ nàŋ k^hoon mæək^hoon k^hook
làəpaanóó
Under the house, Mr. Paw stepped on an làəpaanóó
implement which flipped up and struck his
forehead.
- ST 7 hik^hám nukhuuŋ maŋ jèet pjaam .
nàatuŋ k^ham ?æ paanóó
And both swans flew across the field. ?æ paanóó
- ST 10 hik^hám ?ùuhoonŋ maŋ kjàan jao ciin .
lùu paanóó
Then the turtle heard it and said: lùu paanóó
- ST 15 kam laŋ hæ ?ùuhoonŋ maŋ pòon^hnaa .
maŋ naatúu mànpoonŋ cóot klaaj tùuj
paanóó
The turtle fell down into the mouth of a water paanóó
buffalo.
- ST 16 pòon^hnaa sòop^hee pjáa klaa k^hoo .
paanóó
All the water buffalo's teeth fell out. paanóó

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

paanóó is most frequent in pre–peak episodes, with eight occurrences, two of which are found at episode boundaries. There are four occurrences of *paanóó* at peak, two of which are found at episode boundaries. The remaining two occurrences, one of which is found at an episode boundary, are found at peak’.

Variable group 2: Transitivity

Transitivity scores for *paanòɔ* range from 4 to 10, with an average of 6.0. Thus, *paanòɔ*-containing sentences boast relatively high transitivity.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

Five of the fourteen *paanòɔ*-containing sentences (35.71%) contain more than one clause. Four of these are joined by *jao*, one by *laajao*. *paanòɔ*'s relatively high rate of occurrence in multiclausal situations is similar to that of *tʃ^hii*, which occurs in multi-clausal sentences roughly 30% of the time.

Variable group 4: Quote/non-quote material

paanòɔ does not appear in quotations, although it may introduce a quotation.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non-experiencer

Like *tʃ^hijèe*, *paanòɔ* is used only by narrators.

4.4.3 naowaa repeated episode marker

The particle *naowaa* occurs a total of eight times, but is found only in two of the folktales, "Poor Boy" and "Turtle and Squirrel." Although written by different individuals, these two stories are similar in that they are the only members of the corpus which have two distinct story cycles. These cycles are somewhat parallel.

In "Poor Boy," for example, the first cycle tells how a destitute young man becomes wealthy by planting a hillfield and tricking some monkeys. In the second cycle, the first character's friend tries to do the same thing—albeit with a different final outcome. The three *naowaa*-containing sentences in this folktale all come in the second cycle, being attached to sentences which mirror events of the first cycle.

“Turtle and Squirrel” likewise contains two cycles, both involving two friends going to the forest together. Here, however, *naowaa* appears in both first and second cycles, thus seeming to provide contradictory evidence to the “*naowaa* as repeated episode” hypothesis. This seeming contradiction is eased, however, by a knowledge of Bisu culture. In the opening paragraph of this story, Turtle and Squirrel are described as being “friends of the same age.” As such, they would be considered equals in a society where relative age is encoded in all forms of address. Furthermore, the Bisu gather “forest food” almost daily in small groups that tend to be divided along age and gender lines. Thus, the use of *naowaa* in the first cycle of this story merely indicates that the Turtle and Squirrel had been doing this type of thing before—that this was just another typical day, just another trip to gather things in the forest. Thus, the first cycle of this story refers back to identical actions in assumed pre-story episodes.³⁰

This contention draws support from responses to the cloze exercise. In seventeen of twenty slots, respondents substituted *tʃ^hiijèe* or *tʃ^hiijèe*-containing clusters for *naowaa*. This is not unexpected, given that *naowaa*-containing sentences often involve actions similar to those that often precede *tʃ^hiijèe*. In addition, the respondents were more likely concentrating on sentence-level matters than wider discourse concerns such as cyclicity as they answered. The three times in which respondents correctly guessed *naowaa* all occurred in the first cycle of “Turtle and Squirrel,” inasmuch as those sentences reflected the habitual actions of friends, as mentioned above.

(4.28)

PB	30	jaan	haan	lææ	naowaa	.
		He took (some things) and went.				naowaa

³⁰ This hypothesis was accepted by Somchai Kaewkhamnoi, the author of “Poor Boy.”

- PB 34 cáa naan laŋkaanaowaa kasəej ʔuu .
Then they asked each other—part.—the monkeys: laŋkaa
naowaa
- PB 39 lam kaalæən naowaa .
(They) carried (him) away. naowaa
- TS 5 ʔùuhooŋ maŋ ʔòoj læmlæə naowaa .
The turtle said. "O.K. I'll go." naowaa
- TS 6 jiin ʔuu pəən jao sùuŋ kaalæən .
naowaa
(When) they finished speaking then they went off naowaa
together.
- TS 13 mùŋk^híi baataŋ sùuŋkaaluun .
læənaowaa
When it was almost evening (they) went back læənaowaa
together.
- TS 32 hootʃ^hén maŋ kjàan jao sùuŋ .
kaalæən naowaa
(When) the squirrel heard, then they went together. naowaa
- TS 33 ʔaŋʔan jóo k^həə kanlæəcáŋ hootʃ^hén .
maŋ kap jàaŋ gàaŋ sàə læənaowaa
At the time that they arrived at the previous place. læənaowaa
the squirrel was afflicted by the trap and died.

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

Seven of the eight occurrences of *naowaa* are found in pre-peak episodes, with the remaining occurrence being at peak. Seven of the occurrences are found at episode boundaries (the single exception being during a pre-peak episode). This strengthens the case for *naowaa*'s discourse-level function, marking not only repeated actions, but repeated episodes. This episode-boundary link also explains why *naowaa* does not occur in every sentence containing a repeated action; the presence of *naowaa* in the first sentence of an episode indicates that the events to follow are all somewhat repetitive. All the episode boundaries in the second cycle of "Poor Boy," for example, are marked with *naowaa*, save the final episode, which ends very dramatically and much differently than the first cycle. Similarly, in "Turtle

and Squirrel,” *naowaa* occurs twice at episode boundaries in the second cycle. Again, in those two episodes the characters repeat the events of the previous day. Those second-cycle episodes which contain novel events do not contain *naowaa*.

Variable group 2: Transitivity

The transitivity scores for *naowaa*-containing sentences range from 4 to 9, with an average of 6.1. Thus, *naowaa*-containing sentences boast relatively high transitivity scores—something that is not unexpected, given the “repeated action” aspect of the particle.

The transitivity scores for *naowaa*-containing sentences are similar to those posted for *tʃ^hii*-containing sentences. It thus is not surprising that the cloze exercise respondents consistently substituted *tʃ^hiijèe* for *naowaa*.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

Three of the eight *naowaa*-containing sentences (37.50%) involve more than one clause. Two of these utilize the conjoiner *jao*, while the third uses the much rarer *kanlæcáŋ*. Again, *naowaa* is comparable to *tʃ^hii*, which likewise occurs in multiclausal sentences roughly one-third of the time.

Variable group 4: Quote/non-quote material

naowaa does not occur in quotations.³¹

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non-experiencer

As *naowaa* may be used only by a narrator, it is a non-experiencer marker.

³¹ *naowaa* is employed in one quotation-containing sentence (TS 10), but actually occurs outside of the quotation proper (see section 4.4.12 on *nææ*, which co-occurs with quotations but is considered outside of the quotation proper).

4.4.4 $t\int^h\acute{a}?$ emphatic completion

$t\int^h\acute{a}?$ occurs seven times in the written folktales, and consistently carries a sense of emphatic completion. In six of the seven occurrences, the emphasized event or state is an undesirable one. The single case (CW 6) in which a positive situation is described underscores the tragedy about to ensue, as the father and child's longstanding placid existence is about to be torn apart. That completion is a component of the particle is manifest by one language assistant's contention that the completive aspect marker $t\int^h i i$ can often be substituted for $t\int^h\acute{a}?$. This claim is supported by the cloze exercises, in which the respondents substituted $t\int^h i i$ for $t\int^h\acute{a}?$ in four of ten slots. Beauduoin (1991a: 6) presents $t\int^h i i$ and $t\int^h\acute{a}?$ side by side as "aspective particles....for the past," but does not discuss the emphatic connotations of $t\int^h\acute{a}?$.

(4.29)

- AK 27 $\text{ʔoo laŋʃjaam naʔ maa ʃiin tʃ^h\acute{a}ʔmáʔ .}$
 "Ooh—this otter is dead already!" $tʃ^h\acute{a}ʔmáʔ$
- CK 31 $\text{joo aŋʃuŋjaowəə naʔ ʃiin .}$
 maamaatʃ^haa
 "Well, my beloved one has really died." maamaatʃ^háʔ
- PB 12 $\text{ʔəənæhaaŋjèe naʔmaŋ ʃiin tʃ^h\acute{a}ʔmáʔ .}$
 "Uuuh! This (thing) has died already!" $tʃ^h\acute{a}ʔmáʔ$
- TS 24 $\text{ʔàabaa sùuk^hajlòok gaaj luun .}$
 $tʃ^h\acute{a}n\acute{e}ʔ$
 "Mother brought some suukhajlook fruit." $tʃ^h\acute{a}ʔn\acute{e}ʔ$
- TS 38 $\text{ʔàabaa ʃii kaatʃan\acute{e}ʔ .}$
 "Mother is dead!" $\text{kaatʃ^h\acute{a}ʔn\acute{e}ʔ}$
- CW 6 $\text{jao aŋjàa aŋboon n\acute{e}ʔ duŋ mlàaŋ .}$
 katʃ^hajèe
 Then the child and father lived together for a long $\text{káʔtʃ^h\acute{a}ʔjèe}$ time.
- CW 23 $\text{jàaŋ aŋjàa màaŋ ʃiin tʃ^hajèe .}$
 (But) his child was already dead. $tʃ^h\acute{a}ʔjèe$

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

$t\int^{h\acute{a}}\mathcal{P}$ -containing sentences occur in three pre-peak episodes, including one pre-peak episode junction. The two peak occurrences (AK 27, CK 31) are found in quotations, wherein a main character makes a realization that significantly impacts the outcome of the story. Similarly, the two peak' occurrences (TS 38, CW 23) are both the final sentences of their respective stories, and constitute dramatic, tragic endings.

Variable group 2: Transitivity

The majority of $t\int^{h\acute{a}}\mathcal{P}$ -containing sentences are quotations, and thus do not receive transitivity scores. The two $t\int^{h\acute{a}}\mathcal{P}$ -containing sentences that are not quotations have scores of 3 and 5, respectively, for an average of 4. This relatively low average is not surprising, given the fact that these two sentences emphasize accomplished states.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

All $t\int^{h\acute{a}}\mathcal{P}$ -containing sentences are monoclausal.

Variable group 4: Quote/non-quote

Five of the seven $t\int^{h\acute{a}}\mathcal{P}$ -containing sentences (71.43%) are quotations.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non-experiencer

$t\int^{h\acute{a}}\mathcal{P}$ may be employed by experiencers and non-experiencers alike.

**4.4.5 $p\acute{i}i$ ($p\acute{i}i \sim p\acute{i}i\eta \sim p\acute{i} \sim p\acute{i}\eta$) 'give'
causative/purposive/permissive**

With fifteen occurrences in the folktale corpus, $p\acute{i}i$ ranks as the sixth most frequently used Bisu particle. When used as a verb, $p\acute{i}i$ literally means 'give.'

When used as a particle, however, *p̄i* indicates causality, purpose, or permission, as seen in example set 4.30:³²

(4.30)

- | | | |
|----|---|---------------------------------------|
| AK | 6 l̄òŋt̄ǣ ʔoŋ tsàa k ^h oo p̄iisijee
(He) ate all the fish completely. | .
p̄i
t̄ʃ ^h iijèe |
| AK | 21 lanʃjaam maŋ màanp̄òŋ ʔáaj jào
kaʔtaj maŋ ʔǣŋk ^h àa tooj kaan
p̄iipaandò
The otter opened its mouth and then the
rabbit farted into the otter's mouth. | .
p̄i paandò |
| FM | 5 càawàaŋboŋ máa ʃiin p̄i t̄ʃ ^h iijèe
But their father died. | .
p̄i
t̄ʃ ^h iijèe |
| FM | 9 n̄ǣ hǣŋ aŋjàa tùu k ^h ùnmàaŋnaʔwàt
duŋ l̄ǣpit̄ʃ ^h iijèe
And caused the other child to live in the
temple. | .
l̄ǣpi
t̄ʃ ^h iijèe |
| FM | 12 kuwàn juwàn jaʔjèe aŋbaa
maaŋnaʔhàaŋ tsàalaŋ taŋʔǣŋʔiiʃii
t̄ʃ ^h ii piŋŋǣʔ
Every single day, he would feed his mother rice
and give her water to drink and clean her dung and
urine for her. | .
piŋ ŋǣʔ |
| FM | 13 l̄èŋ nímaajàakee naamâaj b̄ǣ
l̄ǣpiŋŋǣ
This story tells the children causing (them) to
know. | .
l̄ǣ piŋ
ŋǣ |
| OR | 7 hǣŋ jèe aŋbloŋ maŋ naʔma [^] aj s̄ǣ
p̄iit̄ʃ ^h ii
After that, she told her husband to kill both of
the children. | .
p̄i t̄ʃ ^h ii |
| OR | 12 hǣŋ jèe aŋbloŋ maŋ naʔmâaj s̄ǣ
hoonúŋ t ^h aw jàakee maŋ jèet naa
t ^h aw haan càj p̄i t̄ʃ ^h ii
After that, she thus told her husband to kill that
dog and put it in a steamed leaf bundle and give
itto both children to eat. | .
p̄i t̄ʃ ^h ii |

³²Many Asian languages use of 'give' constructions to indicate causality and purpose, causing Randy LaPolla to consider such usage an areal feature (1984: 70).

OR	21	hæŋ jèe jàakee maŋ jèet naa aŋjàa . p ^h èəj piitʃ ^h ii After that, they made the two children their children.	pi i tʃ ^h ii
OR	28	juum t ^h àa hœ hâw taaj laa pi i jao . hàaŋp ^h œn caam lùu piitʃ ^h ii After that they called them to come up into the house and then prepared a tray of food for them.	lù u pi i tʃ ^h ii
CW	5	jào bàa mlàaŋ suumə cáa aŋbaa maŋ . ʃiin pi i tʃ ^h iijèe And then, not long thereafter, the mother died.	pi i tʃ ^h iijèe
PB	6	cáa míin laa jao kasəj ɔŋ tsàan . pitʃ ^h iijèe (When) they had sprouted, the monkeys came and ate them	pi i tʃ ^h iijèe
TD	21	ts ^h alàa màaŋ hæŋ jèe ŋæm læ . pitʃ ^h ii After that the tiger looked upwards.	læ æ pi tʃ ^h ii
TS	14	luutaamlu u hooʃ ^h én maŋ . sùuk ^h ajlòk bæŋ laalæpi tʃ ^h iijée Not long thereafter, the squirrel got hungry for the sukhajlook fruit.	laalæpi tʃ ^h iijée
TS	18	jaŋ p ^h ælɔŋ jóo máaj ɔŋ dʌŋ . piitʃ ^h iijée She had/allowed (the squirrel) to get in her shoulder bag.	pi i tʃ ^h iijèe

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

Twelve of the fifteen *pi i*-containing sentences are found in pre-peak episodes. Eight of those occur at episode junctures, six with time indicators, two with location indicators, and two at inciting moments. Two *pi i*-containing sentences are found at peak; one occurs at an episode juncture with time and location indicator, while the other contains a time indicator. One *pi i*-containing sentence is found in a conclusion. Given the semantic connotations of *pi i*, this particle probably plays more of a sentence level role.

Variable group 2: Transitivity

Transitivity scores for *p̂i*-containing sentences range from a low of 4 to a high of 10, with an average of 7.7. As such, *p̂i*-containing sentences boast some of the highest transitivity rankings. This is not surprising, given that *p̂i*, by its semantic nature, demands some sort of a transfer of action. In addition, *p̂i* usually co-occurs with other highly-transitive particles such as *tʃ^hii* (twelve occurrences) and *paanòo* (one occurrence); *p̂i* occurs only twice with the lower-transitive particle *ŋæ~ŋæʔ*.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

Only three of the fifteen *p̂i*-containing sentences (20%) involve more than one clause. Two of these are joined by *jao*, with the remaining sentence utilizing *laajao*.

Variable group 4: Quote/non-quote material

In the folktales corpus, *p̂i* is found only in non-quote material. Nonetheless, it can occur in quotations, and is used quite often in everyday conversation.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non-experiencer

p̂i may be used by experiencers and non-experiencers alike.

**4.4.6 *kaa1* (*kaa~kaaŋʔ~káʔ~kan*)
permanent state/ability**

kaa1 primarily relates to the ability or, when preceded by *baa* Verb *tòo* (see section 4.5.24), inability of a referent to carry out a task. The domain of this particle's meaning, however, would seem to extend to the description of a durative, if not permanent, state, as demonstrated in example set 4.31:

(4.31)³³

- OR 9 *cáa jàakee maŋ jèet mi kuut^həə jèe .*
juum aŋluu lægaakaa
 Then both children, well, every time were able to *kaaluulæə*
 return home. *gaakaa*
- OR 16 *jàakee maŋ jèet mi bàa ʃùuj .*
kaaluulæətookaa jèe
 The two children were unable to return together. *kaaluulæə*
tookaa jèe
- AK 7 *cáa k^hoon jáo bàa ʔook lùutoo .*
kaʔjèe
 Then after the (fish) were all gone, he could not *kaa jèe*
 get out.
- AK 14 *náa ʃii kaʔnaaʔíi .*
 You will die for sure. *káʔnaaʔíi*
- CK 25 *ʔiinəʔhaaŋjèe gaa aŋblooŋ naamáa .*
ʔaalòom ʃii kaʔtʃ^hii
 Ooh! When did my husband die? *káʔtʃ^hii*
- CO 8 *lòoŋtæə gaa j bjàa kaʔtʃ^hijèe .*
 They got a lot of fish. *káʔtʃ^hii jèe*
- CO 17 *cáa p^hii ùp aŋbæə k^héət kaʔjèe .*
 But Grandmother Up knew/realized the technique. *kaa jèe*
- CW 4 *t^hàugaa laagaanæə duŋ bàa sii bàa .*
læə kaʔjèe
 They lived together without quarrelling or *kaa jèe*
 fighting.
- CW 6 *jao aŋjàa aŋbooŋ nəʔ duŋ mlàaŋ .*
katʃ^hajèe
 Then the child and father lived together for a long *káʔtʃ^háʔjèe*
 time.
- FS 15 *càk bàa càk laa kaa jèe .*
 The more he pulled, the less it would come loose. *kaa jèe*
- TS 2 *ʔùuhoŋ nəə hootʃ^hén jáak^hàa .*
kaa jèe
 The turtle and the squirrel were friends of the same *kaa jèe*
 age.
- TS 10 *ʔaŋt^hàa pèukjàa ʔùuhoŋ máa cuŋcuŋ .*
bàa p^hjàa too kaamæə
 The turtle was unable to climb to that top area. *kaamæə*
- TS 22 *pòoŋbooŋ daa jáaŋ pjàow k^haaŋjá .*
 (My) stomach ache has been cured. *kaaŋja*

³³ In OR 9 and OR 16, *kaa 1* is the final *kaa*; the *kaa* earlier in the sentence is *kaa2* 'together.'

TS	38	ʔàabaa ʃii kaatʃanə?	.
		Mother is dead!	kaatʃáʔnə?
MB	4	lakaan bàa tùu wàa kaajèe	.
		(He) was not willing to do any work at all.	kaajèe
MB	28	jào də jàa màaŋ pjó? kaʔtʃ ^{hi} i.. jèe	.
		And then the spirit disappeared.	káʔtʃ ^{hi} ijèe
MB	32	hæəŋ caajlaa piijao aŋbaa nə? .	
		aŋboŋ ʔuəm bàa ʔíi kaŋjèe	
		Since that time, the father and mother did not scold (him) again.	kanjèe
DB	11	baak ^h aew bàa kjàa cèeŋ káa	.
		Mr.Khiew didn't hear clearly.	kaa

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

The eighteen occurrences of *kaa1* are spread throughout their respective discourses. The majority (9 out of 18) occur in pre–peak episodes, but there are also instances of *kaa1* in the orientation (3 occurrences), peak (3 occurrences), peak' (1 occurrence) post peak episode (1 occurrence), and conclusion (1 occurrence) slots. There is a single instance of *kaa1* being found in an episode juncture. This distribution, coupled with *kaa1*'s semantic domain, indicates that *kaa1* operates more on the sentence level.

Variable group 2: Transitivity

Transitivity rankings for the non–quotation *kaa1* sentences range from 7 (two occurrences) to 1 (two occurrences), with an average of 3.36. These relatively low transitivity scores are not surprising, given the stative nature of *kaa1*–containing sentences—i.e., very few actions are taking place.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

It is interesting to note that, despite the relative high frequency with which this particle occurs in the folktale corpus, there are no instances of its use in a multi-clausal sentence.

Variable group 4: Quote/non quote material

kaa1 is found in both quote (4 occurrences) and non-quote (14 occurrences) sentences.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non-experiencer

kaa1 may be used by experiencers and non-experiencers alike.

**4.4.7 *kaa2* (kaa ~ kaan ~ kan ~ ká?)
joint action**

kaa2 is distinct from *kaa1* on several points. Semantically, it indicates that the action was carried out by two or more participants—even if those participants are not explicit in the sentence. In terms of constituent ordering, *kaa2* occurs earlier in the particle cluster than *kaa1*, as evidenced in OR 9 and OR 16, where the two co-occur.

(4.32)

- CO 26 ts^haan nîi t^hungāa næ? dʉŋ jào lák .
 hum kaʔjoo
 We people live together and need to love each káʔjoo
 other, you know.
- OR 9 cáa jàakee maŋ jèet mi kuut^həə jèe .
 juum aŋluu ləəgaakaa
 Then both children, well, every time were able to kaaluuləə
 return home. gaakaa
- OR 16 jàakee maŋ jèet mi bàa [ʉəj .
 kaaluuləətookaa jèe
 The two children were unable to return together. kaaluuləə
 tookaa jèe
- OR 26 cáa ʔəə k^hən ʔəə jào ts^haan aŋcaa .

		ap̩pa̩ŋ maŋ j̩eet mi aŋcam gaakaaj̩e	
		When they arrived, the two rich people were able	gaakaaj̩e
		to remember.	
PB	17	jooŋ hæŋ naŋ kaŋj̩e	.
		They were asking each other,	kaŋj̩e
PB	39	lam kaalæen naowaa	.
		(They) carried (him) away.	kaalæen
			naowaa
TS	7	m̩i i t̩ ^h ɔ̩ t̩æ h̩j̩a a k̩ ^h æ̩ .	
		kanlæet̩ ^h i j̩aŋ	
		They arrived at the place to cut firewood.	kanlæet̩ ^h i i j̩
			àŋ

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

Six out of seven *kaa2*-containing sentences occur in pre-peak episodes, with two of those occurrences coming at episode junctures. There is one instance of *kaa2* occurring in a conclusion. This distribution, coupled with *kaa2*'s semantic domain, indicates that *kaa2* operates more on the sentence level.

Variable group 2: Transitivity

Transitivity scores for the *kaa2* sentences range from 2 to 7, with an average transitivity of 4.83. Removing OR 32 from the calculations (as it is a sentence of negation) would raise the transitivity average to 5.4. In any event, most *kaa2* sentences are mid-range in transitivity.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

Only one of the seven *kaa2* sentences contain more than one clause. CO 52, which comprises an audience-directed command at the conclusion of a story, contains two clauses separated by *jao*.

Variable group 4: Quote/non-quote material

All seven *kaa2* occurrences are found in non-quote material. The main language assistant for this project contends that it is not “popular” to use *kaa2* in quotations or everyday conversation.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non experiencer

The evidence from the quote/non-quote variable suggests that *kaa2* represents something of a non-experiencer statement. That is, the individual telling the story does not include him/herself in its telling. By contrast, the particle *k^huu*, which occurs in a first person narration of a near-collision with a drunk walking on the road, is used when the narrator is speaking as a member of the group which was involved in the original event.³⁴

**4.4.7.1 *laŋkaʔ* (*laŋkaʔ* ~ *laŋkaa*)
joint action**

Like *kaa2*, *laŋkaʔ* indicates joint action. According to one language assistant, *laŋkaʔ* works as an indivisible unit. Nonetheless, it is not readily apparent why *kaa2* would be used in any given sentence instead of *laŋkaʔ*, and vice-versa. Indeed, in the one cloze exercise sentence involving *laŋkaʔ*, only one respondent guessed *laŋkaʔ*, while two others wrote *kaŋjèe* (which, presumably, carries the joint action sense of *kaa2*).

(4.33)

- CO 5 aŋdàa məən jaʔjèa plòŋ ʃān .
 laŋkaʔtʃ^hiʔ
 At first they helped each other find fish diligently. laŋkaʔtʃ^hii
- CO 9 wàŋ jào jètmiʔ pèəŋ laŋkaʔtʃ^hiʔ .
 jèe

³⁴ “The Drunk.” written by Moon Puikham. is not included in the folktale corpus.

- When they had quit, then those two divided [the *lan̩kaʔ tʃʰii*
fish].
jèe
- CW 17 *nik^h à m g a a j n f i j u u n .*
lan̩káʔpáʔjáʔdèe
So now let's get married! *lan̩kaʔ*
páʔjáʔdèe
- PB 34 *cáa naan lan̩kaanaowaa kasəəj ʔuu .*
Then they asked each other–part.–the monkeys: *lan̩kaa*
naoʔwaa
- PB 41 *lam kaʔ lææ cáa naan .*
lan̩kaʔlææ tʃʰii jèe
(When they) carried him then they asked each *lan̩kaʔlææ*
other again. *tʃʰii jèe*
- ST 8 *jàakee pòŋ^hnaa pòopàa ʔuu huu .*
hmjaan lùujao háw lan̩kaatʃʰii
The buffalo boys saw it and they shouted out *lan̩kaatʃʰii*
together.

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

Five of the six *lan̩kaʔ*-containing sentences occur in pre-peak episodes, with three of those occurrences coming at episode junctures. The remaining occurrence is at peak.

Variable group 2: Transitivity

lan̩kaʔ-containing sentences post transitivity scores ranging from 4 to 8, with an mid-range average of 4.6.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

Two of the six *lan̩kaʔ*-containing sentences are multiclausal, with *luujao* and *caa* serving as conjunctions.

Variable group 4: Quote/non-quote material

One of the six occurrences is in a quotation; the remainder are non-quote sentences. This is the only observable difference between *laŋka?* and *kaa2*; the latter only occurs in non-quote material.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non-experiencer

laŋka? may be used by experiencers and non-experiencers alike.

4.4.8 *laa1* completion

Like *lææ*, the particle *laa* illustrates some of the challenges involved in understanding Bisu particles. Throughout the thirteen folktales, there are thirty-four instances of particles involving the basic phonemes of *laa*. Nonetheless, in discussions with native speakers, it has become apparent that not all *laa* are created equal. In fact, in this corpus there are eleven subgroups of *laa*-like particles, encompassing a wide range of connotations, including negation, completion, and benefactive, among others.

The most frequent of the *laa* particles, *laa1* occurs in six sentences. The main language assistant for this research contends that *laa1* carries a sense of completion, as manifest in example set 4.34:

(4.34)

- DB 15 hik^{hám} puukaew juum súuŋ maŋ kjàan .
 jáo cii hàwháw laapaanòo
 At that point, Uncle Kaew the owner of the house laapaanòo
 heard and suddenly yelled out:
- DB 21 bàa caaŋ laa .
 It's over! laa
- MB 30 juum wəə k^{həə} ?æ jao jaŋ miiməən .
 laa tʃ^{hiijèe}
 When they returned to the house, then he was laatʃ^{hiijèe}
 good.
- PB 5 hæŋjéecáa màamàamámáa sùuk^{hòo} .

- námpla? k^hlaaj jào sùuk^hòò jàaŋ
~~mæn~~ laatʃ^hii.. jèe
 After that, he truly planted cucumbers and melons laatʃ^hiijèe
 and then those cucumbers were good.
- PB 23 jòocáa t^hùu màaŋ hmjaaŋ laats^hijèe .
 And then one person saw him. laatʃ^hiijèe
- CO 10 cáa p^hi k^hàm næʔtʃ^hiimâa taŋhaa .
 tsan laats^hijèe
 Then Grandmother Kham got greedy. laatʃ^hiijèe

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

Five of the six incidences (the quotation is the single exception) of *laa* cited above occur at episode boundaries. The significance of this discourse role is augmented by one language assistant's contention that, in every place where *laa* and *tʃ^hiijèe* co-occur, *laa* could be deleted without affecting sentence grammaticality. This claim is substantiated by the cloze exercise, in which respondents substituted non-*laa*-containing particle clusters in seven of ten slots. One would suspect that *laa* could also be deleted in the single sentence where it co-occurs with *paanòò*, inasmuch as *paanòò* and *tʃ^hiijèe* are somewhat interchangeable (see section 4.4.2).

Thus, *laa* would appear to have something of a redundant function in sentences containing other completive markers. This apparent redundancy, coupled with the frequent use of *laa* at episode boundaries, may point to a discourse level function, although additional data would be required to confirm this.

Variable group 2: Transitivity

The five non-quotation sentences above have an average transitivity of 3.75. This relatively low transitivity rank is not surprising, given the nature of the verbs contained in these sentences. Additional data would be required to determine whether

there is a consistent correlation between the use of *laa* and low sentence transitivity. Nonetheless, on the basis of the data at hand, it is plausible to suggest that *laa* is used to indicate completion in low-transitivity situations, while *tʃ^hii* is used in sentences of higher transitivity.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

Three of the six *laa1* sentences contain more than one clause. The conjunction *jao* ‘then’ appears between the first and second clause of all three sentences. There is no apparent correlation between the use of *laa1* and sentence complexity.

Variable group 4: Quote/non-quote material

Only one out of the six *laa1* sentences contains a quotation.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non-experiencer

laa1 may be used by experiencers and non-experiencers alike.

4.4.9 *laa2* negation

laa2 is distinct from *laa1* on several points. First, *laa2* is connected with negation, consistently co-occurring with the pre-verbal negator *bâa*, while *laa1* never co-occurs with negative elements. Second, *laa1* consistently occurs pre-*tʃ^hii*, while *laa2* is one of the few particles which occurs post-*tʃ^hii*. Third, while *laa1* has only been found once in quotations, four out of the five occurrences of *laa2* are within quotations. Finally, the same language assistant who claimed that *laa1* could be deleted from a sentence without affecting grammaticality said that the absence of *laa2* from the sentences in example set 4.35 would damage grammaticality.

(4.35)

AK	28	namʃaa bàa tʃàa bùu tʃ ^h ilá	.
		"It stinks and won't be delicious at all."	tʃ ^h iilaa
CK	29	cáa bàa ʔũu laajèe	.
		But he did not laugh.	laajèe
PB	8	ʔəə gaa sùuk ^h òò námpla? níi bàa .	
		gaa kòonj càa tʃ ^h iilaa	
		"Oh! I won't be able to sell these cucumbers and tʃ ^h iilaa	
		melons!"	
PB	36	bàa tsàa bàa tǎŋ bùu tʃ ^h iilaamá?	.
		"(The cucumbers and melons) won't be delicious!"	tʃ ^h iilaamá?
FS	7	bàa tàə tʃ ^h iilaanə?	.
		"I'm not going to live much longer."	tʃ ^h iilaanə?

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

Three of the five *laa2* sentences occur in pre-peak episodes, with the remaining two occurring at peak. The *laa2* containing sentences do not occur at episode junctures, nor do they contain any other elements that would indicate prominence. *laa2* thus seems to operate more on the sentence level.

Variable group 2: Transitivity

The one occurrence of *laa2* which is not in a quotation has a transitivity sum of 2, a low number which is not unexpected, given the negative sense of the particle.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

Only one of the five *laa2*-containing sentences contains more than one clause. The two clauses both contain negated verbal adjectives, and do not contain any intervening conjunctions (such as *jao*). There is no apparent correlation between the use of *laa2* and sentence complexity.

Variable group 4: Quote/non-quote material

Four of the five *laa2* occurrences are within quotations.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non-experiencer

laa2 may be used by experiencers and non-experiencers, although it is more likely to be used by non-experiencers.

4.4.10 *laa3* ongoing positive process

laa3 reflects neither completion nor negation. Rather, it indicates an ongoing positive process. All of the examples of this particle in the folktales relate to a character becoming wealthy. A more dynamic translation of these sentences might be “he became rich and then continued getting richer.” This definitely reflects the Bisu view on wealth, living as they do in a cultural setting where it often seems that “the rich get richer and the poor get poorer.” The removal of *laa3* from any of the sentences in example 4.36 would result in a change of meaning—from increasing in wealth to merely being wealthy—but would not adversely affect grammaticality.

According to the main language assistant for this project, *laa3* can also be used for an increase in height. Ongoing negative processes, such as becoming poorer and poorer, or thinner and thinner, cannot take *laa3*.

(4.36)

CK	43	hæŋjèe caanlaatʃ ^h ii	.
		After that, he was rich.	laatʃ ^h ii
PB	25	náa baacǝ mæhaaj caalaaʔæ	.
		"How did you get rich?"	laa ʔæ
PB	26	ʔoo nǝ? gaa hjaa bjàaj caalaaʔæ	.
		"Ohh--I cleared a hill field (and got) rich!"	laa ʔæ
PB	27	hjaa bjàaj sùuk ^h òò námpla? k ^h laaj .	
		caalaaʔæ	
		"After (I) cleared the field, (I) planted cucumbers	laa ʔæ
		and melons--got rich."	
FS	17	nòŋ hæ caapáaŋ lanáocá	.
		After that he became very rich.	laa náocá

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

The two non–quotation *laa3* sentences occur as the concluding sentence of their respective folktales. The three quotation–containing *laa3* sentences occur during the transition between the first and second cycles of “Poor Boy.” This, coupled with *laa3*’s close semantic connection to an increase in a given attribute, would argue for *laa3* playing more of a sentence–level role.

Variable group 2: Transitivity

The two non–quotation *laa3* sentences each have a transitivity score of 3. This low reading is not surprising, given the fact that the predicate of all of these sentences is *caa* ‘to have,’ a word which, in idiomatic Bisu (and Thai), serves as a verbal adjective meaning ‘wealthy.’

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

Only one *laa3*–containing sentence, PB 54, involves multiple clauses. Both of the clauses in that sentence feature action verbs, but do not contain intervening conjunctions (such as *jao*). Thus, there is no apparent correlation between the use of *laa3* and sentence complexity.

Variable group 4: Quote/non–quote material

laa3 is used in both quote containing and non–quote containing sentences.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non–experiencer

laa3 may be used by experiencers and non–experiencers alike.

4.4.11 *laa4* (*làa~lá?~laaŋ~laa~làaŋ*) benefactive³⁵

There are six incidences of *laa4* in the folktales at hand. In all of these sentences, a completed or contemplated action has or will have impacted one of the interlocutors. That impact is assumed to be beneficial unless *laa4* is followed in the particle cluster by *jàa2* (section 4.5.1), as in three of the six sentences in example 4.37 which indicates a negative impact.³⁶ *laa4* is one of the few particles that may occur both sentence finally and between the clauses of a multi-clausal sentence (section 4.1.7.3).

(4.37)

- | | | | |
|----|----|---|-----------|
| CK | 16 | ʔàaboŋ na? tɔɔj làapao | . |
| | | "Release your father, o.k.?" | làapao |
| CK | 32 | gaa k ^h àm ʃǎaj làapaana? | . |
| | | "I will go search for gold, o.k.?" | làapaaná? |
| OR | 31 | k ^h ùu hòonuuŋ jàaŋ náj háæmè? t ^h aw . | |
| | | pìi laʔtʃ ^h i i jàaŋ | |
| | | "Dog in a steamed leaf bundle like you once gave láʔtʃ ^h i i | |
| | | us." | jàaŋ |
| TD | 15 | gá hoopòŋ niimàŋ na? tsàaj jao . | |
| | | cíikúu níʔtʃ ^h amaa gaa mànpoŋ næ? | |
| | | núuŋtʃ ^h úu nú tʃ ^h ao laaŋjáaŋ | |
| | | "If I eat this deer, then this thorn will pierce my laaŋjàaŋ | |
| | | mouth and neck." | |
| TD | 17 | níi naŋ gaa naa tsàa làaŋjāo . | |
| | | cíikúu gaa lak ^h úu tʃ ^h ao | |
| | | lælatʃ ^h iníŋ ts ^h æ cák ʔook | |
| | | luulaapoonoo | |
| | | "If you want to eat me, pull out that thorn that luulaa | |
| | | pierced my foot, please." | poonoo |

³⁵ Although there are several variants of the benefactive *laa*, the most common of these containing a low tone (three out of six occurrences), the designation "*laa4*" is employed here for greater referential ease in comparative discussions.

³⁶ Bedouin (1991a: 9) says *laa4* "is obligatory to express a relation between 'direct' persons (1st and 2nd) excluding from the speech the 'indirect' person (3rd)." In other words, one of the interlocutors. He does not mention the beneficial connotations of this relationship.

DB 22 t̪ə̀j l̪aŋjaa
 "I've been hit!"

.
 l̪aŋjaa

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

Three of the six *laa4* sentences occur pre–peak, two at peak, and one post–peak. The *laa4*–containing sentences do not occur at episode junctures, nor do they contain any other elements that would indicate prominence. *laa4* thus seems to operate more on the sentence level.

Variable group 2: Transitivity

As all of the *laa4* sentences are contained in quotations, they were not scored for transitivity.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

Only two of the six *laa4* sentences contain more than one clause. TD 15 and TD 17 are typical Bisu if–then clauses, in that no lexical equivalent of ‘if’ is specified. Instead, the relationship is implied by clausal context.³⁷ The two clauses in TD 15 are separated by the conjunction *jao*, while TD 17 employs *l̪aŋjao*.

Variable group 4: Quote/non–quote material

All of the *laa4* containing sentences occur in quotations. One language assistant asserted that *laa4* cannot occur outside of a quotation, inasmuch as one of the interlocutors must benefit from the stated action.

³⁷ When pressed to include some sort of overt ‘if’ word in a sentence, Bisu language assistants invariably borrow the Thai/Northern Thai equivalent, *t^haa*. Bisu language assistants consistently included *t^haa* in their written Thai translations of sentences such as TD 30.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non-experiencer

This particle may only be used when one of the interlocutors is the beneficiary. As an example, one language assistant drew from the recent visit of an American educator interested in sponsoring Bisu youth through high school and college. Were this educator able to speak Bisu, she would have said to the youth, “I will seek scholarship help for Bisu young people *laa4 pananaa*.” Were she to inform a non-potential beneficiary of the project, she would not use *laa4*.

This type of particle is not unique to Bisu. Lahu (Tibeto-Burman, Yi-Burmese) features a particle of similar structure, *lâ*, which likewise is used only when a “non-3rd person” (i.e., an interlocutor) benefits (Matisoff 1973: 325).

**4.4.12 *nææ* (*nææ* ~ *næ?* ~ *næ?*)
end of quotation marker**

nææ occurs nine times in the folktales at hand, making it one of the most frequently used particles. Although *nææ* occurs only at the end of quotations, the particle itself is considered to be outside of the quotation proper. As such, it is a signal from the narrator that the quotation has ended. Thus, in all the sentences in example set 4.38, all of the words and particles preceding *nææ* are part of the quotation.

(4.38)

- | | | |
|----|---|------------------------------|
| PB | 18 jɔɔ kəəŋ wii ?ææ waa næ? | . |
| | “Well, where are we going to throw (him)?” | wa? næ? |
| PB | 42 cəəkəəŋ wii lææ wa?næ? | . |
| | “Where should (we) throw (him)?” | wa? næ? |
| FS | 7 bàa tææ tʃ ^h iilaanæ? | . |
| | “I’m not going to live much longer.” | tʃ ^h iilaa
næ? |
| OR | 14 nikám wəənææ tʃ ^h i?úkóŋ tɔɔj læw . | |
| | bàa pii luu læætɔɔ coo nææ | |
| | “This time take them to a far place to release them coo nææ | |

		and then don't let them be able to come back!"	
CK	17	ʔiiʃii tʃ ^h ææ k ^h aané?	.
		"(I) really have to urinate."	k ^h aa nǎ?
TD	22	cìikùu cák ʔoók pii jao saaj tsàa .	
		nææ	
		"(I will) pull the thorn out and then shortly eat that	nææ
		deer," (he thought).	
OR	24	ts ^h aaŋ aŋtùuk naa plòŋ ŋææ nǎæ .	.
		"(They) help poor people."	ŋææ nǎæ
TS	24	ʔàabaa sùuk ^h ajlòók gaaj luun .	
		tʃ ^h ánǎ?	
		"Mother brought some suukhajlook fruit."	tʃ ^h á? nǎ?
TS	38	ʔàabaa ʃii kaatʃanǎ?	.
		"Mother is dead!"	kaatʃá? nǎ?

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

Eight out of nine occurrences of *nææ* are found in pre-peak episodes. *nææ* never occurs at peak, which may be indicative of the trend toward shortening sentences at peak for dramatic effect. Indeed, the lack of *nææ* at peak may make the quotations seem more vivid, the shift to drama discussed by Longacre (1996: 42). The remaining example of *nææ* occurs at peak, in the final, dramatic sentence (TS 76) of "Turtle and Squirrel." Its occurrence in that sentence seems to be the most efficient, dramatic way to make clear the fact that "Mother is dead!" is the shocked response of the squirrel children, not the words of the narrator.

Variable group 2: Transitivity

As this particle is used in conjunction with quotations, transitivity ranking does not apply.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

Only two of the nine *nææ*-containing sentences contain more than one clause. The two clauses in OR 28 are joined by *læw*, while TD 44 utilizes *jao*.

Variable group 4: Quote/non–quote material

nææ is only found at the conclusion of quotations.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non–experiencer

nææ is used only by narrators reporting the speech of a character.

**4.4.13 ɭùɰɭ (ɭùɰ~ɭɰɰ ~ɭùʔ) ‘come out’
(quotation formula)**

With thirteen occurrences in the written folktales, ɭùɰɭ has a mid–range frequency. It is also the most common of the ɭùɰ variations, which include ɭùʔ, ɭùɰ and ɭɰɰ. Several Bisu language assistants describe ɭùɰɭ as being similar to the Thai ʔɔɔk *maa*. ‘come out.’

Nearly half (6 of 13) of the ɭùɰɭ–containing sentences in the folktale corpus introduce quotations, and could be translated, “[The character] spoke out and said...” In such situations, ɭùɰɭ must be preceded by a verb such as *mâaj* ‘speak’ . *uu j* ‘speak’ or *cîi* ‘tell.’ As might be expected, ɭùɰɭ never co–occurs with *ŋææ* , which marks the conclusion of quotations.

The seven ɭùɰɭ–containing sentences which do not involve quotations generally have a component of motion. In non–quotation cases, verbs such as *tɔɔj* ‘release’ , *ʔɔɔk* ‘remove’, *klaan* ‘fall’ or *ʃaa tsâa* ‘go scavenging’ precede ɭùɰɭ.

It would thus appear that the ‘come out’ aspect of ɭùɰɭ is not independent; ɭùɰɭ amplifies verbs, but does not replace them. According to the main language assistant for this project, the deletion of ɭùɰɭ in many of these sentences would not affect sentence meaning but would leave the sentence somewhat “unbalanced” or “lacking in weight.”

Although *lùu* may be used in isolation, it is more often paired with the completive markers *tʃ^hi* (eight occurrences) or *paanòɔ* (two occurrences).

(4.39)

- AK 19 kaʔtaʃ maŋ ci i lùu paanòɔ .
The rabbit said: . lùu paanòɔ
- CK 18 cáa aŋjãa màaŋ tɔɔj lùutʃ^hiijèe .
Then the child released him to go. lùu
tʃ^hiijèe
- CO 15 pèeŋ pèeŋ jào p^hi. k^hàm nàeʔtʃ^hima? .
uuj lùutʃ^hiijèe
When they had finished dividing, Grandmother lùu
Kham spoke and said: tʃ^hiijèe
- CW 14 jàojàa juum p^hàoluu j k^hàabaajàa .
màaŋ naʔ máaj luutʃ^hii
And then he returned home and told the woman. luutʃ^hii
- CW 22 aŋjãa màaŋ naa hùun dùuj ʔɔɔk pɔɔj .
lùu
He ran and dug up and took out and laid out the lùu
child
- OR 9 cáa jàakee maŋ jèet mi kuut^həe jèe .
juum aŋluu lægaakaa
Then both children, well, every time were able to kaaluulæe
return home. gaakaa
- OR 16 jàakee maŋ jèet mi bàa ʃùuj .
kaaluulæetɔɔkaajèe
The two children were unable to return together. kaaluulæe
tɔɔkaajèe
- OR 33 cáa aŋbaa aŋʃùu máa hæmæ .
hmjaan jao aŋwàj jèe juum ʔɔɔk hæ
plæk klaan luutʃ^hii
Then when the new mother saw that, then she lutʃ^hii
quickly jumped out of the house and fell to the
ground.
- ST 3 ʔùuhoŋ taʔsæe niitɔɔŋ ʃaa tsàa .
ʃàa taŋ mlàŋ jào nuŋbaatòŋ
nàatuŋ niitɔɔŋ ʃaa tsàa luutʃ^hii
ŋæe
The turtle had looked for food and drink on one luutʃ^hii ŋæe
mountain for a long time and in his heart wanted to
go look for food on another side (to go to another
mountain across a field).

- ST 5 hik^hàm nukhuuŋ sooŋ too kjàan jào .
 làamaj hæə máaj kaap pìijao ?acām
 màaj lùutʃ^hi
 At that time two swans heard and had him grasp in lùutʃ^hi
 his mouth a piece of wood held in their feet and
 another thing, they told him:
- ST 10 hik^hàm ?ùuhooŋ maŋ kjàan jao ciin .
 lùu paanòo
 Then the turtle heard it and said: lùu paanòo
- TD 11 cáa hoopòoŋ màaŋ màaj lùu tʃ^hiijèe .
 Then the deer told (him): lùu
 tʃ^hiijèe
- TS 21 k^hòoŋ k^hæə luuumaat^hàŋ pækklaan .
 lùutʃ^hiijèe
 (When they) almost arrived back at the village, lùu
 (the squirrel) jumped out. tʃ^hiijèe

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

Nine of the thirteen occurrences of *lùu* (69.23%) are found in pre-peak episodes, with four of those occurrences coming at episode boundaries. There is one occurrence in the first sentence (episode boundary) of a peak, and two occurrences at peak'. In one example, ST 6, *lùu* occurs in the orientation stage.³⁸

lùu is used in relation to quotations five times in pre-peak episodes, and only once at peak, following the pattern mentioned in 4.4.12 of quotation formula being mostly absent at peak to heighten the vividness of the drama.

Variable group 2: Transitivity

Transitivity scores for *lùu*-containing sentences range from 2 to 10 (the 2 stemming from an unrealized goal), with an average score of 6.3. *lùu*-containing sentences thus boast relatively high transitivity scores.

³⁸ ST3 is quite unique, inasmuch as *lùu* is followed by the completive particle *tʃ^hii* and the stative marker *ɔæ*, an unusual combination.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

Seven of the *lùɛl*-containing sentences involve more than one clause. With the exception of CW 16, these are all linked by *jao*, the most common clausal conjoiner. CW 16 seems exceptional on other counts as well, inasmuch as *lùɛl* is used clause–finally on both clauses of the sentences, the first occurrence making the otherwise unattested phonological modification to *lùɛj*.³⁹

Variable group 4: Quote/non–quote material

lùɛl is not found in quotations.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non–experiencer

According to the main language assistant for this project, *lùɛl* can only be used by third–party narrators, an assertion which follows from the lack of *lùɛl* occurrences in quotations.

4.4.14 *ʔææ* affirmative marker

ʔææ occurs six times in the folktale corpus, always in quotations. According to several language assistants, *ʔææ* shows that the action described truly did take place. *ʔææ* cannot be used in irrealis sentences. Despite the seeming completive aspect of this particle, the more frequently found completive particle *tʃ^hi i* could not be substituted for *ʔææ*. Again, this type of particle is not unique to Bisu. Lahu displays two particles, *à* and *yò*, which have a similar role in asserting the truth of an event (Matisoff 1973: 333, 367).

³⁹ Perhaps the final *j* represents the remains of *jao*, compressed due to the drama of the moment; CW 28 marks the beginning of the peak of that story.

(4.40)

- PB 25 náa baacǽə mǽəhaaj caa laa?ǽə .
 "How did you get rich?" laa ?ǽə
- PB 26 ?oo nə? gaa hjaa bjàaj caa laa?ǽə .
 "Ohh—I cleared a hill field (and got) rich!" laa ?ǽə
- PB 27 hjaa bjàaj sùuk^hòò námpla? k^hlaaj .
 caalaa?ǽə
 "After (I) cleared the field, (I) planted cucumbers laa ?ǽə
 and melons—got rich."
- PB 28 caalaa?ǽə kaasəej uuloon ɔɔŋ jáo .
 ʃii kǽəkǽə lǽə ?ǽə
 "And a group of monkeys came in and I acted as if lǽə ?ǽə
 I was dead."
- TD 10 baacǽə háj lǽə ?ǽə .
 "What have you gone and done?" lǽə ?ǽə
- TD 12 cǽikùu nàŋ lǽə ?ǽə .
 "I went and stepped on a thorn" lǽə ?ǽə

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

All six occurrences of ?ǽə are found in pre–peak episodes. None occur at episode boundaries.

Variable group 2: Transitivity

As this particle is used only in quotations, transitivity ranking does not apply.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

Only one multi–clausal sentence is found for ?ǽə. As elsewhere, jáo is used to join the clauses.

Variable group 4: Quote/non–quote material

?ǽə occurs only in quotations.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non-experiencer

?ææ is used only by experiencers, as evidenced by the fact that it occurs only in quotations in the folktale corpus and by the answers to the question “Where did Somchai go?” shown in 4.41 and 4.42:

(4.41) (Answered by Somchai’s mother)

tʃ^heŋ maj ?ææn
Chiang Mai go
(He) went to Chiang Mai.

(4.42) (Answered by Somchai)

tʃ^heŋ maj ?ææn ?ææ
Chiang Mai go pt
(I) went to Chiang Mai.

4.4.15 k^haalaj (k^haalaj ~ laj)
existential marker

k^haalaj occurs three times in two folktales, while the derivative laj appears once in one folktale. In all of those instances, these particles occur when principal characters are being introduced. k^haalaj is always preceded by the existential verb *caa* ‘have’.⁴⁰

(4.43)

- AK 3 mùŋk^hii jàamlææŋ həə lánhúaj wə? .
laŋʃjaam t^hùu maŋ cáak^haalaj
When it was almost dark, at the stream, there was k^haalaj
an otter.
- AK 8 ʃaaplææn lajáo ?acām ka?taŋ t^hùu .
maŋ cáak^haalaj
Early in the morning, there was a rabbit. k^haalaj
- DB 3 k^haatæə wəə ts^haaŋ sooŋ k^hùn .
caak^haalaj

⁴⁰ Like many other Asian languages, Bisu utilizes ‘have’ at the outset of stories to mark existence, much as English uses phrases such as “There one was a ___.”

A long time ago there were two people. $k^h a a l a j$
 ST 2 $k^h a t a e \quad ? u u h o o \eta \quad t^h u u \quad m a \eta \quad n a e ? .$
 $n u k h u u \eta \quad s o o \eta \quad t o o \quad c a a \quad l a a j$
 A long time ago there was a turtle and two swans. $l a a j$

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

The occurrences of $k^h a a l a j$ in DB 3 and ST 2 are found in the first sentence (aperture) after the title, and are thus part of the orientation section. The two occurrences in AK appear in the initial sentences of pre-peak episodes wherein major participants are introduced for the first time.

Those folktales which do not use $k^h a a l a j$ to introduce main characters typically end introductory sentences with $c a a$ ‘have’ followed by the particle $j e e$.

$k^h a a l a j$ and $j e e$ never co-occur, evidence that there are two ways in which main characters may be introduced. The decision to utilize $k^h a a l a j$ instead of $c a a j e e$ seems to be primarily stylistic.

Variable group 2: Transitivity

All four $k^h a a l a j$ -containing sentences received transitivity scores of 3, a low mark which is not unexpected given the existential nature of the sentences involved.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

All four $k^h a a l a j$ -containing sentences contain one sentence-initial temporal phrase and one clause. One $k^h a a l a j$ -containing sentence includes a locative phrase.

Variable group 4: Quote/non-quote material

All of the occurrences of $k^h a a l a j$ are in non-quote material.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non-experiencer

Additional data is required to confirm whether *k^haalaj* may be used only by non-experiencers, the definite trend in the folktales at hand.

4.4.16 *jàa*1 (*jàa* ~ *jàaŋ* ~ *ja*) completive

There are five occurrences of *jàa*1 in the folktales at hand. *jàa*1 may occur in isolation, or in conjunction with other particles. *jàa*1 is somewhat unique in that it is among the nine particles which may follow *tʃ^hii*. According to the main language assistant for this project, *jàa*1 bears a completive sense, emphasizing that the action truly did take place.

(4.44)

- CW 15 *gaa waa naaŋ máa láatʃ^hiimææ haaj .*
jàa
 "I did what you told me to do." *jàa*
- CW 16 *gaa aŋjâa aŋlak maŋ naʔ dùuj .*
p^huum jâa
 "I've dug a hole and buried my beloved child." *jâa*
- TS 7 *mîit^hôô tææ hjâa k^hææ .*
kanlæætʃ^hijâaŋ
 They arrived at the place to cut firewood. *kanlæætʃ^hii*
jâaŋ
- TS 22 *pòŋbòŋ daa jâaŋ pjòow k^haaŋja .*
 "(My) stomach ache has been cured." *kaaŋja*
- TS 25 *p^hælôôŋ jâaŋ t^hôôk .*
kanlùutʃ^hijâaŋ
 (They) watched as (she) dumped out her shoulder *tʃ^hiijâaŋ*
 bag.

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

Two occurrences of *jàa*1 are pre-peak, with two coming at peak. *jàa*1 occurs once at an episode boundary. Thus, *jàa*1 would appear to function chiefly on the sentence level.

Variable group 2: Transitivity

The two *jàa1* sentences which do not contain quotations post relatively high transitivity scores of 6 and 7, respectively. This is not unexpected, given the completive nature of the particle.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

All of the occurrences of *jàa1* are found in single clause sentences, although CW 29 and TS 49 contain clauses embedded as noun phrases, while CW 31 contains serial verbs.

Variable group 4: Quote/non-quote material

Three of the five occurrences of *jàa1* are found in quotations.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non-experiencer

jàa1 may be used by experiencers and non-experiencers alike.

4.5 Less frequent particles

This section examines particles found 1–3 times in the folktale corpus.

4.5.1 *jàa2* (*jaa* ~ *jàaη*) negative benefit

jàa2 occurs three times in the written folktales. Like *jàa1*, *jàa2* is one of the few particles which may follow *tʃ^hii*. Nonetheless, *jàa2* carries a distinct semantic component, indicating real or potential negative benefit to one of the interlocutors. In all of the sentences in example 4.45, *jàa2* is preceded either immediately or at a short distance by *laa4*, a particle which, in the absence of *jàa2*, indicates positive benefit (section 4.4.11).

(4.45)

- OR 31 k^hùu hòonuu jàaŋ náj háæmø? t^haw .
 piì laʔtʃ^hiì jàaŋ
 "Dog in a steamed leaf bundle like you once gave láʔtʃ^hiìjàaŋ
 us."
- TD 15 gá hoopòoŋ niimàŋ naʔ tsàaj jao .
 ciikùu níʔtʃ^hamaa gaa mànpoŋ næʔ
 núuŋtʃùu nú tʃ^hao laaŋjáaŋ
 "If I eat this deer, then this thorn will pierce my laaŋjáaŋ
 mouth and neck."
- DB 22 tùuj làaŋjaa .
 "I've been hit!" làaŋjaa

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

The three occurrences are found in peak, pre-peak, and peak' positions, respectively. None occur at episode boundaries, something which is not unexpected, given that this particle occurs in conversational contexts.

Variable group 2: Transitivity

As this particle is used only in quotations, transitivity ranking does not apply.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

One *jàa2*-containing sentence is biclausal, joined by *jao*.

Variable group 4: Quote/non-quote material

jàa2 occurs only in quotations.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non-experiencer

jàa2 occurs only in quotations in which one of the interlocutors will receive negative benefit from the contemplated event.

4.5.2 *jaa3* result of action

jaa3 co-occurs with *jèe* in all three of its occurrences. In this it contrasts with *jaa1* and *jaa2*, which never co-occur with *jèe*. In addition, the semantic connotations of *jaa3* indicate that the state described in the sentence is the result of the action carried out in the preceding sentence.

(4.46)

FM	7	anjàa ʔǎu kʰòo jaajèe	.
		(Until) the two children grew up.	jaajèe
TD	25	salop háa jaʔjèe	.
		(He) fainted.	jaajèe
TS	26	anj ^h ào ɛən jaajèe	.
		It was empty!	jaajèe

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

jaa3 occurs twice in pre-peak episodes and once at peak. It does not occur at any episode boundaries. All of the *jaa3* sentences do entail some sort of state or event which is predicated in the preceding sentence. It thus serve to “tie together” two sentences, in the action–result relationship described earlier.

Variable group 2: Transitivity

The three occurrences of *jaa3* carry transitivity scores of 4, 6, and 2, respectively, for an average of 4. These low to mid range scores are not unexpected, given the fact that the preceding sentence usually contains a stronger action to which the *jaa3* sentence alludes. The sentences preceding each of the *jaa3* sentences above have transitivity scores of 8, 5, and 6, respectively. Indeed, TD 25 “He fainted” actually refers to a string of events initiated two sentences prior by a sentence with a transitivity score of 10.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

All three occurrences involve single clause sentences. As mentioned previously, the *jaa3*-containing sentences are all closely linked to their respective preceding sentences in an action–result relationship.

Variable group 4: Quote/non-quote material

All three occurrences are in non-quote material. The main language assistant for this project maintains that *jaa3* is not likely to occur in quotations.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non-experiencer

The main language assistant for this project claims that *jaa3* occurs only in the words of a narrator, a conclusion which would be supported by the three non-quotation occurrences of *jaa3* in the folktale corpus.

4.5.3 *jàʔ* many

Like *jaa3*, *jàʔ* always co-occurs with *jèe*. *jàʔ* indicates that there are many of whatever is being described in the *jàʔ*-containing sentence. The fact of this abundance may or may not be indicated elsewhere in the sentence. In CO 12 and CO 13, for example, there is no other lexical item indicating quantity, while in CW 7 the adjective *laajlâaj*, literally ‘many, many,’ clarifies the matter long before *jàʔ* becomes involved.

(4.47)

- CO 12 *jaaŋ laʔkâa hæ aŋto o aŋhùu ææn .*
jaʔjèe
 All the large ones were in front of her. *jàʔjèe*
- CO 13 *jào p^hi .. ùp laʔkâa hæ lóŋtææ .*
aŋʔii ææn jaʔjèe
 And then in front of Grandmother Up, there were *jàʔjèe*
 only small fish.

CW 7 sɔɔŋ k^hùn aŋjâa aŋboŋ nəʔ dɔŋ .
 laajlâaj pii jaʔjèa
 The father and child lived together for many years. jáʔjèe

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

All three occurrences of *jáʔ* are found in pre–peak episodes, with no occurrences at episode junctures. These sentences all are somewhat stage–like, in that the overall situation is described. The semantic connotations of *jáʔ* thus indicate more of a sentence–level function.

Variable group 2: Transitivity

The transitivity scores of the three *jáʔ*–containing sentences are quite low—2, 2, and 3, respectively, for an average of 2.33. This is not unexpected, given the fact that *jáʔ* is associated with quantitative states rather than events.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

All of the *jáʔ*–containing sentences contain only one clause.

Variable group 4: Quote/non–quote material

None of the *jáʔ*–containing sentences involve quotations.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non–experiencer

The main language assistant for this project stated that “it is not popular” to use *jáʔ* in everyday conversations, a contention supported by the fact that *jáʔ* does not appear in any quotations in the folktale corpus. Thus, *jáʔ* is linked to non–experiencer, “narrator” speech.

4.5.4 *paanaa* (*paanaa* ~ *paana?*) agreement seeker

Occuring twice in the folktale corpus, *paanaa* attempts to evoke agreement from the listener. The main language assistant for this project claims that its function is similar to the Northern Thai *nêə*, which, in turn, is somewhat like the English tag “o.k.?” The speaker assumes that the listener will indeed agree to the proposed course of action; if the speaker believes that the listener may not agree, a stronger form, such as a command, will likely be employed.

(4.48)

CK	32	gaa k ^h àm ʃãaj làapaana?	.
		"I will go search for gold, o.k.?"	làapaaná?
PB	38	jáo dèw wii lææ paanaa	.
		"Let's go throw it away, o.k.?"	paanaa

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

The two occurrences of *paanaa* are found at peak and pre–peak, respectively. Neither are found at episode boundaries. The semantic nature of this particle would argue for more of a sentence–level function.

Variable group 2: Transitivity

As this particle is used in quotations, transitivity ranking does not apply.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

Both occurrences of *paanaa* are found in single clause sentences.

Variable group 4: Quote/non–quote material

paanaa occurs only in quotations.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non-experiencer

As *paanaa* is found only in quotations, and since it is seeking agreement from the listener, it necessarily is utilized only by interlocutors.

**4.5.5 *poonoo* (*poonoo* ~ *paanoo*)
agreement seeker**

Like *paanaa*, *poonoo* represents a mitigated positive command. It occurs twice in the written folktale corpus, as shown in example set 4.49:

(4.49)

CO	20	an̩ʃu̯ pə̯əŋ lə̯ʔpannoo	.
		"Let's divide those again."	lə̯ʔpannoo
TD	17	níi naŋ gaa naa tsàa làan̩jáo	.
		cìikùu gaa lak ^h ũu tʃ ^h ao	
		lələtʃ ^h iníŋ ts ^h æ cák ʔook	
		lũũlaapoonoo	
		"If you want to eat me, pull that thorn that pierced	lũũlaapoo
		my foot, please."	noo

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

The two sentences above occur at peak and pre-peak, respectively. The semantic connotations of this particle would argue for more of a sentence level role.

Variable group 2: Transitivity

As this particle is used only in quotations, transitivity ranking does not apply.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

CO 20 is monoclausal, while TD 17 features two clauses joined by *làan̩jao*.

Variable group 4: Quote/non-quote material

poonoo occurs only in quotations.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non-experiencer

As *poonoo* is found only in quotations, and since it is seeking agreement from the listener, it necessarily is utilized only by interlocutors.

4.5.6 *paanǎ?* self-oriented agreement

paanǎ? occurs only once in the corpus, but has a rather unique function. The one occurrence is found in a sentence wherein the main character is talking to himself, wondering what he should do next. He concludes that he should go clear a hillfield, utilizing *paanǎ?* to show that he is, essentially, seeking agreement with himself! In this regard, *paanǎ?* is similar to the Lahu particle *na*, which is used “merely in order to give expression to one’s inner uncertainty or feeling of curiosity” (Matisoff 1973: 375).

(4.50)

PB	4 haajwaa hjaa bjàaj læ paanǎ?	.
	"Better to go clear a hillfield."	paanǎ?

4.5.7 *paanadèo* group agreement seeker

Like *paanǎ?*, *paanadèo* occurs only once in the corpus, and indicates that a group decision is being made. In example 4.51, the monkeys are all running around urging each other to throw away an undesirable object. A more idiomatic English translation might read, “Let’s all go throw this thing away, o.k.?”

(4.51)

PB	14 wii læ paanadèo	.
	"Go throw it away!"	paanadèo

4.5.8 *nòɔ* negative agreement seeker

nòɔ is similar to *paana* in that it seeks agreement from the listener. Nonetheless, it is only used in a negative sense. That is, the speaker is urging the hearer to accept the validity of a negative proposition. *nòɔ* is thus similar to the English tag “you know” when used in a negative sense. *nòɔ* must always be preceded by a verb which is in turn preceded by the negation marker *bàa*, as seen in example 4.52:

(4.52)

- CO 21 *gaa lòɔŋtææ pèəŋ tʃ^hinìi bàa gaa .*
nòɔ
 “I divided them incorrectly, you know.” *nòɔ*
- DB 24 *cìi hàwháw gaa t^hùu maŋ bàa? āa .*
nòɔ
 (He) blurted out, “It’s not only me, you know!” *nòɔ*

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

In the examples cited here, *nòɔ* is found at peak’ and in a pre–peak episode. Neither occurrences come at episode boundaries. The semantic connotations of *nòɔ* would argue for more of a sentence–level function.

Variable group 2: Transitivity

As this particle is used in quotations, transitivity ranking does not apply.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

Both *nòɔ*–containing sentences are mono–clausal.

Variable group 4: Quote/non–quote material

nòɔ is found only in quotations.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non-experiencer

As *nɔɔ* is found only in quotations, and since it is seeking agreement from the listener, it necessarily is utilized by interlocutors.

4.5.9 *laalá?* agreement

In combination with *lá?*, *laaʔ* indicates that the speaker is agreeing to an action that will benefit the hearer. *lá?* may not occur in isolation, nor may it occur with other particles, making it something of a bound form here. The sole example of this particle in the folktale corpus follows:

(4.53)

TD 19 *tsʰalàa màaŋ háaŋjeccáa ʔóɔjhəə .*
ʔɔɔk laalá
 The tiger then said. "O.K., I'll agree to take it out." *laalá?*

4.5.10 *kanna* preference

kanna is found once in the folktales, and generally shows preference for one of two options. In example 4.54, the main character declares his disgust with what he thinks is a dead, rotting otter, at the same time that he spies preferable game—a rabbit:

(4.54)

AK 32 *laŋʃjaam pùu namàa bàa jũu kanna .*
 (I) don't want this rotten otter! *kanna*

kanna can be used in either a positive or negative sense. The particle itself does not contain a sense of emphasis or strength of emotion, elements which could be conveyed through intonation. A common daily usage of *kanna* would be in response to a question such as "Do you want to work for wages or for rice?" to which a Bisu

would typically reply “I want to work for rice *kanna*.” *kanna* must co-occur with a true verb of desire such as *juu* ‘want.’

4.5.11 *k^haa* implied request

Occurring only once in the folktales at hand, *k^haa* is used with requests that are cloaked as statements. Were one to say, “I’m hungry *k^haa*,” for example, the implication would be that the speaker wants the hearer to do something to remedy the situation. In example 4.55, a father, imprisoned in the female spirit’s house, makes a statement of biological necessity to his son. The implication is that the son (who is actually half-spirit) should temporarily release the father.

(4.55)

CK 17 ʔiiʃii tʃ^hææ k^haa náʔ

“(I) really have to urinate.”

k^haa náʔ

4.5.12 *pjaadèe* (*pjaadèe* ~ *páʔjáʔdèe*) propositive

Occurring three times in the folktale corpus, *pjaadèe* is an invitation that carries the sense of “Let’s go do this together, o.k.?” Both speaker and listener are to be included in the proposed activity. In this sense, it is similar to the Thai particle *náʔ*, used by Bisu language assistants in glossing these texts.

(4.56)

CW 17 nɪk^hàm gaaj níi juun laŋkáʔ.

páʔjáʔdèe

“So now let’s get married!”

laŋkáʔ

páʔjáʔdèe

TS 4 k^hàa ʔùuhoŋ wəə miinuuŋ piit^hòo.

téə lææ pjaadèe

“Friend—today let’s go gather firewood.”

pjaadèe

TS 3l k^hàa hoot^hén wəə sùuk^hajlòok .
 t^huu ləə pjaadèe
 "Friend squirrel, let's go get some suukhajlook pjaadèe
 fruit."

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

pjaadèe occurs twice in pre–peak episodes and once at peak.

Variable group 2: Transitivity

As this particle is used only in quotations, transitivity ranking does not apply.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

All *pjaadèe*–containing sentences involve single clauses, and may include a vocative.

Variable group 4: Quote/non–quote material

pjaadèe occurs only in quotations.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non–experiencer

This particle occurs only in quotations, and inevitably means that both speaker and hearer are to be involved in the proposed action. As such, it would seem to be experiencer–related.

4.5.13 1^hù^h2 (1^hù^h~1^hù^h) positive imperative

1^hù^h2 occurs three times in the folktales at hand, always as a positive command. 1^hù^h2 is never used to forbid a stated action (negative imperative).

(4.57)

AK 20 t^hiim^həjào naŋ məŋpòŋ ʔáaj luu .
 "If it's like that, open your mouth." 1^hù^h

- TD 17 níi naŋ gaa naa tsàa làaŋjâo .
 cìikùu gaa lak^hũu tʃ^hao
 lælatʃ^hinínŋ ts^hææ cák ʔoɔk
 luulaapoonoo
 "If you want to eat me, pull that thorn that pierced my foot, please." luulaapoonoo
- DB 14 hjàa kajcóoŋ t^híimaŋ tʃ^hũu làu .
 paʔlææ
 "Grab that kaicong chicken." làu paʔlææ

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

All three occurrences are found in pre–peak episodes. The semantic connotations of 1^hũ2 would indicate more of a sentence–level role.

Variable group 2: Transitivity

As this particle is used in only quotations, transitivity ranking does not apply.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

Two of the three 1^hũ2 –containing sentences contain more than one clause. Both of these are conditional sentences, with the two clauses joined by *jao* and *làaŋjâo*, respectively.

Variable group 4: Quote/non–quote material

All three occurrences are found in quotations—a fact which is not unexpected, given the semantic connotations of 1^hũ2.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non–experiencer

1^hũ2 may only be used by experiencers, in the sense that the speaker is involved in the overall context of the proposed action.

4.5.14 *pao* mild positive imperative

pao occurs three times in the folktale corpus, but is heard quite regularly in everyday Bisu conversations. *pao* represents a generally polite way to urge an action, and sees significant use when visitors come (“Sit down, *pao*,” “Have something to drink, *pao*,” “Have something to eat, *pao*,” etc.)

(4.58)

CK	16 ʔàaboŋ naʔ tɔɔj làapao	.
	“Release your father, o.k.?”	làapao
OR	30 baa wəə boŋ wəə tsàaj pao	.
	“Mother dear, father dear, eat!”	pao
CO	16 jɔɔ naŋ kʰaʔkɔɔʔuukɔɔj pao baacəə .	
	laʔmaŋmiʔ	
	“Well, take whichever pile you want.”	pao

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

pao occurs once in a pre-peak episode and twice at peak. The semantic connotations of the particle would indicate more of a sentence-level role.

Variable group 2: Transitivity

As this particle is used only in quotations, transitivity ranking does not apply.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

All of the *pao*-containing sentences involve single clauses.

Variable group 4: Quote/non-quote material

pao only occurs in quotations.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non-experiencer

As an imperative, *pao*, by definition, is used by an interlocutor.

4.5.15 *jóo* positive command

Occuring three times in the folktale corpus, *jóo* is used to command a certain action.

(4.59)

- CO 26 ts^haaŋ nīi t^huŋgāa næʔ dɛŋ jào lák .
 huum kaʔjoo
 We people live together and need to love each káʔjoo
 other, you know.
- FS 8 càawàa næʔ ʔaaboŋ ʃiin jào aŋtùu .
 tuk^hjàam ʃəj kwàan jóo
 "Suppose tht father dies, then walk around jóo
 dragging my skull."
- FS 9 káəŋ jóo t^həəŋ ŋæʔ jóʔjaa nàa hjàa .
 wàa càanjóo
 "Wherever it gets stuck, work the hill field there." càanjóo

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

Two of the three occurrences are found in pre-peak episodes, while the third occurs in a conclusion. Given *jóo*'s semantic connotations, this particle would appear to play more of a sentence-level role.

Variable group 2: Transitivity

As this particle is used only in quotations, transitivity ranking does not apply.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

Two of the *jóo*-containing sentences contain two clauses joined with *jao*. The third contains a relative clause embedded in the subject.

Variable group 4: Quote/non-quote material

jóo occurs only in quotations.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non-experiencer

jóo is found only in quotations, and is necessarily utilized by interlocutors.

4.5.16 *læw* positive command

Occurring twice in the folktale corpus, *læw* is used in making strong requests or commands. The impact of *læw* can be mitigated by the use of the polite particle *pèe* (section 4.5.21), as shown in example set 4.60:

(4.60)

ST	4 gaa nammuu t ^h ùu maŋ sùuj ææn .	
	<i>læwlæe</i>	
	"Anyone—someone take me there!"	<i>læwlæe</i>
ST	6 naŋ mǎnpooŋ haksaa haa læwpèe .	
	"Take care of your mouth!"	<i>læwpèe</i>

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

One occurrence is found in the orientation stage, while the other occurs in a pre-peak episode. Neither of the occurrences are found in episode boundaries or other particularly significant sentences.

Variable group 2: Transitivity

As this particle is used only in quotations, transitivity ranking does not apply.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

Both *læw*-containing sentences are monoclausal.

Variable group 4: Quote/non-quote material

læw occurs only in quotations.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non-experiencer

læw is used only by experiencers.

4.5.17 *láʔ* imperative

Occurring once in the folktale corpus, *láʔ* is a fairly strong imperative which, in the absence of the politeness particle *pláæ* is somewhat rude.

(4.61)

AK 18 plòɔŋ láʔpláæ .
Help me. láʔpláæ

4.5.18 *læwlææ* imperative

Occurring once in the corpus, *læwlææ* is a mild imperative used in making requests.

(4.62)

ST 4 gaa nammuu t^hùu maŋ sùuj æən .
læwlææ
"Anyone—someone take me there!" læwlææ

4.5.19 *coo* negative command

Occurring three times in the folktale corpus, *coo* is used when forbidding a specific action.

(4.63)

CO 1 k^hàatɔŋ æən ŋæə nəʔ ʔàahaa .
tsáalææ coo
"I'm clever"—don't think that! ʔàahaa . . coo

CO 25 háaknaʔ bàa suu bàa sǎj nəʔ ʔàahaa .
coo
Don't think about being crooked with other people. ʔàahaa coo

OR 14 nikâm wəənæə tʃ^hiʔúkóŋ tɔɔj læw .
bàa pii luu lætɔɔ coo nəə
"This time take them to a far place to release them coo nəə
and then don't let them be able to come back!"

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

In the folktale corpus at hand, *coo* is found in both the title and the conclusion of one story, and in a pre-peak episode of another.

Variable group 2: Transitivity

As this particle is used only in quotations, transitivity ranking does not apply.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

One of the three occurrences involves two clauses joined by *laew*.⁴¹

Variable group 4: Quote/non-quote material

coo is found only in quotations (including audience-directed elements, such as the moral of a story).

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non-experiencer

coo is found only in quotations, and is necessarily utilized by interlocutors.

4.5.20 *ʔàahaa* negative command strengthener

ʔàahaa occurs twice in the folktale corpus, in the title and the conclusion of “Don't Dare Think You're Clever!” *ʔàahaa* is used only in forbidding specific actions. As such, it would appear to strengthen the command indicated by the ensuing *coo*, which may occur without *ʔàahaa* (see section 4.5.19). *ʔàahaa* may occur in the final particle cluster (CO 50), or preceding the verb (CO2).

⁴¹ *laew* is a loan word of Daic origin. It fulfills an identical conjunctive function in both Northern and Central Thai.

(4.64)

- CO 1 k^hàatɔŋ æn ŋææ nè? ?àahaa .
 tsàalææ coo
 "I'm clever"—don't think that! ?àahaa . coo
- CO 25 háakna? bàa suu bàa sǎj nè? ?àahaa .
 coo
 Don't think about being crooked with other people. ?àahaa coo

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

The semantic connotations of this particle suggest a sentence–level role for *?àahaa*

Variable group 2: Transitivity

As this particle is used only in the quotation–like title and moral, transitivity ranking does not apply.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

Both occurrences of *?àahaa* are in monoclausal sentences.

Variable group 4: Quote/non–quote material

Both of the occurrences of *?àahaa* are quotation–like in nature. One would suspect that *?àahaa* is used only in quotations, as is the case with the other Bisu imperative particles.⁴²

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non–experiencer

?àahaa is found only in quotations, and is necessarily is utilized by interlocutors.

⁴² This, of course, relates to the very nature of imperatives as a form of me–you interaction. It is difficult to even imagine an imperative framed in any other sort of interaction.

4.5.21 *pèe* politeness marker

The particle *pèe* occurs three times in the folktale corpus. All of these occurrences involve some sort of command. Nonetheless, *pèe* itself is not an imperative form. Indeed, it is used in such distinctly non-imperative situations as leave taking, wherein the one who is departing announces, *?ææ na pèe* 'I'm going.' In the sentences in example set 4.65, *pèe* is making the commands less harsh, putting them in a more polite light.

(4.65)

- | | | |
|----|---|--------------|
| CK | 34 naŋ káəŋ kátkám ?ææ jào niŋ tʃʰək .
kannoo pèe
(And she said), "Wherever you're reincarnated, kannoo pèe
beat this gong." | |
| CW | 11 naaŋ gaa na? gaa làa suuŋ jào naaŋ .
aŋjàa maŋna? sææ pèe
"If you love me, kill your child!" | pèe |
| ST | 6 naŋ mànɔɔŋ haksaa haa làewpèe
"Take care of your mouth!" | .
làewpèe |

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

In the folktale corpus, *pèe* occurs in twice in pre-peak episodes and once at peak. Given *pèe*'s semantic connotations, this particle would appear to play more of a sentence-level role.

Variable group 2: Transitivity

As this particle is used only in quotations, transitivity ranking does not apply.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

Two *pèe*-containing sentences involve more than one clause. In both cases, the clauses are joined by *jao*.

Variable group 4: Quote/non-quote material

pèe occurs only in quotations.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non-experiencer

By definition, *pèe* is used only by experiencers.

4.5.22 *gaa1* ability

Occurring twice in the folktale corpus, *gaa1* affirms the subjects' ability to carry out a certain action. Unless otherwise modified, *gaa1* carries a perfective sense. Thus, it is not as much a matter of a potential ability as one that has been utilized.

As mentioned earlier, *kaa1* carries a similar function, involving a 'permanent state or ability.' The main language assistant for this project claims that *gaa1* and *kaa1* are distinct particles, although they often co-occur. All the occurrences of *gaa1* in this corpus are followed by *kaa1*, but there are many cases of *kaa1* occurring without *gaa1*.

(4.66)

- OR 9 *cáa jàakee maŋ jèet mi kuut^həə jèe .*
juum aŋlɯ ləəgaakaa
 Then both children, well, every time were able to *kaaluuləəga*
 return home. *akaa*
- OR 26 *cáa ?æ k^hən ?æ jào ts^haaŋ aŋcaa .*
aŋpaŋ maŋ jèet mi aŋcam
gaakaa jèe
 When they arrived, the two rich people were able *gaakaa jèe*
 to remember.

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

Both occurrences of *gaa1* are in pre-peak episodes. One *gaa1*-containing sentence comprises an episode boundary. Nonetheless, *gaa1*'s semantic connotations would argue for more of a sentence-level role.

Variable group 2: Transitivity

The two *gaa1*-containing sentences have transitivity scores of 7 and 4, respectively, for a mid-range average of 5.5.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

Both *gaa1*-containing sentences are monoclausal.

Variable group 4: Quote/non-quote material

In this corpus, *gaa1* occurs only in non-quote sentences. The main language assistant for this project claims that *gaa1* is not likely to be used in a quotation.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non-experiencer

Given that *gaa1* occurs only in non-quote sentences, it is a non-experiencer particle.

4.5.23 *gaa2* + *siŋ* 'desire'

When used in conjunction with *siŋ*, 'want,' *gaa2* indicates a desire. *gaa2* is distinct from *gaa1* in that the *gaa2* precedes *lææ* 'again' in the particle cluster while *gaa1* follows *lææ*. Moreover, the main language assistant for this project was very insistent on *gaa2* being inherently different from *gaa1*—a proposition which this researcher found difficult to accept until the issue of particle cluster ordering surfaced. It is interesting to note that *gaa2* and *siŋ* work in conjunction with one another despite being separate by *lææ*—one of the few particle pairs thus deployed.

gaa2 appears similar in structure and function to the Lahu *gâ*, which Matisoff labels “desiderative” (1973: 332).

(4.67)

CW 8 *nik^hàm wàa aŋboon maŋ k^hàabaa .*
aŋsùu gaal~~à~~sinjèe
 At this time, the father wanted a new wife. *gaal~~à~~sin*
jèe

4.5.24 တဝဝ inability

Occurring three times in the folktale corpus, *တဝဝ* usually indicates that the actor is incapable of carrying out some action. *တဝဝ* always co-occurs with *kaal* ‘permanent state or ability’, but *kaal* frequently occurs without *တဝဝ* (section 4.4.6). *တဝဝ* is generally used in conjunction with the preverbal negation marker *bàa* in describing inability (as is the case in all the sentences in example 4.68). *တဝဝ* can be used to indicate ability (rather than inability) by the addition of the prefix *aŋ*, yielding *aŋတဝဝ*.⁴³

(4.68)

AK 7 *cáa k^hoon jáo bàa ?ဝဝက လွဲတဝဝ .*
ka?jèe
 Then after the (fish) were all gone, he could not လွဲတဝဝ
 get out. *ka?jèe*

OR 16 *jàakee maŋ jèet mi bàa [jùuj .*
kaaluul~~à~~တဝဝ
 The two children were unable to return together. *kaaluul~~à~~*
တဝဝ

TS 10 *?aŋt^hàa p^hukj^hàa ?ùuhoon máa cuŋcuŋ .*
bàa p^hj^hàa တဝဝ kaam~~à~~
 The turtle was unable to climb to that top area. *တဝဝ kaam~~à~~*

⁴³ This has not been observed in the corpus, but has been attested to by the main language assistant for this project.

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

All three occurrences of *tɔɔ* are found in pre-peak episodes. There are no occurrences at episode boundaries, nor are there any additional features of discourse significance. Given the semantic connotations of *tɔɔ*, this particle would appear to have more of a sentence-level role.

Variable group 2: Transitivity

The three *tɔɔ*-containing sentences bear transitivity scores of 2, 2, and 1, respectively, for an average of 1.67. This is not unexpected, given that the particle describes events or states that are not realized.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

All three *tɔɔ*-containing sentences are monoclausal

Variable group 4: Quote/non-quote material

All of the *tɔɔ*-containing sentences in this corpus are in non-quote material.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non-experiencer

tɔɔ may be used by experiencers and non-experiencers alike, although there is a marked tendency in conversational Bisu to use the phrase *bàa* (activity) *súŋ* 'not yet (able) to (activity)' to express inability.

4.5.25 wáʔ content question

wáʔ occurs three times in the folktale corpus, always marking a content question. It would appear to be a Daic loan, inasmuch as both Northern and Central Thai utilize *wáʔ* in asking questions. The Bisu *wáʔ*, however, does not bear the connotations of informal or even insulting speech carried by the Thai *wáʔ*. All the

occurrences of *wáʔ* are found in a folktale written by a teenager; younger Bisu speakers resort to loans much more readily than their elders.

(4.69)

PB	9 gaa mææ haaj wáʔ	.
	"What should I do?"	wáʔ
PB	18 joo kəəŋ wii ʔææ wáʔnæʔ	.
	"Well, where are we going to throw (him.)?"	wáʔnæʔ
PB	42 cəəkəəŋ wii lææ wáʔnæʔ	.
	"Where should (we) throw (him)?"	wáʔnæʔ

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

All three *wáʔ*-containing sentences occur in pre-peak episodes. None co-occur with episode boundaries or other prominent discourse features.

Variable group 2: Transitivity

As this particle is used only in quotations, transitivity ranking does not apply.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

All three *wáʔ*-containing sentences are monoclausal.

Variable group 4: Quote/non-quote material

wáʔ occurs only in quotations, and may be followed by *næʔ*, which marks the conclusion of a quotation (see section 4.4.12).

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non-experiencer

wáʔ is used only by experiencers.

4.5.26 *lǎa* interrogative marker

Although *lǎa* occurs only once in the folktale corpus, it is used with great frequency in everyday speech for non-wh questions. Example 4.70 is typical:

(4.70)

DB 10 hjáap^hàa kajcáoŋ nimaŋ tʃ^hùu láa .
 hjáap^hàa puutʃ^haa nimaŋ tʃ^huu láa
 Shall we grab a Kaijcong chicken or a Puutshaa láa
 chicken?

4.5.27 *máʔ* negative emphatic

máʔ occurs three times in the folktale corpus, always in sentences containing declarations of undesirability. According to the main language assistant for this project, *máʔ* adds additional emphasis to the declaration. In addition, *máʔ* cannot occur in isolation; it must be accompanied by a particle such as *tʃ^hii* or *tʃ^há*, as shown in examples set 4.71:

(4.71)

AK 27 ʔoo laŋʃjaam naʔ maa ʃiin tʃ^háʔmáʔ .
 "Ooh—this otter is dead already!" tʃ^háʔmáʔ
 PB 12 ʔəənəhaaŋjèe naʔmaŋ ʃiin tʃ^háʔmáʔ .
 "Uuh! This (thing) has died already!" tʃ^háʔmáʔ
 PB 36 bàa tsàa bàa tǎŋ bùw tʃ^hiilaamáʔ .
 "(The cucumbers and melons) won't be delicious!" tʃ^hiilaamáʔ

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

máʔ appears twice in pre-peak episodes, and once at peak. It does not co-occur with episode boundaries or other significant features. Given its semantic connotations, *máʔ* would appear to play more of a sentence-level role.

Variable group 2: Transitivity

As this particle appears only in quotations in this corpus, transitivity ranking does not apply.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

All of the *máʔ*-containing sentences involve single clauses.

Variable group 4: Quote/non-quote material

All the occurrences of this particle are in quotations. Nonetheless, a Bisu assistant claims that *máʔ* may be used in non-quotation sentences.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non-experiencer

máʔ may be used by experiencers and non-experiencers alike.

4.5.28 *cáa* positive emphatic

Occurring twice in the folktale corpus, *cáa* emphasizes the preceding verb. In the first sentence of example set 4.72, *cáa* emphasizes that the monkeys did indeed appear, while the use of *cáa* in the second sentence indicates that the poor boy indeed told the whole story to his friend:

(4.72)

- PB 11 ʃii ~~kæ̀kæ̀~~ kasəəj muuloŋ jàaŋ lùun .
 tʃ^hijèecáa
 (When he) went and acted like he had died, that tʃ^hijèecáa
 group of monkeys indeed came.
- PB 29 máaj tʃ^hiicáa .
 (He) told (him) everything. tʃ^hiicáa

cáa is the only particle that occurs after *tʃ^hijèe* —something which is all the more remarkable for *cáa*'s close association with the preceding verb.

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

Both occurrences of *cáa* are found in pre-peak episodes, with one of the *cáa*-containing sentences appearing at episode boundary.

Variable group 2: Transitivity

The two *cáa*-containing sentences hold transitivity scores of 6 and 7, respectively, for an average of 6.5. This relatively high transitivity ranking is not unexpected, given *cáa*'s role as lending emphasis to verbs, as well as *cáa*'s co-occurrence with *tʃ^hii*.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

One of the *cáa*-containing sentences has a clause embedded as a time phrase, while the other sentence is monoclausal.

Variable group 4: Quote/non-quote material

All of the occurrences of *cáa* are found in non-quote material.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non-experiencer

cáa may only be used in the speech of a narrator, immediately indicating that the speaker was not personally involved in the reported event. It is thus a feature of reported account. In this respect, *cáa* is similar to *jèe*, which likewise is an immediate indication of non-experiencer status.

4.5.29 *ʔii* readily deduceable knowledge

Occurring only once in the folktale corpus, *ʔii* is used in reply to questions. According to the main language assistant for this project, the use of *ʔii* indicates that the speaker thinks the person who asked the question should know at least something of the answer. It is not that the answer is totally obvious, but that it is logically deduceable, a sort of indirect evidentiality. For example, if someone, upon coming across an unfamiliar kind of fruit, asked, "What do you do with this?", a friend might reply, "Well, you eat it *ʔii*." Similarly, in example 4.73, the rabbit

employs *ʔii* in reply to his own rhetorical question regarding the fate of the slow-witted otter.

(4.73)

AK	lɔ nɔ́a ʃii kaʔnaaʔíi	.
	"You will die for sure."	káʔnaaʔíi

In these functions, *ʔii* is similar to the *sii* of Central Thai (Cooke 1989: 91), utilized by Bisu speakers in word-by-word glosses, and the *kāa* of Northern Thai (Suzanne Person 1998: 30).⁴⁴

4.5.30 *ŋáʔl* comprehensive extent

Occurring twice in the folktale corpus, *ŋáʔl* emphasizes the extent of a situation. In the first sentence of 4.74, *ŋáʔl* indicates that the spirit was completely covered in blood; without *ŋáʔl* the sentence would merely read "(It was) bloody." Similarly, in CO 6 *ŋáʔl* emphasizes that they had a great number and variety of fish.

(4.74)

MB	23 ʃii æən ŋaʔjèe	.
	It was completely covered in blood.	ŋaʔjèe
CO	6 lɔŋtæə ŋʔii ŋhàu ŋtsaa æən .	
	ŋaʔjèe	
	[They] had both large and small fish.	ŋaʔjèe

⁴⁴ If the speaker is truly annoyed with the question, and wants to indicate that the answer is entirely obvious, the particle *ʔiimaj* is utilized. Thus, a normal question such as "What are you eating?", asked when the food is in plain view and, in the Bisu cultural context, indicating that the speaker would like to join in the meal, could be answered with *ʔii* if the person was welcome to eat or *ʔiimaj* if the diners definitely did not want company.

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

One $\eta\acute{a}ʔ1$ -containing sentence occurs at peak, the other in a pre-peak episode. Neither occurrences involve episode boundaries. This, coupled with the semantic connotations of $\eta\acute{a}ʔ1$, would argue for more of a sentence-level role for this particle.

Variable group 2: Transitivity

The two $\eta\acute{a}ʔ1$ -containing sentences post transitivity scores of 2 and 5, respectively, for an average of 3.5. This relatively low average score is not unexpected, given $\eta\acute{a}ʔ1$'s apparent role in describing situations or states.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

Both $\eta\acute{a}ʔ1$ -containing sentences are monoclausal.

Variable group 4: Quote/non-quote material

The two $\eta\acute{a}ʔ1$ -containing sentences in the folktale corpus are non-quote. There is no information on whether the particle may also appear in quotations.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non-experiencer

$\eta\acute{a}ʔ1$ may be used by experiencers and non-experiencers alike.

4.5.31 $tʃ^h i i 2 + tʃ^h a ʔ \sim tʃ^h \grave{a} \eta$ ‘left in that state’

Occurring only twice in the folktale corpus, the combination of $tʃ^h i i 2$ and $tʃ^h a ʔ$ takes on semantic connotations larger than the sum of its parts. As revealed in written Thai glosses and conversations with language assistants, $tʃ^h i i 2 + tʃ^h a ʔ$ carries a sense of leaving something in a certain state. In CK 11, the spirit leaves her slave-husband locked in the house whenever she goes out, while in TS 29 the turtle leaves a set trap at the foot of a tree.

(4.75)

- CK 11 tʃʰæŋkɔ̌ɔ̌jkɔ̌ɔ̌j maŋ laŋkɔ̌ɔ̌ pʰii .
 tʃʰii tʃʰàŋjèe
 Chengkoi would lock the door as she left. tʃʰii
 tʃʰàŋjèe
- TS 29 sùukʰajlòok pāŋ jóo kap jàaŋ kʰɔ̌ɔ̌j .
 tʃʰiiitʃʰajao
 (She) set the trap at the suukhajlook tree and left it tʃʰii
 there. tʃʰajao

Variable group 1: Place in the discourse

The two *tʃʰiiitʃʰà*-containing sentences are found in pre-peak episodes. Neither of these constitute episode boundaries. It is perhaps significant that both of these sentences effectively set the stage for forthcoming peak events—the escape of the entrapped husband in “Chengkoikoi, The Female Spirit,” and the death of the fruit-stealing squirrel in “Turtle and Squirrel.” Additional examples are needed to determine whether this is a mere coincidence, as could be deduced from the seemingly sentence level semantic connotations of *tʃʰiiitʃʰà*.

Variable group 2: Transitivity

These two sentences have transitivity scores of 9 and 8, respectively, for an extremely high average of 8.5. Additional examples would be needed to establish the consistency with which *tʃʰiiitʃʰà*-containing sentences post such high scores.

Variable group 3: Sentence complexity

Neither sentence contains more than one clause.⁴⁵

Variable group 4: Quote/non-quote

tʃʰiiitʃʰà occurs only in non-quote sentences.

⁴⁵ TS 29 contains serial verbs, not multiple clauses.

Variable group 5: Experiencer/non-experiencer

tʃ^hiitʃ^hà can only be used by narrators relating events in which they were not personally involved.

4.5.32 *láʔwaa* ‘any more’

Occurring only once in the foiktaie corpus, *láʔwaa* indicates that a certain condition no longer exists. These two syllables function as one unit; the *waa* here is different from that discussed in section 4.5.25. *láʔwaa* is only used in negative situations, following the negative marker *bàa*, as shown in example 4.76:

(4.76)

OR 17 ʔacām k^hùu aŋbaa kuut^həə næə k^hèe .
plòŋ maŋ bàa caa láʔwaa

In addition, the mother dog who always followed *láʔwaa*
and helped them was not there any more.

4.5.33 *láʔ* natural disaster

One of the more unique Bisu particles, *láʔ* indicates that the tragic event recalled in the sentence was the result of natural forces, rather than the intentions of human beings. There is only one example of this particle in the thirteen folktales. OR 68, when the evil stepmother is swallowed into the earth:

(4.77)

OR 34 nuuŋtʃ^hàa həə k^həə kancàŋ .
nuuŋtʃ^hàa jàaŋ plaak latʃ^hiijèe
When she hit the ground the earth opened. láʔtʃ^hiijèe

láʔ is not a passive marker, in that it cannot be used with animate participants. An unsolved murder, for example, could not utilize *láʔ*. *láʔ* is not limited to

fictional accounts; it could, for example, be used in describing how a bamboo house was blown over by a fierce windstorm.

4.5.34 *laalææ* intensity of hunger

Occurring once in the corpus, *laalææ* idiomatically emphasizes the intensity of a character's hunger. It is not used in describing any other attributes.

(4.78)

TS 14 luutaamluu hootʃ^hén maŋ .
sùk^hajlòok ~~bæn~~ laalææpitʃ^hiijée
Not long thereafter, the squirrel got hungry for the ~~laalææ~~pi
suukhajlook fruit. tʃ^hiijée

4.6 Particle usage across genres

The purpose of this section is to compare particle usage in the written folktales with that of the life stories and expository texts.

4.6.1 Life stories

4.6.1.1 Particle frequency

The three oral life stories studied contain a total of 865 sentences, 489 of which (56.53%) contain particles. Thus, the overall frequency of particle usage in the life stories is less than that of the written folktales, wherein 86.2% of all sentences contain particles. This 30% difference may relate to the fact that the written folktales are written; that is, the authors wrote and then edited their texts to fit more “standardized” sentence patterns than might be found in spontaneous oral speech.

The life stories contain an average of one and no more than three particles per particle-containing sentence (table 4.32).

Table 4.32. Number of particles per sentence in life stories

# particles/ sentence	# sentences	% of total # sentences
0	367	42.43%
1	334	38.61%
2	147	16.99%
3	17	1.97%
Total	865	100.00%

The figures listed in table 4.32 are comparable to quotation-containing sentences in the written folktales, which likewise contain an average of one and no more than three sentence final particles (see table 4.2, section 4.1.1). This is

nonetheless different from non-quotation containing sentences in the written folktales, which average almost two and may contain up to six particles.

4.6.1.2 Particle distribution

The life stories at hand contain fifty-two distinct particles, occurring a total of 679 times in 498 of the 865 sentences, as shown in table 4.33.

Table 4.33. Life story texts particle inventory (Northern Thai/Thai loans in grey)

Particle	# Occurrences	% of total sent (865)	% sent w/part (498)	% of total particles (678)	Particle	# Occurrences	% of total sent (865)	% sent w/part (498)	% of total particles (679)
ŋææ	132	15.26%	26.51%	19.47%	nàa	3	0.35%	0.60%	0.44%
jaa	93	10.75%	18.67%	13.72%	tʃ ^h ii ²	3	0.35%	0.60%	0.44%
ŋáʔ ²	47	5.43%	9.44%	6.93%	màj	2	0.23%	0.40%	0.29%
ʔææ	40	4.62%	8.03%	5.90%	hææŋ	2	0.23%	0.40%	0.29%
laal	40	4.62%	8.03%	5.90%	jàaŋ	2	0.23%	0.40%	0.29%
lææ	40	4.62%	8.03%	5.90%	lùu	2	0.23%	0.40%	0.29%
pìi	33	3.82%	6.63%	4.87%	noo	2	0.23%	0.40%	0.29%
jao	32	3.70%	6.43%	4.72%	too	2	0.23%	0.40%	0.29%
kaa ²	32	3.70%	6.43%	4.72%	tʃ ^h áʔ	2	0.23%	0.40%	0.29%
paanòo	30	3.47%	6.02%	4.42%	kaanee	1	0.12%	0.20%	0.15%
gaa	17	1.97%	3.41%	2.51%	k ^h aalææ	1	0.12%	0.20%	0.15%
jaowææ	14	1.62%	2.81%	2.06%	naa	1	0.12%	0.20%	0.15%
làaj	8	0.92%	1.61%	1.18%	nææk ^h ee	1	0.12%	0.20%	0.15%
ʔàa	7	0.81%	1.41%	1.03%	ʃii	1	0.12%	0.20%	0.15%
lææl	7	0.81%	1.41%	1.03%	wàaj laaj	1	0.12%	0.20%	0.15%
tʃ ^h ii	6	0.69%	1.20%	0.88%	woo	1	0.12%	0.20%	0.15%
wæë	8	0.92%	1.61%	1.18%	náʔ	7	0.81%	1.41%	1.03%
wàʔ	5	0.58%	1.00%	0.74%	nææ	6	0.69%	1.20%	0.88%
ʔooŋ	4	0.46%	0.80%	0.59%	káʔ	5	0.58%	1.00%	0.74%
haaŋ	4	0.46%	0.80%	0.59%	noo	4	0.46%	0.80%	0.59%
laalææ	4	0.46%	0.80%	0.59%	náʔ	3	0.35%	0.60%	0.44%
pèe	4	0.46%	0.80%	0.59%	làʔ	2	0.23%	0.40%	0.29%
suuŋ	4	0.46%	0.80%	0.59%	jáʔ	1	0.12%	0.20%	0.15%
dèe	3	0.35%	0.60%	0.44%	láʔ	1	0.12%	0.20%	0.15%
jèe	3	0.35%	0.60%	0.44%	lææw	1	0.12%	0.20%	0.15%
kaal	3	0.35%	0.60%	0.44%	ŋàaj	1	0.12%	0.20%	0.15%

In comparing table 4.33 with table 4.3, several differences between the life stories and the written folktales become immediately obvious. First, the written folktales exhibit a much greater variety of particles: Eighty-two in 384 sentences, as opposed to fifty-two in 865 sentences. Second, the life stories utilize more particles borrowed from Northern Thai (grey area of table 4.33), than are found in the written folktales. This may be related to the editorial process; the authors of the written folktales read and commented upon each other's output, with occasional discussions about authentic Bisu words which were losing ground to Thai and Northern Thai loans, while the life stories were oral and spontaneous.

Third, the life stories manifest a more even distribution of frequently used particles, with *ŋææ*, *jaa*, and *ŋáʔ* occurring in 26.51%, 18.88%, and 13.84% of all particle-containing sentences. By contrast, *jèe* and *tʃ^hii* are used in 50.59% and 43.79% of particle-containing sentences in the folktales, while the third most frequent particle, *lææ*, occurs in 13.02% of particle-containing sentences, a sharp decrease. Figure 4.7 chronicles the frequency with which the ten most used particles in each genre occur in particle-containing sentences, demonstrating how the life stories use several particles at similar frequency levels, while the written folktales use relatively few particles with any great frequency.

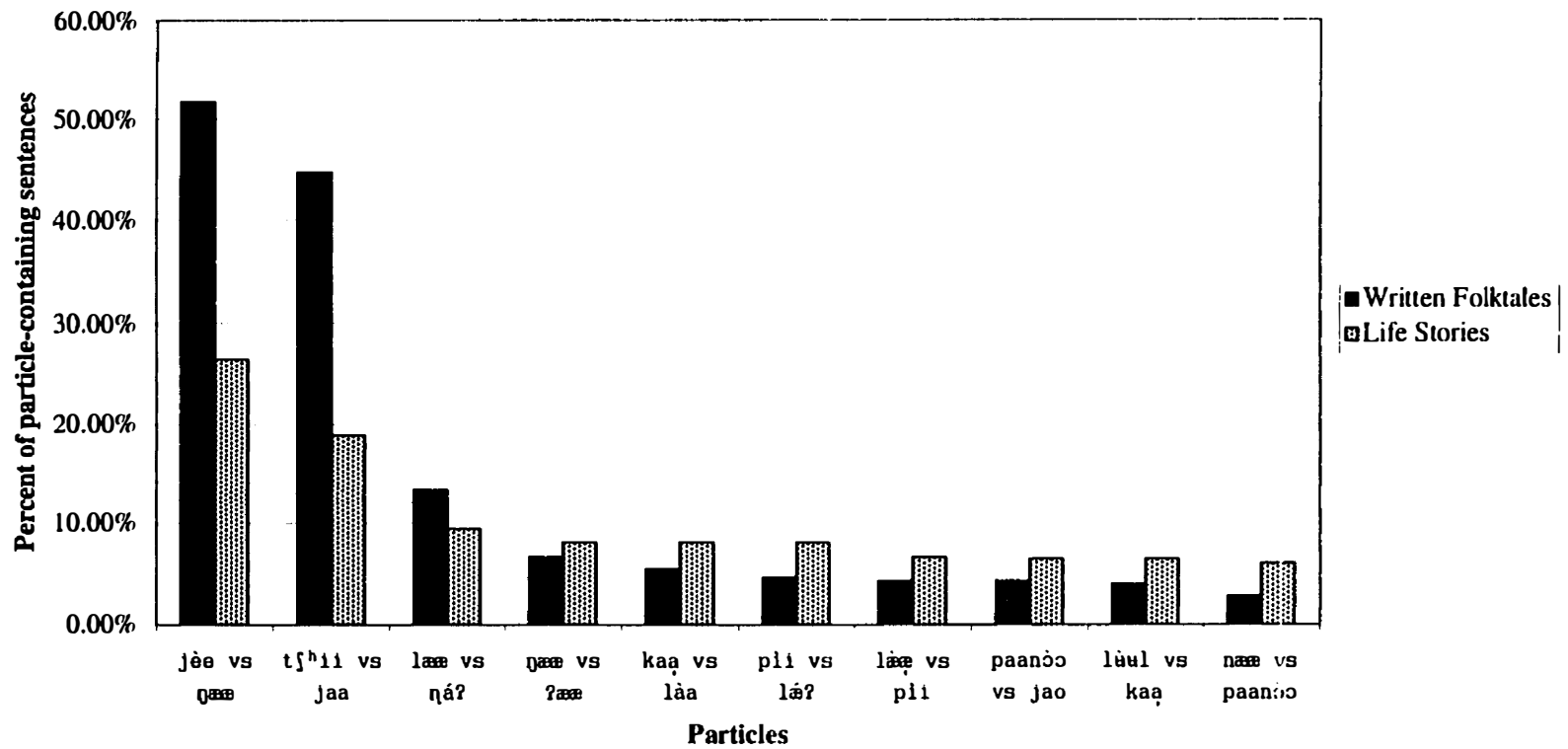


Figure 4.7. Percent of sentences containing the 10 most frequently used particles in written folktales and life stories.

Most significantly, the particles utilized vary significantly between the two genres. Among the written folktales, *jèe* and *tʃ^hii* are used 171 and 148 times, respectively; those same particles are used only three and six times in the life stories. Conversely, *ŋææ*, *jaa*, and *ŋáʔ* are used 132, ninety-four, and forty-seven times in the life stories, while they garner a mere twenty-three, five, and two occurrences in the written folktales. Thus, without even discussing the semantic and discourse-related connotations of the individual particles, it becomes obvious that very different usage patterns are exhibited in the two genres, despite the fact that they both fall under the general “narrative” rubric. These differences in usage will be discussed in section 4.6.1.3.

4.6.1.3 Comparison of frequently used particles

4.6.1.3.1 *jèe*; the argument from absence

The most frequently used particle in the written folktales makes a mere three appearances in the life stories, as shown in example set 4.79:

- (4.79)
- | | | | |
|-----|-----|---|----------------|
| UDG | 215 | <i>nàa tùu càŋ ŋææ jèe</i> | . |
| | | (My husband) hired himself out to dig rice fields. | <i>ŋææ jèe</i> |
| UDG | 378 | <i>ʔiikee nii ʔuum mi hàŋ p^hrææ jèe</i> | . |
| | | This group of children sometimes had only rice and water. | <i>jèe</i> |
| UDG | 379 | <i>hàŋ bàa dáaj jèe</i> | . |
| | | (The children) sometimes just had plain rice. | <i>jèe</i> |

UDG 215 occurs in the midst of a discussion about the activities of her husband when the children were small. While many aspects of rice farming are carried out by men and women alike, the matter of clearing land and digging paddy fields is physically demanding, and would have been the work of males. Thus, *jèe* is being

used for an activity beyond the immediate experience of the speaker. Similarly, UDG 378 and 379 occur during a discussion of how the speaker's family had very little to eat when their children were young, to the point where parents often went hungry themselves so that the children would have something. But even that something was often very little, such as the plain rice and water described here.

The vast difference in the frequency of *jèe* usage in the third person accounts of the written folktales and the eyewitness accounts of the life stories underlines the evidential nature of *jèe*, as well as *jèe*'s discourse level association with the folktale genre.

4.6.1.3.2 *ɲææ* stative

Unlike *jèe*, *ɲææ* is used frequently in both folktales and life stories. Indeed, it is the most frequently used particle in the life stories, with 132 occurrences (15.26% of all sentences, 26.51% of particle-containing sentences). As mentioned in section 4.4.1, *ɲææ* is used to describe physical or emotional states, as well as routine activities. It is in the latter function that *ɲææ* sees a great deal of use in the life stories, often in describing daily activities and conditions, as shown in example set 4.80:

(4.80)

UDG	317	guu hæmææ jùŋ ɲææ	
		We had to sleep like that.	ɲææ
UDG	318	hàaŋ bææ hæmææ ʔot ɲææ	
		(We slept) hungry and lacking, like that.	ɲææ
UDG	331	tsəəŋ haaj tsàa ɲææ	
		(We) boiled rice [to make it go further].	ɲææ
UDG	382	nii mææ tsàa kan ɲææ	
		(They) lived and ate together like that.	ɲææ
UD	93	ʔàabaa ʔàabon næ napt ^h uuhaaŋ ɲææ	
		(I did so because I) always showed respect to my father and mother.	ɲææ
UH	73	t ^h ii tɔon k ^h anaat tùk ɲææ	
		Back then (we) were very poor.	ɲææ

Although *ŋææ* is the most frequently used particle in the life stories, it is difficult to assign it any larger discourse role. While *tʃ^hii* consistently marks the mainline of the written folktales, and the extraction of all *tʃ^hii*-containing sentences provides an abstract of the story, for example, the extraction of all *ŋææ*-containing sentences from a life story would not provide a satisfactory outline of the discourse.

4.6.1.3.3 *jao*: cohesion, and completion

As mentioned in section 4.1.6, *jao* is used with great frequency in the written folktales to join two clauses. As such, it occurs sentence medially in the written folktales.

In the life stories, sentence boundaries are somewhat more difficult to determine. The main reason for this lies in the fact that the life stories represent spontaneous oral performances, rather than written texts which have undergone numerous revisions. Indeed, in the life histories it is not at all uncommon to go for a number of clauses before reaching what would appear to be a sentence final particle cluster. This contrasts with the written folktales, wherein it is extremely rare to observe more than two successive clauses without a sentence final particle cluster.

It is thus not surprising to find the conjunction *jao* used with much greater frequency in the oral life stories than it saw in the written folktales. Indeed, *jao* occurs thirty-two times in what language assistants deemed to be sentence final position, and many other times sentence medially.

In the context of the oral life stories, then, it would appear that *jao* is acting as a cohesive device, binding together a number of successive events, as demonstrated in example set 4.81:

- (4.81)
- | | | | | |
|----|-----|---|---|-----|
| UH | 131 | ʔaŋp ^h an tʃ ^h iit tʃ ^h iit tʃ ^h iit
kaan jao
(I'd) take the betel nut and sliver it. | . | jao |
| UH | 132 | burii jooj jao
(I'd) roll the cigarettes. | . | jao |
| UH | 133 | kòò hoolok pluuŋ kaan jao
(I'd) put it in the container for the betel nut | . | jao |
| UH | 134 | tʃ ^h ii tʃ ^h àaŋ já?
(I'd) set it all aside | . | já? |

At the same time, *jao* carries a connotation to the effect that the previous action has been completed, setting the stage for the actions to come. In this sense, *jao* carries a completive sense, somewhat along the lines of *tʃ^hii* (which never co-occurs with *jao*). The importance of this aspectual component of *jao* will become apparent in section 4.6.1.3.4.

4.6.1.3.4 *tʃ^hii* and the completive complex

Like *jèe*, *tʃ^hii* sees abundant use in the written folktales, and scant mention in the life stories (compare tables 4.3 and 4.33). When *tʃ^hii* does occur in the life stories, it is usually in connection with decisive events, such as death, marriage, and divorce, as shown in example set 4.82:

- (4.82)
- | | | | | |
|-----|-----|--|---|-------------------------|
| UDG | 5 | ʔàabaa naa wàaŋ là? tʃ ^h ii
(Father) separated from mother. | . | tʃ ^h ii |
| UDG | 13 | pòòŋhnaa ʔàahmjaan pò tʃ ^h ii jàaŋ
(I) cared for buffalo and cows. | . | tʃ ^h ii jàaŋ |
| UDG | 417 | ʃii tʃ ^h ii
(Mother and father) died (before I could care for <i>tʃ^hii</i> them). | . | |
| UDG | 432 | k ^h àabaa ʔooŋ ká? tʃ ^h ii hææ taŋ
mi
(We) got married like that. | . | ká? tʃ ^h ii |
| UH | 8 | ʔàabaa ʃii tʃ ^h ii | . | |

	(My) mother died.	$t\int^{hii}$
UH	71 ʔùubon ʃii $t\int^{hii}$.
	(My) husband died.	$t\int^{hii}$

The fact that $t\int^{hii}$ is seldom used in the life stories does not mean that any significant sort of completive aspect is absent. As mentioned in 4.3.2.3, the life stories make abundant use of the conjunction *jao*, which bears connotations of completion, in both sentence medial and sentence final positions. Furthermore, the life stories fully utilize *jaa1*, $\eta\acute{a}\text{ʔ}2$ ⁴⁶, *laa1*, and *paanɔɔ* as completive markers. This represents a fascinating series of symmetrical relationships, for *jaa1*, $\eta\acute{a}\text{ʔ}2$, and *laa1* are used sparingly in the folktales and abundantly in the life stories, as shown in figure 4.8:⁴⁷

⁴⁶ $\eta\acute{a}\text{ʔ}2$ does not occur in the folktale corpus. In the life stories, it plays a role similar to that of *jaa1* in asserting that the related event did indeed take place.

⁴⁷ *jao* is not included in this chart due to the ambiguity of its position in the sentence: whereas *jaa1*, $\eta\acute{a}\text{ʔ}2$, and *laa1* clearly and consistently occur in sentence final particle clusters, *jao* is more apt to merely join clauses.

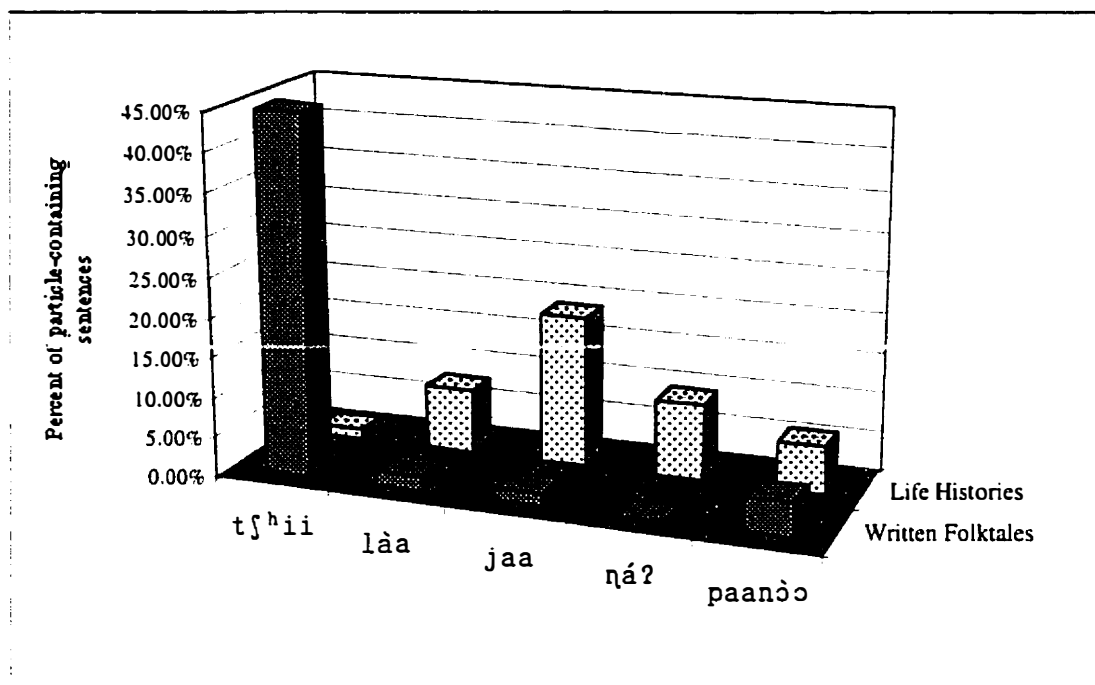


Figure 4.8. Comparison of frequency of select particles in life histories and written folktales.

A conclusion may thus be drawn to the effect that different types of completives are preferred in different genres.

4.6.2 Expository texts

4.6.2.1 Particle frequency

The six expository texts studied contain ninety-six sentences, sixty-four (66.66%) of which contain sentence final particles. Thus, the overall percentage of particle-containing sentences in the expository texts is slightly higher than that of the life stories (56.53%) and slightly lower than that of the written folktales (86.2%).

Expository text sentences contain up to three sentence final particles, but have fewer than two 75% of the time, as shown in table 4.34:

Table 4.34. Number of particles per sentence in expository texts

# particles/ sentence	# sentences	% of total # sentences
0	32	33.33%
1	40	41.67%
2	22	22.92%
3	2	2.08%
Total	96	100.00%

In this, then, the expository text sentences are similar to the life stories and quotation-containing written folktale sentences in containing relatively few particles in the particle cluster. This contrasts with non-quotation-containing written folktale sentences, which feature more than two particles roughly 70% of the time.

4.6.2.2 Particle distribution

The expository texts at hand contain fifteen distinct sentence final particles, occurring a total of eighty-nine times, as shown in table 4.35:

Table 4.35. Expository texts particle inventory

Particle	# Occurrences	% of total sent (96)	% sent w/part (64)	% of total particles (89)
ŋææ	31	32.29%	48.44%	34.83%
pii	16	16.67%	25.00%	17.98%
jao	9	9.38%	14.06%	10.11%
laaʃ	8	8.33%	12.50%	8.99%
ʔææ	8	8.33%	12.50%	8.99%
jaal	3	3.13%	4.69%	3.37%
suuŋ	3	3.13%	4.69%	3.37%
gaa	2	2.08%	3.13%	2.25%
lææ	2	2.08%	3.13%	2.25%
lææl	2	2.08%	3.13%	2.25%
laal	1	1.04%	1.56%	1.12%
luŋ	1	1.04%	1.56%	1.12%
ʃə	1	1.04%	1.56%	1.12%
tʃ ^h iil	1	1.04%	1.56%	1.12%
tʃ ^h ii2	1	1.04%	1.56%	1.12%

4.6.2.3 Comparison of frequently used particles

The expository texts are similar to the life stories in featuring the particle *ŋææ* in a large percentage of sentences. Also like the life stories, the expository texts contain many clauses joined by *jao*. The fact that the stative *ŋææ* and the completive-scented *jao* never co-occur further emphasizes their distinct functions.

The most frequently found particle in the written folktales, *jẽe*, is completely absent from the expository texts, while the second most frequent written folktale particle, *tʃ^hii*, is found only once in the expository texts.

From the perspective of particle usage, then, the life stories and expository texts would appear to have more in common with one another than they do with the written folktales. These similarities stem from two sources. First, both life stories and expository texts are true. Indeed, the authors of the texts had been eyewitnesses to all that they said. Second, the life stories themselves have a significant expository component in that they are explaining life in the “(mostly bad) old days.” Regular reference is made in the texts to the fact that life is no longer as miserable as it used to be, that modern children have not had to undergo the same privations, and so forth.

Once again, then, text type is seen to be a powerful force in predestining particle distribution in Bisu discourse.

CHAPTER 5

CONCLUSION

5.0 Introduction

The goal of this study, as stated in chapter one, was to address the function of Bisu particles in narrative discourse. The results show that particle usage in Bisu discourse is affected in varying degrees by a number of factors, including text type, place in the discourse, transitivity, sentence complexity, and the experiencer/non-experience distinction, as well as the semantic connotations of individual particles.

Discussions of the results pertaining to the goal of this study are presented in 5.1. Section 5.2 discusses the strengths, weaknesses, and limitations of the study, while section 5.3 discusses the implications of this study. Section 5.4 makes recommendations for further research.

5.1 Factors affecting particle usage

5.1.1 Impact of text type and genre

Different particles are found with different degrees of frequency in different text types and genres. Particles such as *tʃ^hii*, *jèe*, and *lææ* are used extensively in the written folktales, but rarely in the life stories and expository texts. This illustrates one of the basic tenets of the Longacrean school: text type affects sentence level phenomena. So dramatic are these differing patterns of particle usage that a native speaker of Bisu can quickly ascertain text type based on two or three sentences.

5.1.2 Impact of place in the discourse

A second major factor in particle usage is the point in the discourse at which the sentence appears. Certain particles are never found in the orientation and conclusion stages, for example. In addition, pre–peak episode sentences typically take many more particles than their counterparts at other points in the discourse. Certain particle combinations are unlikely to be found at peak and peak'. This reflects another Longacrean maxim: the "zone of turbulence" that is the peak of a story often features changes in the length of syntactic units—in this case, the number of particles likely to be used in a given peak or peak' sentence.

5.1.3 Impact of sentence complexity

Somewhat surprisingly, this study found no strong correlation between more complex sentence structures and particle usage. The final particles of multiclausal sentences typically relate only to the final clause, following a principle of adjacency. A very few particles may be used in both sentence final and sentence medial position (the latter always in tandem with a conjunction). The more robust, megastructure–defining particles, however, are never found sentence medially.

5.1.4 Impact of the experiencer/ non–experiencer distinction

Some Bisu particles reflect a basic experiencer/non–experiencer evidentiality distinction. If a Bisu storyteller is being honest, he or she will periodically, automatically utilize particles that reveal his or her relationship to the events being related. This is exhibited most clearly in the particle *jêe*, which clearly indicates speaker non–involvement in the story.

5.1.5 Impact of semantic connotations

While lexical meanings for some Bisu particles are difficult to ascertain, all bear some semantic connotations. These may vary widely in different contexts, around a central semantic core. Nonetheless, the fact that a given particle could be used in a given sentence does not necessarily mean that it will be used. For example, quotation formulae are not used with all quotation sentences, and are conspicuously rare at peak and peak'. Thus, other discourse-level considerations affect the decision of whether to employ a given particle in a given sentence.

5.2 Strengths, weaknesses, and limitations of this study

This study attempted to correlate a large number of factors in order to understand the behavior of individual particles. While a more strictly statistical approach to these correlations may have been helpful, the fact remains that structuring such an analysis would have been extremely complicated, given the number of variables involved. Indeed, such statistical programs as *Goldvarb* would not have been capable of simultaneously examining all the variables. Even then, there would be no guarantee that the results would have been statistically significant. Thus, this study had to rely partially on the intuition of the analyst, in conjunction with the opinions of native speaker assistants, to establish connections between different variables.

The *Excel* database utilized in this study proved to be both a boon and a bane. The database proved an excellent way to store a vast amount of information in one place. Similarly, it was relatively simple to modify the database as the research progressed, adding new variable categories and updating sentence level information. It also was quite easy to sort the data in accordance with one, two, or three keys. As

mentioned earlier, the challenge lay in situations where more than three variables could have been at work. A more sophisticated sorting system, such as that employed in the *Cellar* computing environment would have been helpful, although the different strengths and limitations of *Excel* and *Cellar* in their current versions would have necessitated constant manual maintenance of two large parallel databases—a daunting task.

The methodology employed in this research was detailed and time-consuming. It was often difficult to know whether a “guess” on the role of a given particle would “pan out” until several hours of sorting and re-sorting had been carried out. Nonetheless, even when walking in the shadow of “dead ends,” new insights into Bisu constantly sprung up. Some of these realizations were incorporated into the present work, while others remain recorded in a 200 page dissertation-writing journal, seeds for future research.

5.3 Implications for linguistic theory and practice

The methodology utilized in this dissertation represents something of a different direction in the exploration of particles in Asian languages. Previous researchers, such as Cooke, Chan and Chu, have initiated examination into the pragmatics and sociolinguistics of particle usage in conversation. Others, such as Matisoff and Solnit, have looked at particles in the context of a descriptive sentence-level grammar. This represents the first study known to the author in which particles are approached from a text-based discourse perspective. That Bisu particle usage is impacted significantly by text type and point in the discourse underscores the validity of this approach and highlights the necessity of examining texts of a variety of types when writing the grammar of any Asian language.

5.4 Recommendations for further research

As is often the case with projects of this type, more questions were raised during the course of the research than could be properly addressed in a single dissertation.

The understanding of particle nature and usage gleaned from examining the written folktales, life stories, and expository texts has provided the researcher with a base from which to launch more detailed examinations of Bisu particles in conversational settings. Of particular interest is the vast number of imperative or imperative-like particles. What are the pragmatics involved in particle choice when one is trying to give a command? How does mitigation function in the Bisu context? How do the various gradations of Bisu commands correlate to other languages of the area, particularly Northern and Standard Thai?

In addition, the evidentiality system of Bisu is an area for further, deeper investigation. How does the Bisu inventory of evidentiality-indicating particles compare to that of the Akha language? What might this reveal about the Bisu world view?

Finally, it would be interesting to observe particles in additional text types and genres. This would “round out” the perspective on Bisu particles.

APPENDIX 1
FOLKTALE CORPUS

“AI KAM GOES FISHING” (AK)

Ai Kham 001

bisuu biit^haan ?aj k^ham
 Bisu fable Ai Kham
The Story of Ai Kham

Ai Kham 002

tùu núuŋ caa k^haalai ?aj k^ham naasóon k^ham càj tʃ^hii
 day one have pt-exis Ai Kham fish trap trap do pt-comp
One day Ai Kham went to trap fish.

Ai Kham 003

mùŋk^hii jàamlàeŋ hœe lánhúaj wə? laŋʃjaam t^hùu maŋ
 night evening at stream at otter one Clf
 cáa k^haalaj
 have pt-exis
When it was almost dark, at the stream, there was an otter.

Ai Kham 004

naasóon na? hmjaaŋ tʃ^hii jèe
 fish trap ACC see pt-comp pt-report
(He) saw the fish trap.

Ai Kham 005

jào naasóon hœe ?ooŋ læn tʃ^hii jèe
 then fish trap at enter descend pt-comp pt-report
And then he went into the fish trap.

Ai Kham 006

lòoŋt~~æe~~ ?ooŋ tsàa k^hoo pii tʃ^hii jèe
 fish enter eat completely pt-give pt-comp pt-report
(He) ate all the fish completely.

Ai Kham 007

cáa k^hoon jáo bàa ?ook lùu too ka? jèe
 have completely then neg exit pt-out pt-unable pt-st/abl pt-report
Then after the (fish) were all gone, he could not get out.

Ai Kham 008

ʃaapl~~æe~~ lajáo ?acām ka?taj t^hùu maŋ cáa k^haalaj
 early morning then then rabbit one Clf have pt-exis
Early it the morning, there was a rabbit.

Ai Kham 009

cǎŋkǎŋ tsaajlɯ jèe
 forest originate pt-report
(He) (was) from the forest

Ai Kham 010

laaŋ saa taŋ lɯjào
 water search drink and_then
(He) came looking for water

Ai Kham 011

laŋŋjaam maŋ naasón klaw hmjaan lɯjào laŋŋjaam maŋ na?
 otter Clf fish_trap inside see and_then otter Clf ACC
 naan tʃ^hii jèe
 ask pt-comp pt-report
And then (he) saw the otter in the trap and then asked the otter:

Ai Kham 012

náa t^hóo baacǎe háŋ naasón klaw
 2ps there what do fish_trap inside
"You there--What are you doing in the trap?"

Ai Kham 013

t^hóo ʔasáa ʔaŋsúuŋ maan lɯn jào naa mǎe haan wǎe
 there momentarily owner Clf return then 2ps what to do?
"In a minute, the owner will come--then what will you do?"

Ai Kham 014

náa ʃii kǎʔ naa ʔíi
 2ps die pt-st/abl pt-agreed? pt-obv
"You will die for sure."

Ai Kham 015

laŋŋjaam maŋ k^hǎe jèe
 otter Clf afraid pt-report
The otter was afraid.

Ai Kham 016

kaʔtaj maŋ naʔ mǎan páʔnóo
 rabbit Clf ACC tell pt-comp
(The otter) told the rabbit:

Ai Kham 017

t^háonaʔmǎe haajwaa
 what to do?
"Then what should I do?"

Ai Kham 018

plóŋ láʔ plǎe
 help pt-imp pt-pol
"Help me." (Imperative marker)

Ai Kham 019

kaʔtaj maŋ ciɪ lùu paanò
 rabbit Clf speak pt-out pt-comp
The rabbit said:

Ai Kham 020

t^hiimáe jào naŋ máeŋpòŋ ʔáaj lùu
 if like that then 2ps mouth open pt-imp
"If it's like that, open your mouth."

Ai Kham 021

laŋʃjaam maŋ màanpòŋ ʔáaj jào kaʔtaj maŋ ʔæŋk^hàa tɔɔj
 otter Clf mouth open then rabbit Clf fart release
 kaan piɪ paanò
 pt-st/abl pt-give pt-comp
The otter opened its mouth and then the rabbit farted into the otter's mouth.

Ai Kham 022

hik^hàm laŋʃjaam maŋ kaʔtaj maŋ ʔæŋk^hàa buum tʃ^hii pannò
 that time otter Clf rabbit Clf fart suck pt-comp pt-comp
At that time the otter sucked on the fart of the rabbit (kept it in its mouth).

Ai Kham 023

hik^hàm kaʔtaj maŋ lamaj tu lùm gaj jào tùu sook jèe
 that time rabbit Clf stick one Clf get then one forearm pt-report
 mɔɔŋ ŋæ
 length pt-st
At that time the rabbit got a stick that was a forearm's length.

Ai Kham 024

kalòkkaliik hæ tʃ^háp làejáo kiibaa t^haaŋ hæ
 underarm at insert and_then path beside at
 cɔɔn tʃ^hii jèe
 hide pt-comp pt-report
(The rabbit) inserted the stick under (the rabbit's) arm and went to hide himself alongside the path.

Ai Kham 025

ʔaj k^hàm jùu t^haa laajao naasón ʔæ praà càan paanò
 Ai Kham sleep awake and_then fish trap ascend look have pt-comp
Ai Kham woke up and went to look at the fish trap

Ai Kham 026

ʔaj k^hàm naasón jok lùujao laŋʃjaam maŋ naʔ hmjaŋ làe
 Ai Kham fish trap lift and_then otter Clf ACC see pt-emph
 tʃ^hii jèe
 pt-comp pt-report
Ai Kham lifted the trap up and then saw that otter.

Ai Kham 027

ʔoo laŋʃjaam naʔ maa ʃiin tʃ^háʔ máʔ
 Ooh! otter ACC Clf die pt-comp pt-neg_emp

"Ooh--this otter is dead already!"

Ai Kham 028

namʃaa baa tʃaábùu tʃʰii laa
 stinky neg delicious pt-comp pt-neg
"It stinks and won't be delicious at all."

Ai Kham 029

hikʰàm kaʔtaj maŋ jòɔj ʔɔɔk lùun paanòɔ
 that time rabbit Clf walk exit return pt-comp
Ajier that the rabbit came walking out.

Ai Kham 030

kʰiitʰóɔk kʰiitʰóɔk jèe
 hip-hop hip-hop pt-report
The rabbit hopped along.

Ai Kham 031

lamaj nìp læjao ʔaj kʰàm hmjaaŋ tʃʰii jèe
 stick insert and_then Ai Kham see pt-comp pt-report
(The rabbit had) the stick inserted (under its arm) and then Aikham saw it (and thought that that rabbit was injured, pierced by the stick).

Ai Kham 032

laŋʃjaam pùu namàa baa jùu kanna
 otter rotten this neg want pt-prefer
"(I) don't want this rotten otter!"

Ai Kham 033

laŋʃjaam maŋ wíi lùujào kaʔtaj maŋ naʔ tùun tʃʰii jèe
 otter Clf throw and_then rabbit Clf ACC hit pt-comp pt-report
(He) threw away the otter and then struck at the rabbit.

Ai Kham 034

hikʰàm kaʔtaj maŋ lamaj jàaŋ wíi lùujào ʃóɔk jèe
 that time rabbit Clf stick that throw and_then immediately pt-report
 hùun læn tʃʰii
 run pt-dnmot pt-comp
At that time the rabbit threw the stick and immediately ran away.

“CHENGKOIKOI, THE FEMALE SPIRIT” (CK)

Chengkoikoi 001

aq̄bii aq̄blooŋ t^hùu kùu caaŋ jèe
 wife husband one couple have pt-report
There was a husband and wife.

Chengkoikoi 002

lòoŋtǎe suuŋ kàʔʃaa læ tʃ^hii
 fish go_together search pt-dnmet pt-comp
They went out fishing.

Chengkoikoi 003

pùuŋluŋ gaaj jào paadük næ haan jèe
 punlung_fish get then catfish pt-end_qt tell pt-report
When they caught a punlung fish, they said it was a catfish.

Chengkoikoi 004

paadük gaaj jào pùuŋluŋ næ haan jèe
 catfish get then punlung_fish pt-end_qt tell pt-report
And when they got a catfish, they said it was a punlung fish.

Chengkoikoi 005

cáa hǎaŋhǎaŋ læ tamlǎe t^hàalǎe tʃ^hǎŋkǝj kǝj maŋ tʃ^huu
 then like that go continue and_then Chengkoikoi Clf grab
 buun tʃ^hii jèe
 take pt-comp pt-report
And as (they) were going along like that, then Chengkoi came and grabbed (the husband) and took (him) away.

Chengkoikoi 006

cáa k^hàabaa máa k^hǎe k^hòoŋ ǎen
 then wife Clf afraid village ascend
Then that wife was afraid and went back to the village.

Chengkoikoi 007

jaowáa tʃ^hǎŋkǝj kǝj maŋ aq̄blooŋ tǎen tʃ^hii jèe
 and_then Chengkoikoi Clf husband do pt-comp pt-report
Chengkoi made him her husband.

Chengkoikoi 008

aŋjǎa t^hùu màaŋ gá jèe
 child one Clf get pt-report
They had one child.

Chengkoikoi 009

cáa ~~æŋ~~ laajèe miinɔŋ t^hútʃ^hit ná? ~~æŋ~~ ɲææ
 then ascend and_then today just_a_second pt-ast ascend pt-st
When she went out, she would say "I'm going out for just a little while."

Chengkoikoi 010

cáa mlàaŋ kaajèe ~~æ~~ ɲææ
 then long_time very ascend pt-st
But really she would go for a very long time.

Chengkoikoi 011

tʃ^h~~æŋ~~kɔ́ɔjkɔ́ɔj maŋ laŋkɔ́ɔ p^hiɪ tʃ^hiɪ tʃ^hàŋ jèe
 Chengkoikoi Clf door close pt-comp pt-comp pt-report
Chengkoi would lock the door as she left.

Chengkoikoi 012

nòɔŋt^hóo aŋjää màaŋ k^hataa jèe
 after_that child Clf together pt-report
After a while, his child did the same.

Chengkoikoi 013

miinɔŋ aŋmlàaŋ ka? ʔææ ɲææ
 today long_time pt-st/abl ascend pt-st
"Today I'll go for a long time."

Chengkoikoi 014

jào kaʔtʃ^hitkannaʔjèe ~~æ~~ ɲææ
 then short_time ascend pt-st
and then went for a short time.

Chengkoikoi 015

cáa ~~haa~~haaj jao ʔaŋboon maŋ ʔóok sɛu jao aŋjää maŋ na?
 then like that then father Clf exit want then child Clf ACC
 máaj tʃ^hiɪ jèe
 tell pt-comp pt-report
After that, his father wanted to escape and told the child:

Chengkoikoi 016

ʔàaboŋ na? tɔɔj làapao
 father ACC release pt-imp
"Release your father, o.k.?"

Chengkoikoi 017

ʔiɪʃiɪ tʃ^h~~æ~~ k^haa ná?
 urine hurt pt-imp_req pt-end_qt
"(I) really have to urinate."

Chengkoikoi 018

cáa aŋjää màaŋ tɔɔj lùu tʃ^hiɪ jèe
 then child Clf release pt-out pt-comp pt-report
Then the child released him to go.

Chengkoikoi 019

aqjää màaŋ tɔɔj lùujao hùun læn tʃʰii jèe
 child Clf release and_then run pt-dnmot pt-comp pt-report
When the child released him, he ran away.

Chengkoikoi 020

jɔɔŋ juum bàa kʰəə lùuküŋ jèe
 3pp house neg arrive return pt-report
But he did not make it to his house.

Chengkoikoi 021

kootæ wæ jùun ʔæ tʃʰii jèe
 rice_field at lie_down ascend pt-comp pt-report
He went and lay down in a rice field.

Chengkoikoi 022

cáa koowæ hæŋ ʔuun pʰòɔj læ tʃʰii jèe
 then rice_head that shake scatter pt-dnmot pt-comp pt-report
And then he shook the rice heads over his body.

Chengkoikoi 023

hæŋjèe tʃʰæŋkɔɔjkɔɔj maŋ bæŋ jao hùun kʰèe læn tʃʰii
 after_that Chengkoikoi Clf know then run follow pt-dnmot pt-comp
After that, when Chengkoikoi realized what had happened, she ran after him.

Chengkoikoi 024

cáa hmjaŋ tʃʰii jèe
 then see pt-comp pt-report
Then she saw him.

Chengkoikoi 025

ʔiinæʔhaŋjèe gaa aŋbloɔŋ naamaa ʔaalòom ʃii ka? tʃʰii
 Ooh! Why? 1ps husband this_one when? die pt-st/abl pt-comp
"Ooh! When did my husband die?"

Chengkoikoi 026

mæŋʔuu ʔæ
 fly_eggs pt-aff
"He's covered with fly eggs."

Chengkoikoi 027

naʔmænbaanæ?
 why_thus?
"Why is it like this?"

Chengkoikoi 028

jào kiilíkkʰəə jèe
 then tickle pt-report
And then she tickled him.

Chengkoikoi 029

cáa bàa ?ǎu laa jèe
 then neg laugh pt-neg pt-report
But he did not laugh.

Chengkoikoi 030

kiilíkk^hèə jao haaj màaj càa tʃ^hii jèe
 tickle then do tell have pt-comp pt-report
She tickled him and then ordered.

Chengkoikoi 031

ʃoo aŋʃuŋjaowəə na? ʃiin maamaa tʃ^haa
 well, beloved ACC die truly pt-comp
"Well, my beloved one has really died."

Chengkoikoi 032

gaa k^hàm ʃāaj làa paana?
 lps gold search pt-ben pt-agreed?
"I will go search for gold, o.k.?"

Chengkoikoi 033

hæŋjèe moʃjoŋ làaj ?æ tʃ^hii
 after_that gong get ascend pt-comp
After that, she went and got a gong.

Chengkoikoi 034

naŋ kéəŋ kátkám ?æ jào hniŋ tʃ^hək kannoo pèe
 2nd person where? born pt-aff then strike strike pt-imp pt-pol
(And she said), "Wherever you're reincarnated, beat this gong."

Chengkoikoi 035

moŋ jào k^hàm ?oʃk ŋæ
 sound then gold exit pt-st
"Beat it (the first time) and gold will come out."

Chengkoikoi 036

moŋ jào p^hluu ?oʃk ŋæ
 sound then silver exit pt-st
"Beat it (the second time) and silver will come out."

Chengkoikoi 037

māaj na?waa cǎŋwá?ŋāaŋ máa k^hoo?ùpk^hoo jao jaŋ læn tʃ^hii
 tell pt-give rhythm Clf completely then lps pt-dnmt pt-comp
 jèe
 pt-report
When she had told him everything about the rhythm she left.

Chengkoikoi 038

hæŋjèe tʃ^hæŋkɔʃkɔʃk maŋ læn jao hùn ?æŋ tʃ^hii
 after_that Chengkoikoi Clf pt-dnmt then run ascend pt-comp
After Chengkoikoi had left, he ran away.

Chengkoikoi 039

jɔɔŋ juum wəə k^hàabaa maŋkɔɔŋ dʉŋ ʔæə tʃ^hii
 3pp house at wife that one live pt-aff pt-comp
At his house he went and lived with his wife.

Chengkoikoi 040

cáa moɔjɔŋ tʃ^hák jèe
 then gong strike pt-report
Then he struck the gong.

Chengkoikoi 041

t^hùu kàm tʃ^hák k^hàm ʔɔɔk
 one time strike gold exit
He struck it and gold came out.

Chengkoikoi 042

t^hùu kàm tʃ^hák p^hluu ʔɔɔk
 one time strike silver exit
He struck it (the second time) and silver came out.

Chengkoikoi 043

hæŋjèe caan laa tʃ^hii
 after_that have pt-pos pt-comp
After that, he was rich.

“POOR BOY” (PB)

Poor Boy 001

ʔiikee aŋtùk jàakee t^hùu màaŋ cáaŋ jèe
 child poor child one ClF have pt-report
There was a poor boy.

Poor Boy 002

aŋtùk jèe
 poor pt-report
(He) was very poor.

Poor Boy 003

ʔoo nææ gá jàa tùk p^hàan baacæe
 Ooh! pt-end_qt lps like_this poor poor what
"Oh! I'm so poor---what am I going to do?"

Poor Boy 004

haajwaa hjaa bjàaj lææ paanæ?
 do hillfield clear pt-dnmot pt-agreed?
"Better to go clear a hillfield, right?"

Poor Boy 005

hæŋjéecáa màamàamáamáa sùuk^hòò námpla? k^hlaaj jào
 after_that true cucumber melon plant then
 sùuk^hòò jàaŋ mæn laa tʃ^hii jèe
 cucumber that good pt-comp pt-comp pt-report
After that, he truly planted cucumbers and melons and then those cucumbers were good.

Poor Boy 006

cáa mín laajao kasæej ʔooŋ tsàan pii tʃ^hii jèe
 then sprout and_then monkey enter eat pt-give pt-comp pt-report
(When) they had sprouted, the monkeys came and ate them

Poor Boy 007

cáa haaj jèe
 then tell pt-report
Then he said

Poor Boy 008

ʔæ gaa sùuk^hòò námpla? nii bàa gaa kòoŋ càa tʃ^hii laa
 Ooh! lps cucumber melon this neg able sell have pt-comp pt-neg
"Oh! I won't be able to sell these cucumbers and melons!"

Poor Boy 009

gaa ~~mæ~~ haaj wá?
 lps what do pt-quest
 "What should I do?"

Poor Boy 010

læ sjii ~~kækæ~~ læ tʃ^hii jèe
 go die act pt-dnmot pt-comp pt-report
 (He) went and acted like he had died.

Poor Boy 011

sjii ~~kækæ~~ kasəj muuloŋ jaəŋ ləun tʃ^hii jèe cáa
 die act monkey group that come pt-comp pt-report pt-emph
 (When he) went and acted like he had died, that group of monkeys indeed came.

Poor Boy 012

?əənæhaəŋjèe na? maŋ sjiin tʃ^há? má?
 Uuuuuuh! ACC Clf die pt-comp pt-neg_emp
 "Uuh! This (thing) has died already!"

Poor Boy 013

?asáa naa maŋ pùun jaò mæ? tsàabùu næ
 momentarily ACC Clf rotten then neg delicious pt-end_qt
 "In a moment this (thing) will be rotten and (make the cucumbers) not be delicious."

Poor Boy 014

wii læ paəŋadèò
 throw pt-dnmot pt-imp
 "Go throw it away!"

Poor Boy 015

cɯŋcɯŋ t^hàa lám kaa læn tʃ^hii jèe
 tree above carry pt-jnt pt-dnmot pt-comp pt-report
 (They) carried (him) up into a tree.

Poor Boy 016

aŋŋúuŋ jèe
 slowly pt-report
 (They went along) slowly.

Poor Boy 017

ʒɔɔŋ hæŋ naəŋ kaəŋ jèe
 3pp that ask pt-jnt pt-report
 They were asking each other,

Poor Boy 018

ʒɔɔ kəŋ wii ?æ wá? nə?
 well, where throw ascend pt-quest pt-end_qt
 "Well, where are we going to throw (him).?"

Poor Boy 019

k^hàm kòòŋkjaa láa ?áo p^hluu kòòŋkjaa
 gold shaft or that silver shaft
 "In the gold mine shaft or the silver mine shaft?"

Poor Boy 020

p^hluu kòòŋkjaa wii kan ?ææ jəəwàa
 silver shaft throw pt-jnt ascend pt-better
 "(Let's) go throw him down the silver mine shaft."

Poor Boy 021

hæŋjèe cáa p^hluu kòòŋkjaa koojkoj næ? wii ?ææ tʃ^hii
 after_that then silver shaft slowly pt throw ascend pt-comp
 After that they slowly went to the silver mine and threw (him) in.

Poor Boy 022

kasəej ?uŋ læk k^hoo jào p^hluu jàaŋ han ææn tʃ^hii
 monkey group finish completely then silver that take ascend pt-comp
 When the group of monkeys had all left, then he took the silver and left.

Poor Boy 023

jòocáa t^huŋ màaŋ hmjaaŋ laa tʃ^hii jèe
 then one Cif see pt-comp pt-comp pt-report
 And then one person saw him.

Poor Boy 024

jaaŋ aŋtʃ^hàŋ jèe
 3ps friend pt-report
 He was a friend.

Poor Boy 025

náa baacəə mææ haaj caa laa ?ææ
 2ps what what do have pt-pos pt-aff
 "How did you get rich?"

Poor Boy 026

?oo næ? gaa hjaa bjàaj caa laa ?ææ
 Ooh! pt-end Qt 1ps hillfield clear have pt-pos pt-aff
 "Ohh--I cleared a hill field (and got) rich!"

Poor Boy 027

hjaa bjàaj sùuk^hòò námp^hla? k^hlaaj caa laa ?ææ
 hillfield clear cucumber melon plant have pt-pos pt-aff
 "After (I) cleared the field, (I) planted cucumbers and melons--got rich."

Poor Boy 028

kaasəej muuloŋ oŋ jáo s^hii kækəkæ lææ ?ææ
 monkey group enter then die act pt-dnmot pt-aff
 "And a group of monkeys came in and I acted as if I was dead."

Poor Boy 029

māaj tʃ^hii cáa
 tell pt-comp pt-emph
(He) told (him) everything.

Poor Boy 030

jaaŋ haan læe naowaa
 3ps wrap and_take_go pt-rep_ep
He took (some things) and went.

Poor Boy 031

māamāamāamāa hjaa buuj
 true hillfield clear
Truly (he) cleared a hillfield.

Poor Boy 032

sùuk^hòo námpla? k^hlaaj cáa mēen hæeloo jèe
 cucumber melon plant then good same pt-report
(He) planted cucumbers and melons then they were as good as before.

Poor Boy 033

mēen jao haa jáo
 good then do then
 jaaŋ cáa māamāamāamāa ʃii kækæe læe tʃ^hii
 3ps then true die act pt-dnmot pt-comp
When they were good, then he truly went and acted as if he had died.

Poor Boy 034

cáa naan laŋkaa naowaa kasəəj ?uu
 then ask pt-jnt pt-rep_ep monkey group
Then they asked each other--part.--the monkeys:

Poor Boy 035

baacəəhaan tʃ^hii ?àacān
 what's that? pt-comp another
"What's that--another one!"

Poor Boy 036

bàa tsàa bàa tǎŋ bùu tʃ^hii laa má?
 neg eat neg drink good pt-comp pt-neg pt-neg_emp
"(The cucumbers and melons) won't be delicious!"

Poor Boy 037

na? maŋ pùun
 ACC Clf rotten
"This (will) rot."

Poor Boy 038

jáo dèw wii læe paanaa
 then go throw pt-dnmot pt-agreed?
"Let's go throw it away, o.k.?"

Poor Boy 039

lam kaa læn naowaa
 carry pt-jnt pt-dnmot pt-rep_ep
(They) carried (him) away.

Poor Boy 040

cəŋcəŋ t^hàa han læn tʃ^hii jèe
 tree above take pt-dnmot pt-comp pt-report
(They) took (him) up into a tree.

Poor Boy 041

lam ka? læe cáa naan laŋka? læe tʃ^hii jèe
 carry pt-jnt pt-dnmot then ask pt-jnt pt-rep pt-comp pt-report
(When they) carried him then they asked each other again.

Poor Boy 042

cəəkəəŋ wii læe wá? nə?
 where throw pt-dnmot pt-quest pt-end_qt
"Where should (we) throw (him)?"

Poor Boy 043

k^hám kòŋkjaa láa ʔao p^hluu kòŋkjaa
 gold shaft or or silver shaft
"The gold mine shaft or the silver mine shaft?"

Poor Boy 044

p^hluu kòŋkjaa nə? máaj tʃ^hii jèe
 silver shaft pt-end_qt tell pt-comp pt-report
"The silver mine shaft" (they) said.

Poor Boy 045

hæŋjèe wii ləu tʃ^hii
 after_that throw pt-out pt-comp
After that (they) threw (him) away.

Poor Boy 046

bòom jèe
 Boom! pt-report
Boom!

Poor Boy 047

ʃii
 die
Dead.

“DON'T DARE THINK YOU'RE CLEVER!” (CO)

Don't Dare Think You're Clever! 001

k^hàatsoŋ ~~æn~~ ŋææ næ? ?àahaa tsàalææ coo
 self clever pt-st pt-end_qt pt-neg_imp think pt-neg_imp
Don't think you are clever.

Don't Dare Think You're Clever! 002

jàamàŋ k^hàabaajàa soŋ k^hùn caaŋ jèe
 old_person female two Clf have pt-report
There were two old ladies.

Don't Dare Think You're Clever! 003

lòŋtææ suŋ ka? saa læ tʃ^hii jèe
 fish go_together pt search pt-drmot pt-comp pt-report
They went out looking for fish together.

Don't Dare Think You're Clever! 004

cǎŋkōŋ laaŋhuaŋ hæ jèet aŋméŋ jàaŋ p^hii k^hàm
 forest stream at both name that grandmother Kham
 næ? p^hii ùp jèe
 and grandmother Up pt-report
At the forest stream the two were named Grandmother Kham and Grandmother Up.

Don't Dare Think You're Clever! 005

aŋdàa mæn ja?jèa plòŋ sǎan laŋ ká? tʃ^hii
 initially good that help search that pt-jnt pt
At first they helped each other find fish diligently.

Don't Dare Think You're Clever! 006

lòŋtææ aŋʔii aŋhùu aŋtsaa æn nǎ? jèe
 fish little large have both pt-ast pt-report
[They] had both large and small fish.

Don't Dare Think You're Clever! 007

tùutʃ^hit jáo jèetmii lòŋtææ saa jàaŋ wàŋ tʃ^hii
 soon then both fish search that quit pt-comp
 jèe
 pt-report
Not long thereafter they both quit looking for fish.

Don't Dare Think You're Clever! 008

lòŋtææ gaaj bjàa ká? tʃ^hii jèe
 fish get many pt-st/abl pt-comp pt-report
They got a lot of fish.

Don't Dare Think You're Clever! 009

wàŋ jào jèetmii pəəŋ laŋká? tʃʰii jèe
 quit then both share pt-jnt pt-comp pt-report
When they had quit, then those two divided [the fish].

Don't Dare Think You're Clever! 010

cáa pʰii kʰám nəʔtʃʰii máa taŋhaa tsan laa tʃʰii
 then grandmother Kham that Clf greed have pt-comp pt-comp
 jèe
 pt-report
Then Grandmother Kham got greedy.

Don't Dare Think You're Clever! 011

jaaŋ kooj pəəŋ tʃʰii jèe
 3ps person share pt-comp pt-report
She thus was the divider.

Don't Dare Think You're Clever! 012

jaaŋ laʔkáa həə aŋtoŋ aŋhəu əən já? jèe
 3ps in_front_of at self large both pt-many pt-report
All the large ones were in front of her.

Don't Dare Think You're Clever! 013

jào pʰii ùp laʔkáa həə lòŋtəə aŋʔii əən
 then grandmother Up in_front_of at fish little all
 já? jèe
 pt-mapr-report
And then in front of Grandmother Up, there were only small fish.

Don't Dare Think You're Clever! 014

tʃʰəə pii tʃʰii jèe
 choose pt-give pt-comp pt-report
(She) chose to give (her) those.

Don't Dare Think You're Clever! 015

pəəŋ pəən jào pʰii kʰám nəʔtʃʰii má? uuj lùu
 share finish then grandmother Kham that Clf speak pt-out
 tʃʰii jèe
 pt-comp pt-report
When they had finished dividing, Grandmother Kham spoke and said:

Don't Dare Think You're Clever! 016

joo naŋ kʰaʔkoo ʔuəkooj pao baacəə laʔmaŋmi?
 well, 2nd person pile gather pt-imp what alright
"Well, take whichever pile you want."

Don't Dare Think You're Clever! 017

cáa pʰii ùp aŋbəə kʰəət kaa jèe
 then grandmother Up know technique pt-st/abi pt-report
But Grandmother Up knew/realized the technique.

Don't Dare Think You're Clever! 018

p^hi i k^hàm laʔkáa lòŋtæ kooŋ jàaŋ kooj jáo

grandmother Kham in_front_of fish pile that person then

juum hæə æn læ tʃ^hi i jèe

house at ascend pt-drmot pt-comp pt-report

[So], she took those fish that were piled up in front of Grandmother Kham and then went home.

Don't Dare Think You're Clever! 019

p^hi i k^hàm hao k^hèen tʃ^hi i jèe

grandmother Kham call follow pt-comp pt-report

Grandmother Kham called out after her:

Don't Dare Think You're Clever! 020

aŋʃùu pəəŋ láʔ pannoo

new share pt-rep pt-agreed?

"Let's divide those again."

Don't Dare Think You're Clever! 021

gaa lòŋtæ pəəŋ tʃ^hi nìi bàa gaa nõo

1ps fish share this neg correctly pt-neg_agreed?

"I divided them incorrectly, you know."

Don't Dare Think You're Clever! 022

p^hi i ùp mi bàa nāa jèe jaaŋ tsii naʔ

grandmother Up well, neg hear pt-report 3ps speak ACC

Grandmother Up, well, did not hear what she had said.

Don't Dare Think You're Clever! 023

jaaŋ juum hæə æn tʃ^hi i jèe kjàap jèe

3ps house at ascend pt-comp pt-report quiet pt-report

She thus returned home quietly

Don't Dare Think You're Clever! 024

bìit^haan naʔ maŋ kàmsoonjaaŋ

fable ACC Clf teaching

The moral of this story:

Don't Dare Think You're Clever! 025

háaknaʔ bàa sùu bàa sāj nəʔ ?àahaa coo

other_people neg straight neg pure and pt-neg_imp pt-neg_imp

Don't think about being crooked with other people.

Don't Dare Think You're Clever! 026

ts^haaŋ nīi t^huŋgāa nəʔ dʉŋ jào lák huum kaʔ joo

people this together and live then love love pt-jnt pt-imp

We people live together and need to love each other, you know.

Don't Dare Think You're Clever! 027

háaknaʔ bàa mæn nəʔ haaj jào k^hàatooŋ naʔ mæ gaaj

other_people neg good and do then self ACC same get

k^hùn lǎ̀ɛ̀ŋ ɣǎ̀ɛ̀
return pt-dnmot pt-st
Do bad to others and it will return to you.

“LESSONS FROM MOTHER AND FATHER” (FM)

Lessons from Father and Mother 001

aqbaa aqbooŋ kàmsɔɔn
 mother father teachings
Father and Mother's Teachings.

Lessons from Father and Mother 002

ʔiik^haatæ ts^haaŋ caaŋ jèe
 long_{aqc} people have pt-report
A long time ago there were people.

Lessons from Father and Mother 003

aqbaa aqbooŋ caaŋ jèe
 mother father have pt-report
There were a mother and a father.

Lessons from Father and Mother 004

aqjãa sɔoŋ k^hùn jèe
 child two Clf pt-report
(They had) two children.

Lessons from Father and Mother 005

càawàa aqbooŋ máa ʃiin ʔii tʃ^hii jèe
 then father Clf die pt-give pt-comp pt-report
But their father died.

Lessons from Father and Mother 006

hæŋjèe aqbaa maŋ tũu k^hùn næ pɔɔ tʃ^hii aqjãa sɔoŋ
 after_{that} mother Clf day Clf npt care_{for} pt-comp child two
 k^hùn na?
 Clf ACC
After that, the mother cared for (them)--the two children

Lessons from Father and Mother 007

aqjãa ʔũu k^hɔɔ jaa jèe
 child 3pp grow_{up} pt-result pt-report
(Until) the two children grew up.

Lessons from Father and Mother 008

pɔɔ cãj tʃ^hii jaŋ tũu k^hùn
 care_{for} watch pt-comp 3ps day Clf
(She) raised (just) one (of the two children).

Lessons from Father and Mother 009

næ hæŋ aŋjãa tùu k^hùn màaŋ na? wàt dʊŋ làæ pii
 and that child one Clf Clf ACC temple live pt-upmo year
tʃ^hii jèe
 pt-comp pt-report

And caused the other child to live in the temple.

Lessons from Father and Mother 010

wàt dʊŋ làæ pii tʃ^hii maŋp^hæe màaŋ jèe
 temple live pt-upmct pt-give pt-comp younger_brother Clf pt-report

The one caused to live at the temple was the younger brother.

Lessons from Father and Mother 011

jàocáajãa aŋ?áj maa wàa juum dʊŋ aŋbaa màaŋ na?
 then older_brother Clf this house live mother Clf ACC
pooj dʊŋ kaŋ jèe
 care_for live pt-st/abl pt-report

And his older brother stayed at home and took care of his mother.

Lessons from Father and Mother 012

ku wàn ju wàn ja? jèe aŋbaa màaŋ na? hàaŋ
 every day each day pt-many pt-report mother Clf ACC rice
tsàa laaŋ taŋ? àeŋ? iisii tʃ^hii piŋ ŋæe
 eat water drink excrement urine clean pt-give pt-st

Every single day, he would feed his mother rice and give her water to drink and clean her dung and urine for her.

Lessons from Father and Mother 013

lèŋ níi maa jáakee naa màaj bæe làæ piŋ ŋæe
 story this Clf child ACC tell know pt-emp pt-give pt-st

This story tells the children causing (them) to know.

Lessons from Father and Mother 014

k^haatæe ts^haaŋ wàa ?up kaa ŋæe
 long_ago people this speak pt-jnt pt-st

In the past, people said:

Lessons from Father and Mother 015

praa níi wàa aŋbaa kùn naa tàæn jèe
 novice_monk this this mother merciful_grace ACC repay pt-report

The novice monk repays the meriful grace of his mother.

Lessons from Father and Mother 016

jào saatu níi wàa aŋboŋ kùn naa tàæn jèe
 then ordained_monk this this father merciful_grace ACC repay pt-report

And the ordained monk repays the meriful grace of his father.

Lessons from Father and Mother 017

hæŋjèe biit^haan kàmsoon tàeŋ
 after_that fable teachings repay

From this, repay the fable.

Lessons from Father and Mother 018

ʔaŋluuk ʔaŋlaan naʔ soon ŋææ
children grandchildren ACC teach pt-st
Teach (your) children and grandchildren.

“ORPHAN CHILDREN” (OR)

Orphan Children 001

jàatʃ^hàojàa

orphans

The orphans

Orphan Children 002

mlàaŋ kaʔtʃ^hajèe aŋbii aŋblooŋ tùu kùu caaŋ jèe

long_time long_ago wife husband one couple have pt-report

A long time ago, there was a husband and wife—one couple.

Orphan Children 003

aŋjàa sooŋ k^hùn caaŋ ŋææ

child two Clf have pt-st

They had two children

Orphan Children 004

bàa mlàaŋ jào k^habaa maŋ ʃiin tʃ^hii jèe

neg long_time then wife Clf die pt-comp pt-report

Not long thereafter the wife died.

Orphan Children 005

cáa aŋbooŋ maŋ hææŋ jèe k^habaa aŋʃùu jùun lææ tʃ^hii

then father Clf that pt-report wife new want pt-rep pt-comp

Then their father married a new wife.

Orphan Children 006

cáa aŋbaa aŋʃùu máa aŋjàa màŋ jèet naa bàa soo jèe

then mother new Clf child Clf both ACC neg like pt-report

And the new mother did not like the two children.

Orphan Children 007

hææŋjèe aŋblooŋ maŋ naʔ máaʃ sææ pii tʃ^hii

after_that husband Clf ACC tell kill pt-give pt-comp

After that, she told her husband to kill both of the children.

Orphan Children 008

k^habaa maŋ naʔ k^hææ aŋbooŋ maŋ hææŋjèe

wife Clf ACC afraid father Clf after_that

còoŋkòoŋ ʃùuʃ tɔɔj lææ tʃ^hii

forest go_together release pt-upmot pt-comp

Out of fear of his wife, the father took the children to the forest and let them go.

Orphan Children 009

cáa jàakee maŋ jèet mi kuu t^həə jèe juum
 then child Clf both well, every occurrence pt-report house
 aŋlɯ ləə gaa kaa
 return pt-rep pt-able pt-st/abl
Then both children, well, every time were able to return home.

Orphan Children 010

màj k^hùu aŋbaa tùu too k^hèe plòŋ jèe
 because dog mother one Clf follow help pt-report
Because there was one mother dog that followed and helped them.

Orphan Children 011

cáa aŋbaa aŋjùu maŋ bæen tʃ^hii jèe
 then mother new Clf know pt-comp pt-report
Then the new mother realized (it).

Orphan Children 012

háŋjèe aŋbloŋ maŋ na? máaj sàe hoo núuŋ t^haw jàakee maŋ
 after_that husband Clf ACC tell kill wrap steam wrap child Clf
 jèet naa t^haw haan càj pìi tʃ^hii
 both ACC wrap wrap and take eat pt-give pt-comp
After that, she thus told her husband to kill that dog and put it in a steamed leaf bundle and give it to both children to eat.

Orphan Children 013

jao aŋbloŋ maŋ na? máaj tʃ^hii jèe
 then husband Clf ACC tell pt-comp pt-report
Then she told her husband:

Orphan Children 014

ni kām wəənəə tʃ^hi pʰákoŋ tooj ləw baa pii
 this occurrence far far release then neg pt-give
 lɯ ləə too coo nəə
 return pt-upmot pt-unable pt-neg_imp pt-end_qt
"This time take them to a far place to release them and then don't let them be able to come back!"

Orphan Children 015

cáa ni kām máa aŋboŋ maŋ aŋjàa jèet naa
 then this occurrence Clf father Clf child both ACC
 còŋkòŋ aŋwəə sùuj tooj ləə tʃ^hii jèe
 forest far go_together release pt-upmot pt-comp pt-report
Then this time their father took both children far into the forest together and released them.

Orphan Children 016

jàakee maŋ jèet mi baa sùuj kaa lɯ
 child Clf both well, neg go_together pt-st/abl return
 ləə too kaa jèe
 pt-upmot pt-unable pt-st/abl pt-report
The two children were unable to return together.

Orphan Children 017

Ƴacām k^hùu aŋbaa kuut^həə nǎə k^hèe plòŋ maŋ bàa
 then dog mother every occurrence npt follow help Clf neg
 caa lá?waa
 have pt-any

In addition, the mother dog who always followed and helped them was not there any more.

Orphan Children 018

háəŋjèe kǎba sùuj kaajluŋ lá? tʃ^hii
 after_that path go_together lost pt-rep pt-comp
 After that, they were lost together.

Orphan Children 019

cáa ts^haaŋ aŋcaa aŋpaŋ aŋbii aŋbloŋ tùu kùu naa hmjaŋ
 then people have rich wife husband one couple ACC see
 ʔǎə tʃ^hii jèe
 pt-aff pt-comp pt-report
 Then they met a rich, wealthy husband and wife.

Orphan Children 020

jèet mi aŋjàa bàa caa jèe
 both well, child neg have pt-report
 Both of them did not have children.

Orphan Children 021

háəŋjèe jàakee maŋ jèet naa aŋjàa p^həəj pii tʃ^hii
 after_that child Clf both ACC child to_be pt-give pt-comp
 After that, they made the two children their children.

Orphan Children 022

cáa jàakee maŋ jèet k^hòŋ lajào tùu nuŋ máa aŋbaa aŋsùu
 then child Clf both grow_up then one day Clf mother new
 maŋ kjàan tʃ^hii jèe
 Clf hear pt-comp pt-report
 The two children both grew up and then one day the new mother heard

Orphan Children 023

ts^haaŋ aŋcaa aŋpaŋ soŋ k^hùn caaŋ ɲǎə
 people have rich two Clf have pt-st
 "There were two rich people."

Orphan Children 024

ts^haaŋ aŋtùuk naa plòŋ ɲǎə nǎə
 people poor ACC help pt-st pt-end_qt
 "(They) help poor people."

Orphan Children 025

háəŋjèe aŋbloŋ maŋ na? tʃ^haaŋ háaŋ pàa tsàan
 after_that husband Clf ACC invite rice ask eat
 After that, she took her husband to go beg for rice to eat.

Orphan Children 026

cáa ?ææ k^hən ?ææ jào ts^haaŋ aŋcaa aŋpaŋ maŋ jèet
 then ascend already ascend then people have rich Clf both
 mi aŋcam gaa kaa jèe
 well, remember pt-able pt-jnt pt-report
When they arrived, the two rich people were able to remember.

Orphan Children 027

jèet aŋbaa aŋbooŋ maŋ hǎæŋ jèe
 both mother father Clf that pt-report
(that) they were the parents of both children.

Orphan Children 028

juum t^hàa hǎe hǎo taaj laa pìi jao hàanp^həən caam
 house above at call go come pt-give then tray have
 lǎu pìi tʃ^hii
 prepare pt-give pt-comp
After that they called them to come up into the house, then they prepared a tray of food food and took it out (to them).

Orphan Children 029

jao jèet mi haŋ jèe
 then both well, tell pt-report
Then both of them said:

Orphan Children 030

baa wǎe booŋ wǎe tsàaj pao
 mother pt-pol father pt-pol eat pt-imp
"Mother dear, father dear, eat!"

Orphan Children 031

k^hùu hòo nuuŋ jàaŋ náj hǎæmǎ? t^haw pìi
 dog wrap steam that you_two in_past wrap pt-give
 lá? tʃ^hii jàaŋ
 pt-ben pt-comp pt-negben
"Dog in a steamed leaf bundle like you once gave us."

Orphan Children 032

hǎæmǎ kjàaj jao aŋbooŋ máa namlǎæw jèe nuuŋbaa plaak
 like_that hear then father Clf finally pt-report heart break
 ʃiin tʃ^hii
 die pt-comp
When he heard that, the father's heart broke and he immediately died.

Orphan Children 033

cáa aŋbaa aŋʃùu máa hǎæmǎ hmjaan jao aŋwàj jèe
 then mother new Clf like_that see then quickly pt-report
 juum ?ook hǎe plæk klaan lǎ? tʃ^hii
 house exit at jump fall pt-out pt-comp
Then when the new mother saw that, then she quickly jumped out of the house and fell to the ground.

Orphan Children 034

nəŋtʃ^hàa həə k^həə kancàŋ nəŋtʃ^hàa jàaŋ plaak
 soil at arrive that_time soil that break

láʔ tʃ^hii jèe

pt-natdis pt-comp pt-report

When she hit the ground the earth opened.

Orphan Children 035

cúut jèe aŋbaa aŋʃùu maŋ kaaj ~~æn~~ tʃ^hii
 enter pt-report mother new Clf fall go pt-comp

The new mother fell into (the chasm).

“THE CRUEL WIDOWER” (CW)

The Cruel Widower 001

aŋbooŋ pɔ́ɔmáaj nɛŋbaa bàa mæ̀n
 father widower heart neg good
The bad hearted widower-father.

The Cruel Widower 002

k^haatæ̀ ts^haaŋ caaŋ jèe
 long_ago people have pt-report
A long time ago there were these people.

The Cruel Widower 003

k^haatæ̀ mə? saam k^hùn aŋbaa aŋbooŋ aŋjàa næ̀ dɛŋ jèe
 long_ago when three Clf mother father child npt live pt-report
In the past there were three people--mother, father, and child--living together.

The Cruel Widower 004

t^hùugaa laagaanæ̀ dɛŋ bàa sii bàa læ̀ kaa jèe
 together together live neg quarrel neg fight pt-st/abl pt-report
They lived together without quarrelling or fighting.

The Cruel Widower 005

jào bàa mlàaŋ sɛ̀mə cáa aŋbaa maŋ siin pii tʃ^hii jèe
 then neg long_time well, then mother Clf die pt-give pt-comp pt-report
And then, not long thereafter, the mother died.

The Cruel Widower 006

jao aŋjàa aŋbooŋ nə? dɛŋ mlàaŋ ká? tʃ^há? jèe
 then child father npt live long_time pt-st/abl pt-comp pt-report
Then the child and father lived together for a long time.

The Cruel Widower 007

sooŋ k^hùn aŋjàa aŋbooŋ nə? dɛŋ laajláj pii já? jèe
 two Clf child father npt live many year pt-many pt-report
The father and child lived together for many years.

The Cruel Widower 008

ni k^hám wáa aŋbooŋ maŋ k^hàabaa aŋsùu gaa læ̀
 this time this father Clf wife new pt-desire pt-rep
 siŋ jèe
 pt-desire pt-report
At this time, the father wanted a new wife.

The Cruel Widower 009

jào k^hàabaajàa t^hùu maŋ na? hmjaaŋ caaj tʃ^hii jèe
 then female one Clf ACC see have pt-comp pt-report
He met a woman.

The Cruel Widower 010

jào k^hàabaajàa màaŋ mâaj tʃ^hii jèe jàakee maŋ
 then female Clf tell pt-comp pt-report child Clf
 aŋbooŋ maŋ na?
 father Clf ACC
And then the woman told him--that person the father of the child:

The Cruel Widower 011

naaŋ gaa na? gaa làa
 ask lps ACC pt-desire pt-comp
 sũuŋ jào naaŋ aŋjàa maŋ na? sàæ pèe
 go_together then ask child Clf ACC kill IMP
"If you want me, kill your child!"

The Cruel Widower 012

jào t^hùu wàn máa aŋbooŋ maŋ aŋjàa màaŋ
 then one day Clf father Clf child Clf
 na? sòoŋkɔɔŋ sũuŋ læn tʃ^hii jèe
 ACC forest go_together pt-dnmot pt-comp pt-report
One day after that the father took the child to the forest.

The Cruel Widower 013

jào aŋjàa màaŋ na? dùuj p^huum làæ tʃ^hii jèe
 then child Clf ACC dig bury pt-rep pt-comp pt-report
And (he) dug a hole and buried (the child).

The Cruel Widower 014

jàojàa
 and_then
 juum p^hàolũuj k^hàabaajàa màaŋ na? mâaj lũu tʃ^hii
 house return female Clf ACC tell pt-imp pt-comp
And then (he) returned home and told the woman.

The Cruel Widower 015

gaa wàa naaŋ máa làa tʃ^hii mæe haaj jàa
 lps this ask Clf pt-comp pt-comp same do like this
"I did what you told me to do."

The Cruel Widower 016

gaa aŋjàa aŋlak maŋ na? dùuj p^huum jàa
 lps child prefix love Clf ACC dig bury pt-comp
"I've dug a hole and buried my beloved child."

The Cruel Widower 017

ni k^hàm gaaj nĩ juun laŋká? pá?jáp?dèe
 this time get this marry pt-jnt pt-imp

"So now let's get married!"

The Cruel Widower 018

ni k^hàm k^hàabaajàa màaŋ muu kùt làe tʃ^hii jèe
 this time female Clf well, think pt-rep pt-comp pt-report
Now this woman, well, thought:

The Cruel Widower 019

k^hanaat aŋjàa maŋnám muu sàe t^hoona?t^hào gá ?àasāaŋ
 extent child his well, kill as_for_me ips who
 n~~ae~~ kùt làe tʃ^hii jèe
 pt-end_qt think pt-rep pt-comp pt-report
"He'd go so far as to kill his own child--and who am I?" she thought.

The Cruel Widower 020

k^hàabaajàa màaŋ muu hæŋjèe bàa jũu
 female Clf well, after_that neg marry
The woman, well, after that did not take him.

The Cruel Widower 021

hæŋ aŋbooŋ maŋ kùt gaa làe jao aŋwàj aŋk^hjaaŋ
 that father Clf think pt-able pt-rep then quickly quickly
 ʃòoŋk^hòoŋ jóo hùun læn tʃ^hii
 forest at run pt-dnmot pt-comp
After that, the father came to a realization and (he) quickly ran to the forest.

The Cruel Widower 022

aŋjàa màaŋ naa hùun dùuj ?ook pooj lùu
 child Clf ACC run dig exit lay_out pt-out
He ran and dug up and took out and laid out the child.

The Cruel Widower 023

jàaŋ aŋjàa màaŋ ʃiin tʃ^há? jèe
 that child Clf die pt-comp pt-report
(But) his child was already dead.

“FATHER’S SKULL” (FS)

Father’s Skull 001

aqboon tuk^hjàam

father skull

Father’s skull

Father’s Skull 002

mlàaŋ kaʔtʃ^hajèe aŋjàa aqboon tùu kùu caaŋ

long_time long_ago child father one couple have

jèe

pt-report

Long ago there were two people, father and son, one couple.

Father’s Skull 003

aŋtùuk jèe

poor pt-report

They were poor.

Father’s Skull 004

cáa tùu nɛŋ máa aqboon maŋ daa klaan tʃ^hii jèe

then one day Clf father Clf pain become_all pt-comp pt-report

One day the father became very sick.

Father’s Skull 005

k^haacæ kaajèe cáa tùuk lùuŋ ɲæ

intensify very then poor fall pt-st

This caused (them) to become even poorer.

Father’s Skull 006

cáa tùu nɛŋ máa jáŋ aŋjàa maŋ naʔ hao ci tʃ^hàŋ tʃ^hii

then one day Clf 3ps child Clf ACC call speak together pt-comp

jèe

pt-report

Then one day (he) called that child and (they) spoke together.

Father’s Skull 007

bàa tæ tʃ^hii laa næʔ

neg survive pt-comp pt-neg pt-end_qt

"I'm not going to live much longer."

Father’s Skull 008

càawàa næ ʔaaboŋ ʃiin jào aŋtùu tuk^hjàam ʃæj kwàan jóo

suppose that npt father die then head skull drag walk pt-imp

"Suppose tht father dies, then walk around dragging my skull."

Father's Skull 009

kǎəŋ joo t^həəŋ ɲæə jó?jaa nàa hjàa wàa
 where? at stuck pt-st that_place field hill_field work
 càan joo
 in_order_to_eat pt-imp
"Wherever it gets stuck, work the hill field there."

Father's Skull 010

hǎ?mǎ? mǎaj jao aŋboon maŋ fiin tʃ^hii jèe
 like_that tell then father Clf die pt-comp pt-report
When he told (him) that then the father died.

Father's Skull 011

aŋjǎa maŋ maamaa jèe
 child Clf truly pt-report
That child truly (did that).

Father's Skull 012

aŋtùu tuk^hjàam làatùu pluuj jao ʃəəj kwàan tʃ^hii
 head skull rope tie then drag walk pt-comp
(He) tied the skull to a rope and walked along dragging it.

Father's Skull 013

ʃəəj kwàa taamkwàa cáa loobaa jo? t^həəŋ ʔæə
 drag walk go_back_and_forth then stone at stuck pt-aff
 tʃ^hii jèe
 pt-comp pt-report
He dragged it along (for a while) then it got stuck on a stone.

Father's Skull 014

ma?cǎə lá mǎ?
 what? do pt-emp
"What's happening?"

Father's Skull 015

càk bàa càk laa kaa jèe
 pull neg pull come pt-st/abl pt-report
The more he pulled, the less it would come loose.

Father's Skull 016

hǎəŋ jèe joo nàa hjàa wàa duuŋ tʃ^hii
 after_that at field hill_field work live pt-comp
After that he worked the hill field there.

Father's Skull 017

nòəŋhəə caa páaŋ la náocá
 after_that have rich pt-pos pt-comp
After that he became very rich.

“TIGER AND DEER” (TD)

Tiger and Deer 001

ts^halàa næ? hoopòŋ
 tiger and deer
The Tiger and the Deer

Tiger and Deer 002

ts^halàa t^hùu màaŋ caaŋ jèe
 tiger one Clf have pt-report
There was a tiger.

Tiger and Deer 003

kuu t^həə ja jèe hoopòŋ
 every occurrence pt-many pt-report deer
ʔuʉ na? lòoŋ tʃ^həə tsàa laaŋ ŋəə
 group ACC wait bite eat wait pt-st
Every time he would wait to eat the flock of deer.

Tiger and Deer 004

cáa t^hùu nŋ caaŋ jèe
 then one day have pt-report
Then there was one day.

Tiger and Deer 005

hoopòŋ aŋtùu waaŋ t^hùu to? klaan tsàa læ tʃ^hii
 deer head fast one Clf search_for eat pt-dnmot pt-comp
jèe
 pt-report
One smart deer went to look for food.

Tiger and Deer 006

cáa t^hùu kàm?ú ts^halàa màaŋ luun jèe
 then one short_time tiger Clf come pt-report
Soon the tiger came.

Tiger and Deer 007

hoopòŋ háə máŋ ts^halàa maŋ na? hmjaŋ jao bàa hùun
 deer that Clf tiger Clf ACC see then neg run
nə? lak^hùu dáa təəŋ læ tʃ^hii jèe
 and foot pain survive pt-emph pt-comp pt-report
The deer saw that tiger and then didn't run because his foot hurt.

Tiger and Deer 008

k^huut^hók k^huut^hók næ? jooj tʃ^hii jèe
 limp limp and walk pt-comp pt-report
(He) walked with a limp.

Tiger and Deer 009

ts^halàa màaŋ h^ámáa hmjaaŋ jao hoopòŋ màaŋ na? naan tʃ^hii jèe
 tiger Clf like_{that} see then deer Clf ACC ask pt-comp pt-report
When the tiger saw that, he asked the deer:

Tiger and Deer 010

baacǎə háj lǎə ?ǎə
 what do pt-dnmot pt-aff
"What have you gone and done?"

Tiger and Deer 011

cáa hoopòŋ màaŋ máaj luu tʃ^hii jèe
 then deer Clf tell pt-out pt-comp pt-report
Then the deer told (him):

Tiger and Deer 012

ciikùu nàŋ lǎə ?ǎə
 thorn step_{on} pt-dnmot pt-aff
"I went and stepped on a thorn" unsure if ae is particle--probably the motion deal

Tiger and Deer 013

ciikùu níi màa t^huu waasáa na?tú
 thorn this Clf one year suppose
"This thorn--It's been here about a year"

Tiger and Deer 014

ts^halàa màaŋ h^ámáa kjáaj jao kùt tʃ^hii
 tiger Clf like_{that} hear then think pt-comp
 jèe
 pt-report
(When) the tiger heard that, he thought:

Tiger and Deer 015

gá hoopòŋ níi màŋ na?tsàaj jao ciikùu ní? tʃ^ha maa gaa
 lps deer this Clf ACC eat then thorn this det. Clf lps
 mànpooŋ næ? núuŋtʃúu nú tʃ^hao laaŋ jáaŋ
 mouth and neck this pierce pt-ben pt-negben
"If I eat this deer, then this thorn will pierce my mouth and neck."

Tiger and Deer 016

cáa hoopòŋ màaŋ máaj luu tʃ^hii jèe
 then deer Clf tell pt-out pt-comp pt-report
Then the deer told (him):

Tiger and Deer 017

níi naŋ gaa naa tsàa làaŋ jáo ciikùu gaa
 this 2nd person lps ACC eat pt-ben then thorn lps
 lak^hüü tʃ^hao lælatʃ^hiníŋ ts^hæ cák ʔoók lüü laa poonoo
 foot pierce at_that_place bite pull exit pt-imp pt-ben pt-agreed?
"If you want to eat me, pull out that thorn that pierced my foot, please."

Tiger and Deer 018

jao naŋ tsàa laam t^hoolóojàa
 then 2nd person eat pt-ben invite
"Then, if you are going to eat me, you're welcome to do so."

Tiger and Deer 019

ts^halàa màaŋ háaŋjèe cáa ʔóojhæ ʔoók laaláʔ
 tiger Clf then then O.K. exit pt-agreed!
The tiger then said, "O.K., I'll agree to take it out."

Tiger and Deer 020

cáa háaŋjèe hoopòoŋ màaŋ müü lak^hüü
 then after_that deer Clf well, foot
 jàaŋ jóok læ tʃ^hii
 that lift pt-dnmot pt-comp
After that, the deer lifted his foot up.

Tiger and Deer 021

ts^halàa màaŋ háaŋjèe ɲæm læ pii tʃ^hii
 tiger Clf after_that pt-st pt-dnmot pt-give clean
After that the tiger looked upwards.

Tiger and Deer 022

ciikùu cák ʔoók pii jao saaŋ tsàa næ
 thorn pull exit pt-give then short_time eat pt-end_qt
"(I) will pull the thorn out and soon thereafter will eat."

Tiger and Deer 023

cáa hoopòoŋ máa joojèe jàaŋ mànpooŋ wæ dé tʃ^hii
 then deer Clf that_time 3ps mouth at kick pt-comp
At that time, the deer kicked his mouth.

Tiger and Deer 024

soop^hee ʔúumsüŋjajèe làt pii k^hoo tʃ^hii
 teeth every_last_one fall_out pt-give completely pt-comp
It caused all (his) teeth to fall out.

Tiger and Deer 025

salop háa jaa jèe
 faint do pt-result pt-report
(He) fainted.

Tiger and Deer 026

háəŋjèe *hooɔɔŋ* *màaŋ* *hùun* *tʃ^hii*
 after_that deer Clf run pt-comp
After that that deer ran away.

“TURTLE AND SQUIRREL” (TS)

Turtle and Squirrel 001

ʔùuhooŋ nəʔ hootʃ^hén

turtle and squirrel

The turtle and the squirrel.

Turtle and Squirrel 002

ʔùuhooŋ nəʔ hootʃ^hén jaak^hàa kaa jèe

turtle and squirrel friend-same_age pt-st/abl pt-report

The turtle and the squirrel were friends of the same age.

Turtle and Squirrel 003

tùu

one

nũŋ caalũŋ hootʃ^hén maŋ ʔùuhooŋ maŋ naʔ tʃ^hàaŋ ʔæ tʃ^hii jèe

day have squirrel Clf turtle Clf ACC invite ascend pt-comp pt-report

One day the squirrel invited the turtle:

Turtle and Squirrel 004

k^hàa ʔùuhooŋ wəə miinũũŋ piit^hòo tée læ pjaadée

friend! turtle at today fire_wood kindling pt-dnmot pt-invite

"Friend—today let's go cut firewood."

Turtle and Squirrel 005

ʔùuhooŋ maŋ ʔòoj læmlæ naowaa

turtle Clf O.K. I'll_go_if_you're_going pt-rep_ep

The turtle said, "O.K., I'll go."

Turtle and Squirrel 006

jiĩŋ ʔuu pəən jao sũũŋ kaa læn naowaa

speak talk finish then go-together pt-jnt pt-dnmot pt-rep_ep

(When) they finished speaking then they went off together.

Turtle and Squirrel 007

miit^hòo təə hjàa k^həə kan læ tʃ^hii jáaŋ

firewood kindling hill_field arrive pt-jnt pt-dnmot pt-comp pt-comp

They arrived at the place to cut firewood.

Turtle and Squirrel 008

sũũk^hajlòok aŋmiĩŋ tùu pāŋ cáa jèe

small_red_sweet_fruit ripe one Clf have pt-report

There was a tree with ripe suukhajlook fruit.

Turtle and Squirrel 009

hootʃhén maŋ hmjaaŋ pjaaj tsàan læ tʃhii jèe
 squirrel Clf see climb eat pt-dnmot pt-comp pt-report
The squirrel saw it and climbed up and ate.

Turtle and Squirrel 010

ʔaŋtʰàa pùukjâa ʔùuhooŋ máa cŋcŋɔŋ bàa pʰjâa too
 top area turtle Clf tree neg climb pt-unable
 kaa mæe
 pt-st/abl pt-emph
The turtle was unable to climb to that top area.

Turtle and Squirrel 011

ʔaŋpook joo tsàaj duŋ tʃhii jèe
 below pt-imp eat sit pt-comp pt-report
(So she) sat and ate down below.

Turtle and Squirrel 012

pʰælooŋ plúŋ jèe tʃhuj kan læʔ tʃhii
 shoulder_bag full pt-report gather put_in pt-dnmot pt-comp
(The turtle) gathered (the fruits) and filled (her) shoulder bag.

Turtle and Squirrel 013

mùŋkʰii baataŋ sùuŋ kaa luun læ naowaa
 night almost go-together pt-jnt come pt-dnmot pt-rep_ep
When it was almost evening (they) went back together.

Turtle and Squirrel 014

luutaamlu hootʃhén maŋ sùukʰajlòok bæn laalæ
 short_time squirrel Clf small_red_sweet_fruit hungry very_hungry
 pii tʃhii jèe
 pt-give pt-comp pt-report
Not long thereafter, the squirrel got hungry for the sukhajlook fruit.

Turtle and Squirrel 015

pòŋpooŋ daa tsàa kækæn tʃhii jèe
 stomach pa. eat act pt-comp pt-report
(The squirrel) acted as if (her) stomach hurt.

Turtle and Squirrel 016

ʔòoj pòŋpooŋ daa ŋæ
 Ooh! stomach pain pt-st
"Oh! My stomach hurts!"

Turtle and Squirrel 017

ʔùuhooŋ màamàamáamáa næ kùt jèe
 turtle true npt think pt-report
The turtle thought it was true.

Turtle and Squirrel 018

jaŋ p^hæloŋ joo máaj ɔŋ duŋ pi tʃ^hii jèe
 3ps shoulder_bag at tell enter sit pt-give pt-comp pt-report
She had/allowed (the squirrel) to get in her shoulder bag.

Turtle and Squirrel 019

kæbaa lín jèe
 road end pt-report
The road ended.

Turtle and Squirrel 020

sùuk^hajlòk hæŋ k^hào tsàaŋ jèe
 small_red_sweet_fruit that secretly eat pt-report
(The squirrel) secretly ate the suukhajlook fruit.

Turtle and Squirrel 021

k^hòŋ k^həə lùu maat^hàŋ pəək klaan lùu tʃ^hii jèe
 village arrive return almost jump fall pt-out pt-comp pt-report
(When they) almost arrived back at the village. (the squirrel) jumped out.

Turtle and Squirrel 022

pòŋpòŋ daa jáaŋ pjòow k^haaŋ já?
 stomach pain that cured pt-st/ab pt-comp
"(My) stomach ache has been cured."

Turtle and Squirrel 023

ʔùuhooŋ aŋjää ʔúu aŋbaa maŋ lùu na? hmjaan klækklæk
 turtle child group mother Clf return ACC see call_out
 jèe
 pt-report
The turtle kids saw that their mother was returning and called out.

Turtle and Squirrel 024

ʔàabaa sùuk^hajlòk gaaj lùun tʃ^há? nǎ?
 mother small_red_sweet_fruit get come pt-comp pt-end_qt
"Mother brought some suukhajlook fruit."

Turtle and Squirrel 025

p^hæloŋ jáaŋ t^hòk kan lùu tʃ^hii jáaŋ
 shoulder_bag that dump_out watch pt-out pt-comp pt-comp
(They) watched as (she) dumped out her shoulder bag.

Turtle and Squirrel 026

aŋk^hào æn jaa jèe
 empty all pt-result pt-report
It was empty!

Turtle and Squirrel 027

naammaatáa jèe ʔùuhooŋ aŋbaa maŋ nuŋbaa k^hàa ɲæ
 extremely pt-report turtle mother Clf heart angry pt-st
The Mother Turtle was very angry.

Turtle and Squirrel 028

sɔt^háa bàa plæn húu kap haan k^ham lææ
 early_morning neg light before trap wrap_and_take trap pt-dnmot
 tʃ^hii jèe
 pt-comp pt-report
The next morning before it was light (she) took a trap to trap.

Turtle and Squirrel 029

sùuk^hajlòok pāŋ jóo kap jàaŋ k^hòoj
 small_red_sweet_fruit Clf at trap that set
 tʃⁿiitʃⁿá? jao
 pt-left then
(She) set the trap at the sukhajlook tree and left it there.)

Turtle and Squirrel 030

hɔtʃ^hén maŋ naa tʃ^hàŋ æn tʃ^hii jèe
 squirrel Clf ACC invite ascend pt-comp pt-report
(She) went to invite the squirrel.

Turtle and Squirrel 031

k^hàa hɔtʃ^hén wæ sùuk^hajlòok tʃ^huu lææ
 friend! squirrel at small_red_sweet_fruit grab pt-dnmot
 pjaadèe
 pt-invite
"Friend squirrel, let's go get some sukhajlook fruit."

Turtle and Squirrel 032

hɔtʃ^hén maŋ kjàan jao sùuŋ kaa lææn naowaa
 squirrel Clf hear then go-together pt-jnt pt-dnmot pt-rep_ep
(When) the squirrel heard, then they went together.

Turtle and Squirrel 033

?aŋ?an jóo k^həə kan lææ cáŋ hɔtʃ^hén maŋ
 previous_place at arrive pt-jnt pt-dnmot have squirrel Clf
 kap jàaŋ gaaŋ sàə làə naowaa
 trap that be_afflicted kill pt-rep pt-rep_ep
At the time that they arrived at the previous place, the squirrel was afflicted by the trap and died.

Turtle and Squirrel 034

?ùuhooŋ maŋ piit^hòo cəŋ aŋmúu p^hii k^hút jao juum
 turtle Clf fire_wood set_fire body_hair burn scrape then house
 k^həə ləu jao t^hoo buun
 arrive return then chop finely
 tsəəŋ hmíŋ jao k^hàəj ʃaaj ?æ tʃ^hii jèe
 cook well_cooked then dish_out give pt-aff pt-comp pt-report
The turtle set (the squirrel) on fire, then burnt and scraped off the body hair, then went back to the house, then chopped (the squirrel) up finely, then cooked it until it was done, then put it in a dish to give.

Turtle and Squirrel 035

hooʃ^hén ʔuu aŋjâa ʔũu naa jooŋ sũuŋ kaa
 squirrel group child group ACC 3pp go-together pt-jnt
 tsàan ʃ^hii jèe
 eat pt-comp pt-report
That group of squirrel children, they ate together.

Turtle and Squirrel 036

k^hoo lùumaat^haŋ aŋbaa maŋ làajũuŋ jàaŋ hmjaaŋ ʃ^hii jèe
 completely almost mother Clf finger that see pt-comp pt-report
(When) it was almost all gone, (they) saw their mother's finger.

Turtle and Squirrel 037

hiikàm jèe bæen k^hu ʃ^hii
 at_that_point pt-report know everything pt-comp
At that point, they knew everything.

Turtle and Squirrel 038

ʔàabaa ʃii kaa ʃáʔ næʔ
 mother die pt-st/abl pt-comp pt-end_qt
"Mother is dead!"

“THE MISCHIEVOUS BOY” (MB)

The Mischievous Boy 001

bisuu biit^haan jâakee aɲluk
 Bisu fable child mischievous
Bisu Fable: The Mischievous Child

The Mischievous Boy 002

mlâaɲ k^haaɲjêe
 long_time past_time
 jâakee k^hâap^hâajâa t^hùu mâaɲ caaɲ jêe
 child male one Clf have pt-report
A long time ago there was a mischievous boy.

The Mischievous Boy 003

aɲk^hlùù jêe
 lazy pt-report
(He) was lazy.

The Mischievous Boy 004

lakaan bàa tùu wâa kca jêe
 work neg willing work pt-st/abl pt-report
(He) was not willing to do any work at all.

The Mischievous Boy 005

jào aɲbaa nèʔ aɲbooɲ maɲ jèet mii ʔíi tʃ^hii jêe
 then mother and father Clf both npt scold pt-comp pt-report
And then his mother and father both scolded him.

The Mischievous Boy 006

cáa nɲbaa k^hâa jêe
 then heart angry pt-report
Then (he) was very angry.

The Mischievous Boy 007

cãɲkõɲ wəə hùun læn tʃ^hii jêe
 forest at run pt-dnmot pt-comp pt-report
(So) he ran into the forest.

The Mischievous Boy 008

cáa mɔɔɲk^hiik^hiin tʃ^hii jêe
 then darkness pt-comp pt-report
Then it became dark.

The Mischievous Boy 009

wuuŋ k^hoo tʃ^hii jèe
 dark completely pt-comp pt-report
It became totally dark.

The Mischievous Boy 010

jaŋ mi aŋbaa aŋbooŋ næʔ juum naʔ moŋ tʃ^hii jèe
 3ps well, mother father and house ACC miss pt-comp pt-report
He, well, missed his mother and father.

The Mischievous Boy 011

jaŋ jɔɔj pik luun læ tʃ^hii jèe
 3ps walk return come pt-dnnot pt-comp pt-report
He (started) to walk back again.

The Mischievous Boy 012

cáa kiibaa t^hàaŋ cʉŋcʉŋ t^hùu pãŋ caaŋ jèe
 then path beside tree one Clf have pt-report
Then there was a tree across the path.

The Mischievous Boy 013

k^hanaat jèe hùu ŋææ
 extent pt-report large pt-st
It was very large.

The Mischievous Boy 014

ʔaacãam k^hæk^haa^ææ nææ caaŋ jèe
 and then fearful npt have pt-report
It looked very scary.

The Mischievous Boy 015

cáa cʉŋcʉŋ wæ kékéetʃ^hàaŋ plaŋ nææ caaŋ jèe
 then tree at shadow black npt have pt-report
Then there was a black shadow at the tree.

The Mischievous Boy 016

jàamãŋjãatuu jèe
 very_large pt-report
(It was) very large.

The Mischievous Boy 017

cuuŋ tʃ^hii
 stand pt-comp
It was standing up.

The Mischievous Boy 018

jaŋ t^hææ jèe ɔɔŋ huun læ tʃ^hii
 3ps near pt-report enter watch pt-dnnot pt-comp
He got closer to look at it.

The Mischievous Boy 019

cáa huu kan lùu tʃʰii jàaŋ dæjǎa jèe
 then watch watch pt-out pt-comp 3ps spirit pt-report
When he watched it, he realized it was a spirit.

The Mischievous Boy 020

camk^huuŋ mǎmmuup jèe
 hair disorderly pt-report
Its hair was very messy

The Mischievous Boy 021

bǎnlǎa moŋ jèe
 tongue long pt-report
Its tongue was long.

The Mischievous Boy 022

mænnuu ʔuammii soot ʔook luun tʃʰii jèe
 eyes completely fall exit pt-out pt-comp pt-report
The spirit's eyes popped out.

The Mischievous Boy 023

ʃii æn nǎʔ jèe
 blood all pt-comprehen pt-report
It was completely covered in blood.

The Mischievous Boy 024

k^hæk^haabooloo jèe
 extremely_frightening pt-report
Very scary!

The Mischievous Boy 025

jaaŋ àŋwǎaj k^hjaaŋ jèe hùun luun tʃʰii
 3ps quickly quickly pt-report run pt-out pt-comp
The child ran away quickly.

The Mischievous Boy 026

dæjǎa mǎaŋ hùun k^hèen tʃʰii jèe
 spirit Clf run follow pt-comp pt-report
The spirit ran after him.

The Mischievous Boy 027

cáa hùun tam hùun aŋboŋ maŋ na? cǎo ʔææ lǎæ tʃʰii jèe
 then run crash run father Clf ACC crash ascend pt-dnmt pt-comp pt-report
Then as he was running around, he ran into his father.

The Mischievous Boy 028

jào dæjǎa mǎaŋ ʔjóʔ kǎʔ tʃʰii jèe
 then spirit Clf disappear pt-st/abl pt-comp pt-report
And then the spirit disappeared.

The Mischievous Boy 029

ʔiikee maŋ kjàaŋ jèe

child Clf happy pt-report

The child was very glad.

The Mischievous Boy 030

juum wəə k^həə ʔæə jao jaŋ miiməən laa tʃ^hii jèe

house at arrive ascend then 3ps good pt-comp pt-comp pt-report

When they returned to the house, then he was good.

The Mischievous Boy 031

làakaan plòŋ būu jao jèe

work help do then pt-report

He helped with the work.

The Mischievous Boy 032

~~həəŋ~~ caajlaa pii jao aŋbaa nəʔ aŋboŋ ʔuɯɯ

that_time since pt-give then mother and father group

bàa ʔíi kaŋ jèe

neg scold together pt-report

Since that time, the father and mother did not scold (him) again.

**“MR. KIEW THE DEAF MAN AND MR. PAW THE BLIND MAN:
A STORY OF TWO CHICKEN THIEVES” (DB)**

Mr. Kiew the Deaf Man and Mr. Paw the Blind Man 001

baak^haew nàapàŋ næ? bàapóɔ mæwàa

Mr. Khaew deaf and Mr. Paw blind

Mr. Kiew the deaf man and Mr. Paw the blind man.

Mr. Kiew the Deaf Man and Mr. Paw the Blind Man 002

jèt hjàa k^hào tsàa rəŋ

both chicken secretly eat story

A story of two chicken thieves.

Mr. Kiew the Deaf Man and Mr. Paw the Blind Man 003

k^haatæ wəə ts^haaŋ sooŋ k^hùn caa k^haalaj

long ago at people two Clf have pt-exis

A long time ago there were two people.

Mr. Kiew the Deaf Man and Mr. Paw the Blind Man 004

t^hu maŋ ma aŋmeəŋ baak^haew nàapàŋ

one Clf npt name Mr. Khaew deaf

Mr. Kiew was deaf.

Mr. Kiew the Deaf Man and Mr. Paw the Blind Man 005

t^hu maŋ ma bàapóɔ mæwàa

one Clf tell Mr. Paw blind

Mr. Paw was blind.

Mr. Kiew the Deaf Man and Mr. Paw the Blind Man 006

jo? caajlaa jao jàa tʃ^haaŋ kaa jao hjaa

at come from then pt-comp invite pt-jnt then hillfield

suuŋ kaa k^hào lǎ? tʃ^hii

go_together pt-jnt secretly pt-dnmot pt-comp

Who knows were they were from—they invited each other to go steal chicken.

Mr. Kiew the Deaf Man and Mr. Paw the Blind Man 007

jàamàaŋ puu kaew juum wəə baak^haew hjàa

old_person grandfather Kaew house at Mr. Khaew chicken

k^hào tʃ^hùu huumaŋ

secretly grab responsible

At Uncle Kaew's house, Mr. Khiew was the one responsible for grabbing the chicken.

Mr. Kiew the Deaf Man and Mr. Paw the Blind Man 008

bàapóo màaj tʃʰùu pìi huumaŋ

Mr. Paw tell grab pt-give responsible

Mr. Paw was the one responsible for telling (him where to grab).

Mr. Kiew the Deaf Man and Mr. Paw the Blind Man 009

hikʰám baakʰaew bàapóo na? naa tʃʰii

at_that_time Mr. Khaew Mr. Paw ACC ask pt-comp

Then Mr. Khiew asked Mr. Paw.

Mr. Kiew the Deaf Man and Mr. Paw the Blind Man 010

hjáa pʰàa kajcóng ni maŋ tʃʰùu láa hjáa pʰàa puutʃʰaa

chicken breed Kaijong this Clf grab or chicken breed Puutshaa

ni maŋ tʃʰuu láa

this Clf grab pt-quest

"Shall we grab a Kaijong chicken or a Puutshaa chicken?"

Mr. Kiew the Deaf Man and Mr. Paw the Blind Man 011

baakʰaew bàa kjàa cèeŋ káa

Mr. Khaew neg hear clearly pt-st/abl

Mr. Khiew didn't hear clearly.

Mr. Kiew the Deaf Man and Mr. Paw the Blind Man 012

ʔacām pìk naaj

then return ask

Then he went back and asked again.

Mr. Kiew the Deaf Man and Mr. Paw the Blind Man 013

bàapóo háw màaj làe paanoo

Mr. Paw call tell pt-rep pt-comp

Mr Paw shouted and said again:

Mr. Kiew the Deaf Man and Mr. Paw the Blind Man 014

hjáa kajcóng tʰíi maŋ tʃʰùu lùu pá?læ

chicken Kaijong that Clf grab pt-imp pt-imp

"Grab that kajcong chicken."

Mr. Kiew the Deaf Man and Mr. Paw the Blind Man 015

hikʰám puu kaew

at_that_time grandfather Kaew

juum súuŋ maŋ kjàan jáo cìi hàwháw laa paanoo

house owner Clf hear then speak blurt_out_suddenly pt-comp pt-comp

At that point, Uncle Kaew the owner of the house heard and suddenly yelled out:

Mr. Kiew the Deaf Man and Mr. Paw the Blind Man 016

ʔasaŋ hœ hjáa kajcóng næ? hjáa puutʃʰaa næ? haŋ

who at chicken Kaijong and chicken Puutshaa and tell

ni máa

this Clf

"Who said Kajcong chicken and Puutshaa chicken?"

Mr. Kiew the Deaf Man and Mr. Paw the Blind Man 017

baak^haew nəʔ bàapóo jèet kjàan jáo k^hæ lǎəjáo

Mr. Khaew and Mr. Paw both hear then afraid and then

sùuŋ kaa hùun paanóo t^hùutóoŋt^hùuməŋ

go-together pt-jnt run pt-comp every_man for_himself

Mr. Khiew and Mr. Paw heard and were shocked and fled in different directions.

Mr. Kiew the Deaf Man and Mr. Paw the Blind Man 018

baak^haew ʔæpláa

Mr. Khaew flee

Mr. Khiew ran away.

Mr. Kiew the Deaf Man and Mr. Paw the Blind Man 019

bàapóo ʔæŋkóolook pàakjää cúť

Mr. Paw area_under_stilt_house path enter_quickly

Mr. Paw fled underneath the house

Mr. Kiew the Deaf Man and Mr. Paw the Blind Man 020

bàapóo ʔæŋkóolook wə ʔámtaaláak jáəŋ

Mr. Paw area_under_stilt_house at implement 3ps

nəŋ k^hooŋ məək^hooŋ

step_on spring_up forehead

k^hook lǎə paanóo

strike pt-dnmot pt-comp

Under the house, Mr. Paw stepped on an implement which flipped up and struck his forehead.

Mr. Kiew the Deaf Man and Mr. Paw the Blind Man 021

bàa caəŋ laa

neg have pt-comp

"It's over!"

Mr. Kiew the Deaf Man and Mr. Paw the Blind Man 022

tùuŋ láəŋ jaa

hit pt-comp pt-negben

"(I've) been hit!"

Mr. Kiew the Deaf Man and Mr. Paw the Blind Man 023

nə ʔuut tʃ^hii

npt think pt-comp

He thought.

Mr. Kiew the Deaf Man and Mr. Paw the Blind Man 024

cii hàwháw gaa t^hùu məŋ bàa ʔǎa nòo

speak blurt_out_suddenly 1ps one Clf neg correct pt-neg_agreed?

(He) blurted out, "It's not only me, you know!"

Mr. Kiew the Deaf Man and Mr. Paw the Blind Man 025

baak^haew nàapəŋ taatáa poj

Mr. Khaew deaf also pt-emph

"Deaf Mr. Khiew too!"

“THE SWANS AND THE TURTLE” (ST)

The Swans and the Turtle 001

nukhuuŋ nəʔ ʔùuhooŋ aŋlèəŋ
 swan and turtle story
The story of the swans and the turtle.

The Swans and the Turtle 002

k^hatæ ʔùuhooŋ t^hùu maŋ nəʔ nukhuuŋ sooŋ too caa laaj
 long_ago turtle one Clf and swan two Clf have pt-exis
A long time ago there was a turtle and two swans.

The Swans and the Turtle 003

ʔùuhooŋ taʔsæ nii tooŋ ʃaa tsàa ʃaa taŋ
 turtle mountain this mountain_side search eat search water
 mləŋ ʃàò nʉŋbaatòŋ nàa tuŋ nii tooŋ
 long_time then worry field one this mountain_side
 ʃaa tsàa lʉu tʃ^hii ŋæ
 search eat return pt-comp pt-st
The turtle had looked for food and drink on one mountain for a long time and in his heart wanted to go look for food on another side (to go to another mountain across a field).

The Swans and the Turtle 004

gaa nammuu t^hùu maŋ sùuŋ æn làwlaæ
 1ps self one Clf go_together go pt-imp
"Anyone--someone take me there!"

The Swans and the Turtle 005

hik^hàm nukhuuŋ sooŋ too kjàan ʃàò làamaj hœ
 that time swan two Clf hear then stick at
 màaj kaap pìi jao ʔacām màaj lùu tʃ^hii
 tell grasp_in_mouth pt-give then then tell pt-out pt-comp
At that time two swans heard and had him grasp in his mouth a piece of wood held in their feet and they told him:

The Swans and the Turtle 006

naŋ mənpoŋ haksaa haa làw pèe
 2nd person mouth care for do pt-imp pt-imp
"Take care of your mouth!"

The Swans and the Turtle 007

hik^hàm nukhuuŋ maŋ jèet pjaam nàa tuŋ k^ham ʔæ
 that time swan Clf both fly field one cross ascend
 paandò
 pt-comp

Immediately both swans flew across the field.

The Swans and the Turtle 008

jàakee pòŋ^hnaa pòpàa ?ǔu huu hmjaan lùujao háw
 child water_buffalo caretaker group watch see and_then call
 laŋkaa tʃ^hii
 pt-jnt pt-comp

The buffalo boys saw it and they shouted out together.

The Swans and the Turtle 009

nukhuuŋ ?ùuhooŋ maŋ na? hlàm tʃⁿii
 swan turtle Clf ACC lift pt-comp

"The swans are carrying the turtle"

The Swans and the Turtle 010

hik^hàm ?ùuhooŋ maŋ kjàan jao ciin lùu paanòŋ
 that time turtle Clf hear then speak pt-out pt-comp

Then the turtle heard it and said:

The Swans and the Turtle 011

bàa ?ǎa ?ùuhooŋ nukhuuŋ na? hlam ŋææ
 neg correct turtle swan ACC lift pt-st

"No--it's the turtle who is carrying the swans."

The Swans and the Turtle 012

mànpoŋŋ ?àan jao klaaj lùun
 mouth open then fall come

When he opened his mouth, he fell down

The Swans and the Turtle 013

jào pòŋ^hnaa ?uuum ŋææn huuj
 then water_buffalo group look upward look

Then the buffalo looked upwards.

The Swans and the Turtle 014

p^hlòŋj pòŋ^hnaa ?uu ŋææn caaj həə
 everyone water_buffalo group look upward look_upward at

All the buffalo in the herd lifted their heads and looked.

The Swans and the Turtle 015

kamlaŋ həə ?ùuhooŋ maŋ pòŋ^hnaa
 momentarily at turtle Clf water_buffalo
 maŋ naatúu mànpoŋŋ còŋt klaaj tùuj paanòŋ
 Clf upper_lip mouth enter_quickly fall hit pt-comp

The turtle fell down into the mouth of a water buffalo.

The Swans and the Turtle 016

pòŋ^hnaa sòŋp^hee pjàa klaa k^hoo paanòŋ
 water_buffalo teeth scatter fall completely pt-comp

All the water buffalo's teeth fell out.

The Swans and the Turtle 017

ʔaamɯk^həə pòŋ^hnaa sòŋ^həe bàa caa
 up_to_this_time water_buffalo teeth neg have
To this day, water buffalo don't have teeth.

The Swans and the Turtle 018

ʔùuhooŋ ʔaŋk^hjàam jáaŋ bɯn jaohlao jao ʔùuhooŋ
 turtle shell that finely completely then turtle
 ʔəəŋ jáaŋ ts^haaŋ kòolookkaʔlik wəə gaŋ
 excrement 3ps people armpit at crash_against
The turtle's shell was completely crushed and excrement of the turtle fell on the upper arm of that person

The Swans and the Turtle 019

jao kòopəətəət nam ʔaamɯk^həə
 then armpit stinky up_to_this_time
Thus (our armpits) smell bad to this day.

APPENDIX 2
PARTICLE PROFILE SUMMARY CHART

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Beaudouin, Patrick. 1991a. The sentence in Bisu and the expression of modality. Paper presented at the 24th International Conference on Sino-Tibetan Languages and Linguistics. Chiang Mai: Chiang Mai University.
- _____. 1991b. Une monographie du Bisu. Nice: University of Nice dissertation.
- _____. 1991c. "Les Bisu: un peuple ignore en Thaïlande du Nord." *Inter-Mondes* 2.1: 153-159.
- Bradley, David. 1979. Proto-Loloish. Scandinavian institute of Asian studies monograph series #39. London: Curzon Press.
- _____. 1985. "Nasality in Bisu and Bisoid." Southeast Asian linguistic studies presented to Andre-G. Haudricourt. Bangkok: Mahidol University.
- _____. 1988. Bisu Dialects. Paper presented to Burmese-Yipho Workshop, Lund.
- Bradley, David. 1994. "Burmese-Lolo." Atlas of the world's languages, ed. by Christopher Moseley and R. E. Asher, 178-180. London: Routledge.
- _____. 1995. "Minority language policy and endangered languages in China and Southeast Asia." Studies in endangered languages: Papers from the International Symposium on Endangered Languages, Tokyo, November 18-20, 1995. Tokyo: Hituzi Syobo.
- _____. 1998. Personal communication.
- _____. nd. Phunoi or Coong. ms.

- Burusphat, Somsonge. 1991. The structure of Thai narrative. Summer Institute of Linguistics Publications in Linguistics #98. Dallas: Summer Institute of Linguistics.
- Chafe, Wallace and Johanna Nichols, eds. 1986. Evidentiality: the linguistic coding of epistemology. *Advances in discourse processes*, vol 20. Norwood, New Jersey: Ablex.
- Chan, Marjorie K.M. 1999. Intonation and sentence-final particles in Chinese. Paper presented at the 32nd International Conference on Sino-Tibetan Languages and Linguistics, University of Illinois at Champaign-Urbana.
- Chu, Chauncey. 1998. A discourse grammar of Mandarin Chinese. New York: Peter Lang.
- Cooke, Joseph R. 1989. Thai sentence particles and other topics. *Pacific Linguistics Series A-80, Papers in South-East Asian Linguistics No. 12*. Canberra: The Australian National University.
- Cornyn, William S. and D. Haigh Roop. 1968. *Beginning Burmese*. New Haven: Yale University Press.
- Edmondson, Jerold A. 2000. Personal communication.
- Ferlus, Michael. 1981. The verbal system of Phou Noi. Unpublished manuscript.
- Gregerson, Marilyn, Dorothy Thomas, Doris Blood, Carol Zylstra, eds. 1987. *Tales from Southeast Asia*. Dallas: International Museum of Cultures.
- Grimes, B. F. (editor). 1996. *Ethnologue: languages of the world*. 13th edition. Dallas: Summer Institute of Linguistics.
- Hale, Austin. 1998. Personal communication.

- Hansson, Inga-Lill. 1996. "The interplay between the verb particle 'ə' and the sentence particles in Akha." *Linguistics of the Tibeto-Burman Area*. 19:65-76.
- Hope, Edward Reginald. 1974. *The deep syntax of Lisu sentences: a transformational case grammar*. Canabara: Australian National University.
- Hopper, Paul J. and Thompson, Sandra A. 1980. "Transitivity in grammar and discourse." *Language*, 56, 251-299.
- Hwang, Shin Ja Joo. 1981. *Aspects of Korean narration*. Arlington: University of Texas at Arlington dissertation.
- _____. 1987. *Discourse features of Korean narration*. Dallas: Summer Institute of Linguistics.
- Juntawieng, Usitara. 1997. *A discourse study of a selection of the Northern Thai sermons of Phakhu Sophon Boonyaphorn (Tuu Cok)*. Chiang Mai: Payap University thesis.
- Katsura, Makkio. 2000. *Personal communicatin*.
- Kingshill, Konrad. 1991. *Ku Daeng-thirty years later: A village study in Northern Thailand 1954-1984*. Dekalb: Northern Illinois University.
- Klausner, William. 1983. *Reflections on Thai culture*. Bangkok: The Siam Society.
- LaPolla, Randy J. 1994. "Parallel grammaticalizations in Tibeto-Burman languages: evidence of Sapir's 'drift.'" *Linguistics of the Tibeto-Burman area*. 17.1:61-80.
- Li, Charles N. and Sandra A. Thompson. 1981. *Mandarin Chinese: A functional reference grammar*. Berkeley: University of California Press.
- Longacre, Robert E. 1976. "'Mystery' particles and affixes." *Papers from the twelfth regional meeting of the Chicago Linguistic Society*, ed. by Salikoko S.

- Mufwene, Carol A. Walker, and Sanford B. Steever, 468–475. Chicago: Chicago Linguistic Society.
- _____. 1978. Why we need a vertical revolution in linguistics. The fifth LACUS forum, ed. by Wolfgang Wolck and Paul L. Garvin, 247–270. Columbia, South Carolina: Hornbeam Press, Incorporated.
- _____. 1981. "A spectrum and profile approach to discourse analysis." Text 1. 337–59.
- _____. "Salience schemes for narrative discourse: some broader concerns." Proceedings of the twenty-second LACUS forum, ed. by Bates Hoffer, 5–14. Chapel Hill, NC: Linguistic Association of Canada and the United States.
- _____. 1996. The grammar of discourse. Second edition. New York: Plenum Press.
- Matisoff, James A. 1973. The grammar of Lahu. Berkeley: University of California Press.
- _____. 1976. Mpi and Lolo–Burmese microlinguistics. Paper presented at the 9th International Conference on Sino–Tibetan Languages and Linguistics. Copenhagen.
- _____. 1978. Variational semantics in Tibeto–Burman: the "organic" approach to linguistic comparison. Philadelphia: Institute for the Study of Human Issues.
- _____. 1979. "Problems and progress in Lolo–Burmese: Quo Vaddimus?" Linguistics of the Tibeto–Burman area 4:2: 11–43.
- _____. 1999. Personal communication.
- McClelland, Clive W. 1996. Interrelations of prosody, clause structure and discourse pragmatics in Tarift Berber. Arlington: University of Texas at Arlington dissertation.

- Migliazza, Brian. 1998. A grammar of So—a Mon–Khmer language of northeast Thailand. Bangkok: Mahidol University dissertation.
- Mundhenk, Norman A. 1967. Auxiliary verbs in Myang of Northern Thailand. Chiang Mai: Hartford Seminary Foundation thesis.
- Nishida, T. 1966. A preliminary study of the Bisu language—a language of Northern Thailand recently discovered by us. *Tonan Ajia Kenkyu* 4: 65–87 (in Japanese)
- _____. 1973. A preliminary study of the Bisu language—a language of Northern Thailand recently discovered by us. *Pacific Linguistics* A–30: 55–82.
- Nuamkaew, Vacharee. 1987. The phonology of the Bisu language as spoken in Chiangrai Province. Bangkok: Mahidol University thesis.
- Person, Kirk R. 1998. The kinship system of the Bisu of Chiang Rai. Payap University technical paper no. 40. Chiang Mai, Thailand: Payap University Research and Development Institute.
- _____. 1999a. “Preliminary analysis of a Bisu folktale: the story of Ai Kham.” Term paper for LING 5303 Discourse Grammar, University of Texas at Arlington. ms.
- _____. 1999b. “Particle distribution and transitivity in three Bisu folktales.” Term paper for LING 5348 Text Analysis, University of Texas at Arlington. ms.
- _____. In press. “Writing Bisu: a community–based approach to orthography development.” *Papers from the Ninth Annual Meeting of the Southeast Asian Linguistics Society*. Graham Thurdgood (ed.). Tempe: Arizona State University Press.

- Person, Kirk R., and Suzanne Person. 1996. "Write that tone! Language preservation issues in everyday efforts to write Northern Thai using Central Thai script." Proceedings of the Sixth International Conference on Thai Studies. Chiang Mai, Thailand: Chiang Mai University
- Person, Suzanne. 1998. The story of Mae Laa: a discourse analysis of a Northern Thai life history in its cultural context. Chiang Mai, Thailand: Payap University thesis.
- Potter, Sulamith Heins. 1977. Family life in a Northern Thai village: a study in the structural significance of women. Berkeley: University of California Press.
- Purnell, Herbert C. 1962. A colorful colloquial: an introduction to the study of spoken Northern Thai. Chiang Mai: Overseas Missionary Fellowship.
- _____. 1963. A short Northern Thai–English dictionary (Tai Yuan). Chiang Mai: Overseas Missionary Fellowship.
- Shixuan, Xu. 1998. Aspect and tense in the Bisu language. Paper presented at the 31st International Conference on Sino–Tibetan Languages and Linguistics. University of Lund, Sweden. ms.
- _____. 1999. Aspect and tense in the Bisu language. *Linguistics of the Tibeto–Burman area* 22.2: 183–198.
- _____. Forthcoming. *The Bisu Language*.
- Singh, C. Y. 1999. "Tense and aspect in Kuki–Chin." *Linguistics of the Tibeto–Burman area* 22.2: 149–168.
- Smalley, William A. 1994. Linguistic diversity and national unity: Language ecology in Thailand. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
- Solnit, David. 1997. Eastern Kayah Li: Grammar, texts, glossary. Hawai'i: University of Hawai'i Press.

Teekhachunhatean, Roongaroon. 1984. Final particles in the Chieng Mai dialect.

Bangkok: Chulalongkorn University thesis.

Wyatt, David K. 1984. Thailand: a short history. London: Yale University Press.

BIOGRAPHICAL INFORMATION

Kirk Roger Person was born on June 22, 1967, in Loveland, Colorado. His interest in Asia began in childhood, when his parents adopted two Vietnamese orphans and organized an adoption agency, the Friends of Children of Viet Nam.

In 1987, he graduated from Baylor University with a major in history, an honors program thesis on the philosophy of Michelangelo, and membership in Phi Beta Kappa. He dropped his sole undergraduate linguistics course after one week.

In 1988, he was selected as a Baylor-in-Thailand exchange student to teach English at Yonok College, Lampang. He stayed at Yonok for five years (a record for an exchange student), teaching English, history, and linguistics, as well as heading the English department (1989–93), assisting the college president, and marrying Baylor exchange student Suzanne Renee Anderson (1992). Simultaneously, he obtained an M.A. in linguistics from Payap University, Chiang Mai, Thailand (1993), with a thesis on the discourse style of Thailand's most popular Buddhist televangelist.

Kirk returned to the United States in 1993, and subsequently began Ph.D. studies at the University of Texas at Arlington. In 1995 he returned to Thailand as a member of SIL International to teach linguistics at Payap University and conduct research on Northern Thai and Bisu. He has presented papers at the Southeast Asian Linguistics Society, the Pan-Asiatic Symposium on Languages and Linguistics, the International Thai Studies Conference, the Society for Endangered Languages, the Sino-Tibetan Conference, the Southwestern Social Science Association, and the UT Arlington Student Conference in Linguistics. He has given guest lectures at Chiang Mai University, Baylor University, and the Graduate Institute of Applied Linguistics.

After receiving his Ph.D. in Linguistics at the University of Texas at Arlington in December 2000, Kirk and his family returned to Thailand.